

**CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENT SPECIFICATION  
for the  
WASHINGTON COUNTY  
PUBLIC SAFETY TRAINING CENTER**

**PUR-1401**

**Washington County Project No.: 28-276**

**Washington County Contract No.: MS-TC-276-28**

**Crabtree, Rohrbaugh & Associates Project No. 3089**

**Volume 3A – Technical Specifications**

**for the**

**BOARD OF COUNTY COMMISSIONERS  
OF WASHINGTON COUNTY, MARYLAND**

**Jeffrey A. Cline, President**

**Terry L. Baker, Vice President**

**Wayne K. Keefer**

**Cort F. Meinelschmidt**

**Randall E. Wagner**



**August 3, 2020**

**Prepared by:**

**CRABTREE, ROHRBAUGH & ASSOCIATES - ARCHITECTS**

**401 East Winding Hill Road**

**Mechanicsburg, Pennsylvania 17055**

**717-458-0272**

**[www.cra-architects.com](http://www.cra-architects.com)**

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 210513 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR FIRE SUPPRESSION EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on ac power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

#### 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
  - 1. Motor controllers.
  - 2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
  - 3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
  - 4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Comply with IEEE 841 for severe-duty motors.

#### 2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet above sea level.
- B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

## 2.3 POLYPHASE MOTORS

- A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.
- B. Efficiency: Energy efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.
- C. Service Factor: 1.15.
- D. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque.
  - 1. For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.
  - 2. For motors with other than 2:1 speed ratio, separate winding for each speed.
- E. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.
- F. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- G. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.
- H. Insulation: Class F.
- I. Code Letter Designation:
  - 1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
  - 2. Motors Smaller than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.
- J. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.

## 2.4 POLYPHASE MOTORS WITH ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.
- B. Motors Used with Variable Frequency Controllers:
  - 1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width modulated inverters.
  - 2. Energy- and Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.
  - 3. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
  - 4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.
- C. Severe-Duty Motors: Comply with IEEE 841, with 1.15 minimum service factor.

## 2.5 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

- A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:
  - 1. Permanent-split capacitor.
  - 2. Split phase.
  - 3. Capacitor start, inductor run.
  - 4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.
- B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.
- C. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.
- E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 210513

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 210517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Sleeves.
  - 2. Stack-sleeve fittings.
  - 3. Sleeve-seal systems.
  - 4. Sleeve-seal fittings.
  - 5. Grout.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Cast-Iron Wall Pipes: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Galvanized-Steel Wall Pipes: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, with plain ends and welded steel collar; zinc coated.
- C. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, with plain ends.
- D. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- E. Galvanized-Steel-Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- F. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

- G. Molded-PVC Sleeves: With nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

## 2.2 STACK-SLEEVE FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.
  - 2. Zurn Industries, LLC.
- B. Description: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring, bolts, and nuts for membrane flashing.
  - 1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with setscrews.

## 2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Metraflex Company (The).
  - 2. Proco Products, Inc.
- B. Description: Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.
  - 1. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
  - 2. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel.
  - 3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

## 2.4 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Metraflex Company (The).
  - 2. Proco Products, Inc.
- B. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for imbedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit has plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.



## 2.5 GROUT

- A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
  - 1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
  - 1. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP sleeves.
  - 2. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
    - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.
  - 3. Using grout, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
  - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
  - 2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
  - 3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements for sealants specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- E. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.2 STACK-SLEEVE-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install stack-sleeve fittings in new slabs as slabs are constructed.
  - 1. Install fittings that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
  - 2. Secure flashing between clamping flanges for pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Comply with requirements for flashing specified in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
  - 3. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches above finished floor level.
  - 4. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
  - 5. Using grout, seal the space around outside of stack-sleeve fittings.
- B. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.
- B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

### 3.4 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- D. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

### 3.5 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
  - 1. Exterior Concrete Walls above Grade:

- a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Cast-iron wall sleeves.
  - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Cast-iron wall sleeves.
- 2. Exterior Concrete Walls below Grade:
  - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
    - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
  - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
    - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
- 3. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:
  - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
    - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
  - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
    - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
- 4. Concrete Slabs above Grade:
  - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.
  - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.
- 5. Interior Partitions:
  - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.
  - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel-sheet sleeves.

END OF SECTION 210517

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 210518 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Escutcheons.
  - 2. Floor plates.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- C. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- D. Split-Casting Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and with concealed hinge and setscrew.
- E. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish, concealed hinge, and spring-clip fasteners.

#### 2.2 FLOOR PLATES

- A. One-Piece Floor Plates: Cast-iron flange.
- B. Split-Casting Floor Plates: Cast brass with concealed hinge.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
- B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
  - 1. Escutcheons for New Piping:
    - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
    - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
    - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - e. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
    - f. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - g. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
    - h. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - i. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
    - j. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - k. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
    - l. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
- C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.
- D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
  - 1. New Piping: One-piece, floor-plate type.
  - 2. Existing Piping: Split-casting, floor-plate type.

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates using new materials.

END OF SECTION 210518

## SECTION 210523 - GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR WATER-BASED FIRE-PROTECTION PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Two-piece ball valves with indicators.
  - 2. Bronze butterfly valves with indicators.
  - 3. Iron butterfly valves with indicators.
  - 4. Check valves.
  - 5. Bronze OS&Y gate valves.
  - 6. Iron OS&Y gate valves.
  - 7. NRS gate valves.
  - 8. Trim and drain valves.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.
- B. NRS: Nonrising stem.
- C. OS&Y: Outside screw and yoke.
- D. SBR: Styrene-butadiene rubber.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
  - 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
  - 2. Protect threads, flange faces, and weld ends.
  - 3. Set valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.

- B. Use the following precautions during storage:
  - 1. Maintain valve end protection.
  - 2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher than ambient dew point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.
- C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use operating handles or stems as lifting or rigging points.
- D. Protect flanges and specialties from moisture and dirt.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- A. UL Listed: Valves shall be listed in UL's "Online Certifications Directory" under the headings listed below and shall bear UL mark:
  - 1. Main Level: HAMV - Fire Main Equipment.
    - a. Level 1: HCBZ - Indicator Posts, Gate Valve.
    - b. Level 1: HLOT - Valves.
      - 1) Level 3: HLUG - Ball Valves, System Control.
      - 2) Level 3: HLXS - Butterfly Valves.
      - 3) Level 3: HMER - Check Valves.
      - 4) Level 3: HMRZ - Gate Valves.
  - 2. Main Level: VDGT - Sprinkler System & Water Spray System Devices.
    - a. Level 1: VQGU - Valves, Trim and Drain.
- B. FM Global Approved: Valves shall be listed in its "Approval Guide," under the headings listed below:
  - 1. Automated Sprinkler Systems:
    - a. Indicator posts.
    - b. Valves.
      - 1) Gate valves.
      - 2) Check valves.
        - a) Single check valves.
      - 3) Miscellaneous valves.



- C. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain valves for each valve type from single manufacturer.
- D. ASME Compliance:
  - 1. ASME B16.1 for flanges on iron valves.
  - 2. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded-end valves.
  - 3. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.
- E. AWWA Compliance: Comply with AWWA C606 for grooved-end connections.
- F. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 24 for valves.
- G. Valve Pressure Ratings: Not less than the minimum pressure rating indicated or higher as required by system pressures.
- H. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Valve Actuator Types:
  - 1. Worm-gear actuator with handwheel for quarter-turn valves, except for trim and drain valves.
  - 2. Handwheel: For other than quarter-turn trim and drain valves.
  - 3. Handlever: For quarter-turn trim and drain valves NPS 2 and smaller.

## 2.2 TWO-PIECE BALL VALVES WITH INDICATORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Ames Fire & Waterworks; A WATTS Brand.
  - 2. NIBCO INC.
  - 3. Victaulic Company.
- B. Description:
  - 1. UL 1091, except with ball instead of disc and FM Global standard for indicating valves (butterfly or ball type), Class Number 1112.
  - 2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
  - 3. Body Design: Two piece.
  - 4. Body Material: Forged brass or bronze.
  - 5. Port Size: Full or standard.
  - 6. Seats: PTFE.
  - 7. Stem: Bronze or stainless steel.
  - 8. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
  - 9. Actuator: Worm gear or traveling nut.
  - 10. Supervisory Switch: Internal or external.
  - 11. End Connections for Valves NPS 1 through NPS 2: Threaded ends.
  - 12. End Connections for Valves NPS 2-1/2: Grooved ends.

## 2.3 BRONZE BUTTERFLY VALVES WITH INDICATORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. Globe Fire Sprinkler Corporation.
  2. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- B. Description:
1. Standard: UL 1091 and FM Global standard for indicating valves, (butterfly or ball type), Class Number 1112.
  2. Minimum: Pressure rating: 175 psig.
  3. Body Material: Bronze.
  4. Seat Material: EPDM.
  5. Stem Material: Bronze or stainless steel.
  6. Disc: Bronze.
  7. Actuator: Worm gear or traveling nut.
  8. Supervisory Switch: Internal or external.
  9. Ends Connections for Valves NPS 1 through NPS 2: Threaded ends.
  10. Ends Connections for Valves NPS 2-1/2: Grooved ends.

## 2.4 IRON BUTTERFLY VALVES WITH INDICATORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. NIBCO INC.
  2. Tyco Fire Products LP.
  3. Victaulic Company.
  4. Zurn Industries, LLC.
- B. Description:
1. Standard: UL 1091 and FM Global standard for indicating valves, (butterfly or ball type), Class Number 112.
  2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
  3. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.
  4. Seat Material: EPDM.
  5. Stem: Stainless steel.
  6. Disc: Ductile iron, nickel plated.
  7. Actuator: Worm gear or traveling nut.
  8. Supervisory Switch: Internal or external.
  9. Body Design: Grooved-end connections.

## 2.5 CHECK VALVES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Globe Fire Sprinkler Corporation.
  - 2. Mueller Co.
  - 3. NIBCO INC.
  - 4. Tyco Fire Products LP.
- B. Description:
  - 1. Standard: UL 312 and FM Global standard for swing check valves, Class Number 1210.
  - 2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
  - 3. Type: Single swing check.
  - 4. Body Material: Cast iron, ductile iron, or bronze.
  - 5. Clapper: Bronze, ductile iron, or stainless steel.
  - 6. Clapper Seat: Brass, bronze, or stainless steel.
  - 7. Hinge Shaft: Bronze or stainless steel.
  - 8. Hinge Spring: Stainless steel.
  - 9. End Connections: Flanged, grooved, or threaded.

## 2.6 BRONZE OS&Y GATE VALVES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - 2. NIBCO INC.
  - 3. Zurn Industries, LLC.
- B. Description:
  - 1. Standard: UL 262 and FM Global standard for fire-service water control valves (OS&Y- and NRS-type gate valves).
  - 2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
  - 3. Body and Bonnet Material: Bronze or brass.
  - 4. Wedge: One-piece bronze or brass.
  - 5. Wedge Seat: Bronze.
  - 6. Stem: Bronze or brass.
  - 7. Packing: Non-asbestos PTFE.
  - 8. Supervisory Switch: External.
  - 9. End Connections: Threaded.

## 2.7 IRON OS&Y GATE VALVES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. NIBCO INC.
  2. Victaulic Company.
  3. WATTS.
  4. Zurn Industries, LLC.
- B. Description:
1. Standard: UL 262 and FM Global standard for fire-service water control valves (OS&Y- and NRS-type gate valves).
  2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
  3. Body and Bonnet Material: Cast or ductile iron.
  4. Wedge: Cast or ductile iron, or bronze.
  5. Wedge Seat: Cast or ductile iron, or bronze.
  6. Stem: Brass or bronze.
  7. Packing: Non-asbestos PTFE.
  8. Supervisory Switch: External.
  9. End Connections: Grooved.

## 2.8 NRS GATE VALVES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. NIBCO INC.
  2. Victaulic Company.
  3. Zurn Industries, LLC.
- B. Description:
1. Standard: UL 262 and FM Global standard for fire-service water control valves (OS&Y- and NRS-type gate valves).
  2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
  3. Body and Bonnet Material: Cast or ductile iron.
  4. Wedge: Cast or ductile iron.
  5. Wedge Seat: Cast or ductile iron, or bronze.
  6. Stem: Brass or bronze.
  7. Packing: Non-asbestos PTFE.
  8. Supervisory Switch: External.
  9. End Connections: Grooved.

## 2.9 TRIM AND DRAIN VALVES

### A. Ball Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - b. NIBCO INC.
  - c. Tyco Fire Products LP.
2. Description:
  - a. Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
  - b. Body Design: Two piece.
  - c. Body Material: Forged brass or bronze.
  - d. Port size: Full or standard.
  - e. Seats: PTFE.
  - f. Stem: Bronze or stainless steel.
  - g. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
  - h. Actuator: Handlever.
  - i. End Connections for Valves NPS 1 through NPS 2-1/2: Threaded ends.
  - j. End Connections for Valves NPS 1-1/4 and NPS 2-1/2: Grooved ends.

### B. Angle Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. NIBCO INC.
  - b. United Brass Works, Inc.
2. Description:
  - a. Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
  - b. Body Material: Brass or bronze.
  - c. Ends: Threaded.
  - d. Stem: Bronze.
  - e. Disc: Bronze.
  - f. Packing: Asbestos free.
  - g. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

### C. Globe Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. NIBCO INC.
  - b. United Brass Works, Inc.
2. Description:
  - a. Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
  - b. Body Material: Bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
  - c. Ends: Threaded.
  - d. Stem: Bronze.
  - e. Disc Holder and Nut: Bronze.
  - f. Disc Seat: Nitrile.
  - g. Packing: Asbestos free.
  - h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

#### 3.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements in the following Sections for specific valve installation requirements and applications:
  1. Section 211313 "Wet-Pipe Sprinkler Systems" for application of valves in wet-pipe, fire-suppression sprinkler systems.

- B. Install listed fire-protection shutoff valves supervised-open, located to control sources of water supply except from fire-department connections. Install permanent identification signs indicating portion of system controlled by each valve.
- C. Install check valve in each water-supply connection. Install backflow preventers instead of check valves in potable-water-supply sources.
- D. Install valves having threaded connections with unions at each piece of equipment arranged to allow easy access, service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown. Provide separate support where necessary.
- E. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above the pipe center.
- F. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- G. Install valve tags. Comply with requirements in Section 210553 "Identification for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules and signs on surfaces concealing valves; and the NFPA standard applying to the piping system in which valves are installed. Install permanent identification signs indicating the portion of system controlled by each valve.
- H. Install listed fire-protection shutoff valves supervised-open, located to control sources of water supply except from fire-department connections.
- I. Install check valve in each water-supply connection. Install backflow preventers instead of check valves in potable-water-supply sources.

END OF SECTION 210523

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK



## SECTION 210529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR FIRE SUPPRESSION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
  - 2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
  - 3. Metal framing systems.
  - 4. Fastener systems.
  - 5. Equipment supports.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Structural-Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to 2015 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section IX.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for fire-suppression piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
  - 1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
  - 2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.
  - 3. Design seismic-restraint hangers and supports for piping and equipment.
- B. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 13.
- C. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 203.

### 2.2 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
  - 1. Description: Factory-fabricated components, NFPA approved, UL listed, or FM approved for fire-suppression piping support.
  - 2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot-dip galvanized.
  - 3. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
- B. Copper Pipe and Tube Hangers:
  - 1. Description: Copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components, NFPA approved, UL listed, or FM approved for fire-suppression piping support.
  - 2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-coated steel.

### 2.3 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

- A. Description: MSS SP-58, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly, made from structural-carbon-steel shapes, with NFPA-approved, UL-listed, or FM-approved carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

### 2.4 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

- A. MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. B-line, an Eaton business.
  - b. Unistrut; Part of Atkore International.
2. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly, made of steel channels, accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
3. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4, factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
4. Channels: Continuous slotted carbon-steel channel with inturned lips.
5. Channel Width: Selected for applicable load criteria.
6. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
7. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
8. Metallic Coating: Electroplated zinc.
9. Paint Coating: Green epoxy, acrylic, or urethane.

B. Non-MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Anvil International.
  - b. Empire Industries, Inc.
2. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly, made of steel channels, accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
3. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4, factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
4. Channels: Continuous slotted carbon-steel channel with inturned lips.
5. Channel Width: Select for applicable load criteria.
6. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
7. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
8. Metallic Coating: Plain.
9. Paint Coating: Green epoxy, acrylic, or urethane.

## 2.5 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: NFPA-approved, UL-listed, or FM-approved threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

- a. Hilti, Inc.
  - b. ITW Ramset/Red Head; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: NFPA-approved, UL-listed, or FM-approved, insert-wedge-type anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Hilti, Inc.
    - b. ITW Ramset/Red Head; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
  - 2. Indoor Applications: Zinc-coated steel.
  - 3. Outdoor Applications: Stainless steel.

## 2.6 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Description: NFPA-approved, UL-listed, or FM-approved, welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support, made from structural-carbon-steel shapes.

## 2.7 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum: ASTM B221.
- B. Carbon Steel: ASTM A1011/A1011M.
- C. Structural Steel: ASTM A36/A36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- D. Stainless Steel: ASTM A240/A240M.
- E. Grout: ASTM C1107/C1107M, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout, suitable for interior and exterior applications.
  - 1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
  - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 APPLICATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping materials and installation, for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.

- B. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components, so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb.

### 3.2 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with installation requirements of approvals and listings. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from building structure.
- B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
  - 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size, or install intermediate supports for smaller-diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
  - 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A36/A36M carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled metal strut systems.
- D. Thermal Hanger-Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
- E. Fastener System Installation:
  - 1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete, after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual. Install in accordance with approvals and listings.
  - 2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete, after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions. Install in accordance with approvals and listings.
- F. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- G. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- H. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- I. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.

- J. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms, and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- K. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports, so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- L. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.

### 3.3 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment, and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

### 3.4 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - 4. Finish welds at exposed connections, so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

### 3.6 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded, shop-painted areas. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as those used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
  - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas, and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A780/A780M.

### 3.7 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with NFPA requirements for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finishes.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper or stainless-steel attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- G. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Comply with NFPA requirements. Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
  - 2. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 if little or no insulation is required.
  - 3. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
  - 4. Split Pipe Ring with or without Turnbuckle Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 8.
  - 5. Extension Hinged or Two-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 3.
  - 6. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
  - 7. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.

8. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
  9. Adjustable Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36 if vertical adjustment is required, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
- H. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.
  2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- I. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Comply with NFPA requirements.
- J. Building Attachments: Comply with NFPA requirements. Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel or Malleable-Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
  2. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
  3. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
- K. Saddles and Shields: Comply with NFPA requirements. Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
  2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
  3. Thermal Hanger-Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- L. Comply with NFPA requirements for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- M. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- N. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

END OF SECTION 210529



## SECTION 210553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Equipment labels.
  - 2. Warning signs and labels.
  - 3. Pipe labels.
  - 4. Stencils.
  - 5. Valve tags.
  - 6. Warning tags.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

- A. Metal Labels for Equipment:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Brady Corporation.
    - b. Marking Services, Inc.
    - c. Seton Identification Products.
  - 2. Material and Thickness: Brass, 0.032-inch-thick, with predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
  - 3. Letter Color: Black.
  - 4. Background Color: Red.

5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets.
8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

B. Plastic Labels for Equipment:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Brady Corporation.
  - b. Marking Services, Inc.
  - c. Seton Identification Products.
2. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16-inch-thick, with predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
3. Letter Color: Black.
4. Background Color: Red.
5. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
6. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
7. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
8. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets.
9. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

## 2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  1. Brady Corporation.
  2. Marking Services Inc.
  3. Seton Identification Products.
- B. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16-inch-thick, with predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- C. Letter Color: Black.

- D. Background Color: Red.
- E. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- F. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- G. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
- H. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets.
- I. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- J. Label Content: Include caution and warning information, plus emergency notification instructions.

## 2.3 PIPE LABELS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Brady Corporation.
  - 2. Marking Services Inc.
  - 3. Seton Identification Products.
- B. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service and showing flow direction according to ASME A13.1.
- C. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to partially cover circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- D. Self-adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- E. Pipe-Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, pipe size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.
  - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping-system service lettering to accommodate both directions or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
  - 2. Lettering Size: Size letters according to ASME A13.1 for piping.
- F. Pipe-Label Colors:
  - 1. Background Color: Safety Red.
  - 2. Letter Color: White.

## 2.4 STENCILS

### A. Stencils for Piping:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Brimar Industries, Inc.
  - b. Craftmark Pipe Markers.
  - c. Marking Seivics Inc.
2. Lettering Size: Size letters according to ASME A13.1 for piping.
3. Stencil Material: Fiberboard or metal.
4. Stencil Paint: Safety Red, exterior, gloss, alkyd enamel. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
5. Identification Paint: White, exterior, alkyd enamel. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.

## 2.5 VALVE TAGS

### A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

1. Brady Corporation.
2. Marking Seivics Inc.
3. Seton Identification Products.

### B. Description: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping-system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers.

1. Tag Material: Brass, 0.032-inch-thick, with predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
2. Fasteners: Brass wire-link chain.
3. Valve-Tag Color: Safety Red.
4. Letter Color: White.

### C. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.

1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

## 2.6 WARNING TAGS

### A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

1. Brady Corporation.
  2. Marking Services Inc.
  3. Seton Identification Products.
- B. Description: Preprinted or partially preprinted, accident-prevention tags, of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.
1. Size: 3 by 5-1/4 inches minimum.
  2. Fasteners: Brass grommet and wire.
  3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
  4. Color: Safety Yellow background with black lettering.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants, as well as dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and other substances that could impair bond of identification devices.

#### 3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be installed.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

#### 3.3 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

#### 3.4 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Piping: Painting of piping is specified in Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
- B. Stenciled Pipe-Label Option: Stenciled labels may be provided instead of manufactured pipe labels, at Installer's option. Install stenciled pipe labels, complying with ASME A13.1, on each piping system.

1. Identification Paint: Use for contrasting background.
  2. Stencil Paint: Use for pipe marking.
- C. Pipe-Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
1. Near each valve and control device.
  2. Near each branch connection excluding short takeoffs. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
  3. Near penetrations and on both sides of through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
  4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit a view of concealed piping.
  5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
  6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
  7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.
- D. Directional Flow Arrows: Arrows shall be used to indicate direction of flow in pipes including pipes where flow is allowed in both directions.

### 3.5 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Install tags on valves and control devices in fire-suppression piping systems. List tagged valves in a valve-tag schedule.
- B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and with captions similar to those indicated in "Valve-Tag Size and Shape" Subparagraph below:
1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:
    - a. Fire-Suppression Standpipe: 1-1/2 inches, round.
    - b. Wet-Pipe Sprinkler System: 1-1/2 inches, round.
    - c. Clean-Agent Fire-Extinguishing System: 1-1/2 inches, round.

### 3.6 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

END OF SECTION 210553

## SECTION 211119 - FIRE-DEPARTMENT CONNECTIONS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Exposed-type fire-department connections.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each fire-department connection.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 EXPOSED-TYPE FIRE-DEPARTMENT CONNECTION

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Elkhart Brass Mfg. Co., Inc.
  - 2. Fire Protection Products, Inc.
  - 3. Guardian Fire Equipment, Inc.
- B. Standard: UL 405.
- C. Type: Exposed, projecting, for wall mounting.
- D. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
- E. Body Material: Corrosion-resistant metal.

- F. Inlets: Brass with threads according to NFPA 1963 and matching local fire-department sizes and threads. Include extension pipe nipples, brass lugged swivel connections, and check devices or clappers.
- G. Caps: Brass, lugged type, with gasket and chain.
- H. Escutcheon Plate: Round, brass, wall type.
- I. Outlet: Back, with pipe threads.
- J. Number of Inlets: Two.
- K. Escutcheon Plate Marking: Similar to "AUTO SPKR."
- L. Finish: Polished chrome plated.
- M. Outlet Size: NPS 4 or as dictated by authority having jurisdiction.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of fire-department connections.
- B. Examine roughing-in for fire-suppression standpipe system to verify actual locations of piping connections before fire-department connection installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install wall-type fire-department connections.
- B. Install two protective pipe bollards around each fire-department connection. Comply with requirements for bollards in Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications."
- C. Install automatic (ball-drip) drain valve at each check valve for fire-department connection.

END OF SECTION 211119



## SECTION 211313 - WET-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Pipes, fittings, and specialties.
  - 2. Specialty valves.
  - 3. Sprinklers.
  - 4. Alarm devices.
  - 5. Manual control stations.
  - 6. Control panels.
  - 7. Pressure gages.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Division 21 Section "Fire Department Connections" for exposed-, flush-, and yard-type fire department connections.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Standard-Pressure Sprinkler Piping: Wet-pipe sprinkler system piping designed to operate at working pressure of 175-psig maximum.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For wet-pipe sprinkler systems.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
  - 2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For wet-pipe sprinkler systems indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Approved Sprinkler Piping Drawings: Working plans, prepared according to NFPA 13, that have been approved by authorities having jurisdiction, including hydraulic calculations if applicable.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Field Test Reports and Certificates: Indicate and interpret test results for compliance with performance requirements and as described in NFPA 13. Include "Contractor's Material and Test Certificate for Aboveground Piping."
- D. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wet-pipe sprinkler systems and specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

#### 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Sprinkler Cabinets: Finished, wall-mounted, steel cabinet with hinged cover, and with space for minimum of six spare sprinklers plus sprinkler wrench. Include number of sprinklers required by NFPA 13 and sprinkler wrench. Include separate cabinet with sprinklers and wrench for each type of sprinkler used on Project.

#### 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications:
  - 1. Installer's responsibilities include designing, fabricating, and installing sprinkler systems and providing professional engineering services needed to assume engineering responsibility. Base calculations on results of fire-hydrant flow test.
    - a. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of working plans, calculations, and field test reports by a qualified professional engineer.
- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Sprinkler system equipment, specialties, accessories, installation, and testing shall comply with the following:
  - 1. NFPA 13.
- B. Standard-Pressure Piping System Component: Listed for 175-psig minimum working pressure.
- C. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Division 01 Section "Quality Requirements," to design wet-pipe sprinkler systems.
  - 1. Sprinkler system design shall be approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
    - a. Margin of Safety for Available Water Flow and Pressure: 10 percent, including losses through water-service piping, valves, and backflow preventers.
  - 2. Minimum Density for Automatic-Sprinkler Piping Design:
    - a. Light-Hazard Occupancy: 0.10 gpm over 1500-sq. ft. area.
    - b. Ordinary-Hazard, Group 1 Occupancy: 0.15 gpm over 1500-sq. ft. area.
    - c. Ordinary-Hazard, Group 2 Occupancy: 0.20 gpm over 1500-sq. ft. area.
    - d. Extra-Hazard, Group 1 Occupancy: 0.30 gpm over 2500-sq. ft. area.
    - e. Extra-Hazard, Group 2 Occupancy: 0.40 gpm over 2500-sq. ft. area.
    - f. Special Occupancy Hazard: As determined by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 3. Maximum Protection Area per Sprinkler: According to UL listing.
  - 4. Maximum Protection Area per Sprinkler:
    - a. Office Spaces: 225 sq. ft.
    - b. Storage Areas: 130 sq. ft.
    - c. Mechanical Equipment Rooms: 130 sq. ft.
    - d. Electrical Equipment Rooms: 130 sq. ft.
    - e. Other Areas: According to NFPA 13 recommendations unless otherwise indicated.

### 2.2 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Standard-Weight, Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B. Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.
- B. Schedule 30, Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 135/A 135M; ASTM A 795/A 795M, Type E; or ASME B36.10M wrought steel, with wall thickness not less than Schedule 30 and not more than Schedule 40. Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.

- C. Thinwall Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 135/A 135M or ASTM A 795/A 795M, threadable, with wall thickness less than Schedule 30 and equal to or greater than Schedule 10. Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.
- D. Schedule 10, Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 135/A 135M or ASTM A 795/A 795M, Schedule 10 in NPS 5 and smaller; and NFPA 13-specified wall thickness in NPS 6 to NPS 10, plain end.
- E. Nonstandard OD, Thinwall Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 135/A 135M or ASTM A 795/A 795M thinwall with plain ends and wall thickness less than Schedule 10.
- F. Hybrid Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 135/A 135M or ASTM A 795/A 795M lightwall, with wall thickness less than Schedule 10 and greater than Schedule 5.
- G. Schedule 5 Steel Pipe: ASTM A 135/A 135M or ASTM A 795/A 795M lightwall with plain ends.
- H. Black-Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53/A 53M, standard-weight, seamless steel pipe with threaded ends.
- I. Uncoated-Steel Couplings: ASTM A 865/A 865M, threaded.
- J. Uncoated, Gray-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 125, standard pattern.
- K. Malleable- or Ductile-Iron Unions: UL 860.
- L. Cast-Iron Flanges: ASME 16.1, Class 125.
- M. Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, Class 150.
  - 1. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick.
    - a. Class 125 and Class 250, Cast-Iron, Flat-Face Flanges: Full-face gaskets.
    - b. Class 150 and Class 300, Ductile-Iron or -Steel, Raised-Face Flanges: Ring-type gaskets.
  - 2. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
- N. Steel Welding Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M and ASME B16.9.
  - 1. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12M/D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- O. Grooved-Joint, Steel-Pipe Appurtenances:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Anvil International.
    - b. Tyco Fire Products LP.

- c. Victaulic Company.
- 2. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
- 3. Painted Grooved-End Fittings for Steel Piping: ASTM A 47/A 47M, malleable-iron casting or ASTM A 536, ductile-iron casting, with dimensions matching steel pipe.
- 4. Grooved-End-Pipe Couplings for Steel Piping: AWWA C606 and UL 213 rigid pattern, unless otherwise indicated, for steel-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, EPDM-rubber gasket, and bolts and nuts.

## 2.3 SPECIALTY VALVES

- A. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
- B. Pressure Rating:
  - 1. Standard-Pressure Piping Specialty Valves: 175-psig minimum.
- C. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.
- D. Size: Same as connected piping.
- E. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.
- F. Alarm Valves:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc. (The).
    - b. Tyco Fire Products LP.
    - c. Viking Corporation.
  - 2. Standard: UL 193.
  - 3. Design: For horizontal or vertical installation.
  - 4. Include trim sets for bypass, drain, electrical sprinkler alarm switch, pressure gages, retarding chamber, and fill-line attachment with strainer.
  - 5. Drip Cup Assembly: Pipe drain with check valve to main drain piping.
  - 6. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- G. Automatic (Ball Drip) Drain Valves:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc. (The).

- b. Tyco Fire Products LP.
- 2. Standard: UL 1726.
- 3. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
- 4. Type: Automatic draining, ball check.
- 5. Size: NPS 3/4.
- 6. End Connections: Threaded.

## 2.4 SPRINKLER PIPING SPECIALTIES

### A. Branch Outlet Fittings:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Anvil International.
  - b. Tyco Fire Products LP.
  - c. Victaulic Company.
- 2. Standard: UL 213.
- 3. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
- 4. Body Material: Ductile-iron housing with EPDM seals and bolts and nuts.
- 5. Type: Mechanical-tee and -cross fittings.
- 6. Configurations: Snap-on and strapless, ductile-iron housing with branch outlets.
- 7. Size: Of dimension to fit onto sprinkler main and with outlet connections as required to match connected branch piping.
- 8. Branch Outlets: Grooved, plain-end pipe, or threaded.

### B. Flow Detection and Test Assemblies:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc. (The).
  - b. Tyco Fire Products LP.
  - c. Victaulic Company.
- 2. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
- 3. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
- 4. Body Material: Cast- or ductile-iron housing with orifice, sight glass, and integral test valve.
- 5. Size: Same as connected piping.
- 6. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded or grooved.

### C. Sprinkler Inspector's Test Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Tyco Fire Products LP.
  - b. Victaulic Company.
  - c. Viking Corporation.
2. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
3. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
4. Body Material: Cast- or ductile-iron housing with sight glass.
5. Size: Same as connected piping.
6. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.

D. Flexible Sprinkler Hose Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Fivalco Inc.
  - b. FlexHead Industries, Inc.
  - c. Victaulic Company.
2. Standard: UL 1474.
3. Type: Flexible hose for connection to sprinkler, and with bracket for connection to ceiling grid.
4. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
5. Size: Same as connected piping, for sprinkler.

## 2.5 SPRINKLERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  1. Tyco Fire Products LP.
  2. Victaulic Company.
  3. Viking Corporation.
- B. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
- C. Pressure Rating for Residential Sprinklers: 175-psig maximum.
- D. Pressure Rating for Automatic Sprinklers: 175-psig minimum.
- E. Automatic Sprinklers with Heat-Responsive Element:
  1. Early-Suppression, Fast-Response Applications: UL 1767.

2. Nonresidential Applications: UL 199.
  3. Characteristics: Nominal 1/2-inch orifice with Discharge Coefficient K of 5.6, and for "Ordinary" temperature classification rating unless otherwise indicated or required by application.
- F. Sprinkler Finishes: Chrome plated.
- G. Sprinkler Escutcheons: Materials, types, and finishes for the following sprinkler mounting applications. Escutcheons for concealed, flush, and recessed-type sprinklers are specified with sprinklers.
1. Ceiling Mounting: Chrome-plated steel, one piece, flat.
  2. Sidewall Mounting: Chrome-plated steel, one piece, flat.
- H. Sprinkler Guards:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Tyco Fire Products LP.
    - b. Victaulic Company.
    - c. Viking Corporation.
  2. Standard: UL 199.
  3. Type: Wire cage with fastening device for attaching to sprinkler.

## 2.6 ALARM DEVICES

- A. Alarm-device types shall match piping and equipment connections.
- B. Electrically Operated Alarm Bell:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Fire-Lite Alarms, Inc.; a Honeywell International company.
    - b. Notifier.
    - c. Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC.
  2. Standard: UL 464.
  3. Type: Vibrating, metal alarm bell.
  4. Size: 6-inch minimum- diameter.
  5. Finish: Red-enamel factory finish, suitable for outdoor use.
  6. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.



C. Water-Flow Indicators:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC.
  - b. System Sensor.
  - c. Viking Corporation.
2. Standard: UL 346.
3. Water-Flow Detector: Electrically supervised.
4. Components: Two single-pole, double-throw circuit switches for isolated alarm and auxiliary contacts, 7 A, 125-V ac and 0.25 A, 24-V dc; complete with factory-set, field-adjustable retard element to prevent false signals and tamperproof cover that sends signal if removed.
5. Type: Paddle operated.
6. Pressure Rating: 250 psig.
7. Design Installation: Horizontal or vertical.

D. Pressure Switches:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC.
  - b. Tyco Fire Products LP.
  - c. Viking Corporation.
2. Standard: UL 346.
3. Type: Electrically supervised water-flow switch with retard feature.
4. Components: Single-pole, double-throw switch with normally closed contacts.
5. Design Operation: Rising pressure signals water flow.

E. Valve Supervisory Switches:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Fire-Lite Alarms, Inc.; a Honeywell International company.
  - b. Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC.
  - c. System Sensor.
2. Standard: UL 346.
3. Type: Electrically supervised.
4. Components: Single-pole, double-throw switch with normally closed contacts.
5. Design: Signals that controlled valve is in other than fully open position.

6. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

## 2.7 PRESSURE GAGES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  1. AMETEK, Inc.
  2. Ashcroft Inc.
  3. WIKA Instrument Corporation.
- B. Standard: UL 393.
- C. Dial Size: 3-1/2- to 4-1/2-inch diameter.
- D. Pressure Gage Range: 0- to 250-psig minimum.
- E. Label: Include "WATER" label on dial face.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 WATER-SUPPLY CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect sprinkler piping to building's interior water-distribution piping. Comply with requirements for interior piping in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping."
- B. Install shutoff valve, backflow preventer, pressure gage, drain, and other accessories indicated at connection to water-distribution piping.
- C. Install shutoff valve, check valve, pressure gage, and drain at connection to water supply.

### 3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping. Install piping as indicated on approved working plans.
  1. Deviations from approved working plans for piping require written approval from authorities having jurisdiction. File written approval with Architect before deviating from approved working plans.
  2. Coordinate layout and installation of sprinklers with other construction that penetrates ceilings, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, and partition assemblies.
- B. Piping Standard: Comply with NFPA 13 requirements for installation of sprinkler piping.

- C. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with NFPA 13 requirements for seismic-restraint device materials and installation.
- D. Use listed fittings to make changes in direction, branch takeoffs from mains, and reductions in pipe sizes.
- E. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 and smaller.
- F. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 and larger end connections.
- G. Install "Inspector's Test Connections" in sprinkler system piping, complete with shutoff valve, and sized and located according to NFPA 13.
- H. Install sprinkler piping with drains for complete system drainage.
- I. Install sprinkler control valves, test assemblies, and drain risers adjacent to standpipes when sprinkler piping is connected to standpipes.
- J. Install automatic (ball drip) drain valve at each check valve for fire-department connection, to drain piping between fire-department connection and check valve. Install drain piping to and spill over floor drain or to outside building.
- K. Install alarm devices in piping systems.
- L. Install hangers and supports for sprinkler system piping according to NFPA 13. Comply with requirements for hanger materials in NFPA 13.
- M. Install pressure gages on riser or feed main, at each sprinkler test connection, and at top of each standpipe. Include pressure gages with connection not less than NPS 1/4 and with soft-metal seated globe valve, arranged for draining pipe between gage and valve. Install gages to permit removal and install where they are not subject to freezing.
- N. Fill sprinkler system piping with water.
- O. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Division 21 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping."
- P. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Division 21 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping."
- Q. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Division 21 Section "Escutcheons for Fire-Suppression Piping."

### 3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Install couplings, flanges, flanged fittings, unions, nipples, and transition and special fittings that have finish and pressure ratings same as or higher than system's pressure rating for aboveground applications unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 and smaller.
- C. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 and larger end connections.
- D. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- E. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
- F. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.
- G. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
  - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.
- H. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12M/D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to "Quality Assurance" Article.
  - 1. Shop weld pipe joints where welded piping is indicated. Do not use welded joints for galvanized-steel pipe.
- I. Steel-Piping, Cut-Grooved Joints: Cut square-edge groove in end of pipe according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe joints.
- J. Steel-Piping, Roll-Grooved Joints: Roll rounded-edge groove in end of pipe according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe grooved joints.
- K. Dissimilar-Material Piping Joints: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

### 3.4 VALVE AND SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

- A. Install listed fire-protection valves, trim and drain valves, specialty valves and trim, controls, and specialties according to NFPA 13 and authorities having jurisdiction.

- B. Install listed fire-protection shutoff valves supervised open, located to control sources of water supply except from fire-department connections. Install permanent identification signs indicating portion of system controlled by each valve.
- C. Install check valve in each water-supply connection. Install backflow preventers instead of check valves in potable-water-supply sources.
- D. Specialty Valves:
  - 1. Install valves in vertical position for proper direction of flow, in main supply to system.
  - 2. Install alarm valves with bypass check valve and retarding chamber drain-line connection.

### 3.5 SPRINKLER INSTALLATION

- A. Install sprinklers in suspended ceilings in center of acoustical ceiling panels.
- B. Install dry-type sprinklers with water supply from heated space. Do not install pendent or sidewall, wet-type sprinklers in areas subject to freezing.
- C. Install sprinklers into flexible, sprinkler hose fittings, and install hose into bracket on ceiling grid.

### 3.6 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install labeling and pipe markers on equipment and piping according to requirements in NFPA 13.
- B. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge systems and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
  - 3. Flush, test, and inspect sprinkler systems according to NFPA 13, "Systems Acceptance" Chapter.
  - 4. Energize circuits to electrical equipment and devices.
  - 5. Coordinate with fire-alarm tests. Operate as required.
  - 6. Verify that equipment hose threads are same as local fire department equipment.
- B. Sprinkler piping system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.8 CLEANING

- A. Clean dirt and debris from sprinklers.
- B. Only sprinklers with their original factory finish are acceptable. Remove and replace any sprinklers that are painted or have any other finish than their original factory finish.

### 3.9 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain specialty valves.

### 3.10 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Piping between Fire Department Connections and Check Valves: Galvanized, standard-weight steel pipe with grooved ends, grooved-end fittings, grooved-end-pipe couplings, and grooved joints.
- B. Sprinkler specialty fittings may be used, downstream of control valves, instead of specified fittings.
- C. Standard-pressure, wet-pipe sprinkler system, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, black-steel pipe with threaded ends; uncoated, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
  - 2. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, black-steel pipe with cut- or roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
  - 3. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, black-steel pipe with plain ends; steel welding fittings; and welded joints.
- D. Standard-pressure, wet-pipe sprinkler system, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, black-steel pipe with threaded ends; uncoated, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
  - 2. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, black-steel pipe with cut- or roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
  - 3. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, black-steel pipe with plain ends; steel welding fittings; and welded joints.
  - 4. Schedule 10 black-steel pipe with roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.

### 3.11 SPRINKLER SCHEDULE

- A. Use sprinkler types in subparagraphs below for the following applications:
  - 1. Rooms without Ceilings: Upright sprinklers.
  - 2. Rooms with Suspended Ceilings: Concealed sprinklers.
  - 3. Wall Mounting: Sidewall sprinklers.
  - 4. Special Applications: Extended-coverage, flow-control, and quick-response sprinklers where indicated.
- B. Provide sprinkler types in subparagraphs below with finishes indicated.
  - 1. Concealed Sprinklers: Rough brass, with factory-painted white cover plate.
  - 2. Upright Pendent and Sidewall Sprinklers: Chrome plated in finished spaces exposed to view; rough bronze in unfinished spaces not exposed to view; wax coated where exposed to acids, chemicals, or other corrosive fumes.

END OF SECTION 211313

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK



## SECTION 220513 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR PLUMBING EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on ac power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

#### 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
  - 1. Motor controllers.
  - 2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
  - 3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
  - 4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Comply with IEEE 841 for severe-duty motors.

#### 2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet above sea level.
- B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

## 2.3 POLYPHASE MOTORS

- A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.
- B. Efficiency: Energy efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.
- C. Service Factor: 1.15.
- D. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque.
  - 1. For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.
  - 2. For motors with other than 2:1 speed ratio, separate winding for each speed.
- E. Multispeed Motors: Separate winding for each speed.
- F. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.
- G. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- H. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.
- I. Insulation: Class F.
- J. Code Letter Designation:
  - 1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
  - 2. Motors Smaller than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.
- K. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.

## 2.4 POLYPHASE MOTORS WITH ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.
- B. Motors Used with Variable Frequency Controllers:
  - 1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width modulated inverters.
  - 2. Energy- and Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.
  - 3. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
  - 4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.
- C. Severe-Duty Motors: Comply with IEEE 841, with 1.15 minimum service factor.

## 2.5 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

- A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:
  - 1. Permanent-split capacitor.
  - 2. Split phase.
  - 3. Capacitor start, inductor run.
  - 4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.
- B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.
- C. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.
- E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 220513

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 220517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Sleeves.
  - 2. Stack-sleeve fittings.
  - 3. Sleeve-seal systems.
  - 4. Sleeve-seal fittings.
  - 5. Grout.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Cast-Iron Wall Pipes: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Galvanized-Steel Wall Pipes: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, with plain ends and welded steel collar; zinc coated.
- C. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, with plain ends.
- D. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- E. Galvanized-Steel-Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- F. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

- G. Molded-PVC Sleeves: With nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

## 2.2 STACK-SLEEVE FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.
  - 2. Zurn Industries, LLC.
- B. Description: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring, bolts, and nuts for membrane flashing.
  - 1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with setscrews.

## 2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Metraflex Company (The).
  - 2. Proco Products, Inc.
- B. Description: Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.
  - 1. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
  - 2. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel.
  - 3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

## 2.4 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Metraflex Company (The).
  - 2. Proco Products, Inc.
- B. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for imbedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit has plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

## 2.5 GROUT

- A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
  - 1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
  - 1. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP sleeves.
  - 2. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
    - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.
  - 3. Using grout, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
  - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
  - 2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
  - 3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements for sealants specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
- E. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.2 STACK-SLEEVE-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install stack-sleeve fittings in new slabs as slabs are constructed.
  - 1. Install fittings that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
  - 2. Secure flashing between clamping flanges for pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Comply with requirements for flashing specified in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
  - 3. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches above finished floor level.
  - 4. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
  - 5. Using grout, seal the space around outside of stack-sleeve fittings.
- B. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.
- B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

### 3.4 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- D. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

### 3.5 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
  - 1. Exterior Concrete Walls above Grade:



- a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Cast-iron wall sleeves.
  - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Cast-iron wall sleeves.
- 2. Exterior Concrete Walls below Grade:
  - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
    - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
  - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
    - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
- 3. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:
  - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
    - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
  - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
    - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
- 4. Concrete Slabs above Grade:
  - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.
  - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.
- 5. Interior Partitions:
  - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.
  - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel-sheet sleeves.

END OF SECTION 220517

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 220518 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Escutcheons.
  - 2. Floor plates.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- C. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- D. Split-Casting Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and with concealed hinge and setscrew.
- E. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish, concealed hinge, and spring-clip fasteners.

#### 2.2 FLOOR PLATES

- A. One-Piece Floor Plates: Cast-iron flange.
- B. Split-Casting Floor Plates: Cast brass with concealed hinge.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
- B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
  - 1. Escutcheons for New Piping:
    - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
    - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
    - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - e. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
    - f. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - g. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
    - h. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - i. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
    - j. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - k. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
- C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.
- D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
  - 1. New Piping: One-piece, floor-plate type.
  - 2. Existing Piping: Split-casting, floor-plate type.

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates using new materials.

END OF SECTION 220518

## SECTION 220519 - METERS AND GAGES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Bimetallic-actuated thermometers.
  - 2. Filled-system thermometers.
  - 3. Liquid-in-glass thermometers.
  - 4. Light-activated thermometers.
  - 5. Thermowells.
  - 6. Dial-type pressure gages.
  - 7. Gage attachments.
  - 8. Test plugs.
  - 9. Test-plug kits.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For meters and gages to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 BIMETALLIC-ACTUATED THERMOMETERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Ashcroft Inc.
  - 2. Marsh Bellofram.
  - 3. Terice, H. O. Co.

- 4. Weksler Glass Thermometer Corp.
- B. Standard: ASME B40.200.
- C. Case: Liquid-filled and sealed type(s); stainless steel with 3-inch nominal diameter.
- D. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings and scales in deg F and deg C.
- E. Connector Type(s): Union joint, adjustable angle, with unified-inch screw threads.
- F. Connector Size: 1/2 inch, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
- G. Stem: 0.25 or 0.375 inch in diameter; stainless steel.
- H. Window: Plain glass.
- I. Ring: Stainless steel.
- J. Element: Bimetal coil.
- K. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
- L. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.

## 2.2 FILLED-SYSTEM THERMOMETERS

- A. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Vapor-Actuated Thermometers:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Ashcroft Inc.
    - b. Marsh Bellofram.
    - c. Terice, H. O. Co.
    - d. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
  - 2. Standard: ASME B40.200.
  - 3. Case: Sealed type, cast aluminum or drawn steel; 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter.
  - 4. Element: Bourdon tube or other type of pressure element.
  - 5. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
  - 6. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F and deg C.
  - 7. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
  - 8. Window: Glass.
  - 9. Ring: Metal.

10. Connector Type(s): Union joint, adjustable, 180 degrees in vertical plane, 360 degrees in horizontal plane, with locking device; with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
11. Thermal System: Liquid-filled bulb in copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass stem and of length to suit installation.

- a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.

12. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.

B. Direct-Mounted, Plastic-Case, Vapor-Actuated Thermometers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Ashcroft Inc.
  - b. Miljoco Corporation.

2. Standard: ASME B40.200.
3. Case: Sealed type, plastic; 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter.
4. Element: Bourdon tube or other type of pressure element.
5. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
6. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F and deg C.
7. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
8. Window: Glass.
9. Ring: Metal.
10. Connector Type(s): Union joint, adjustable, 180 degrees in vertical plane, 360 degrees in horizontal plane, with locking device; with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
11. Thermal System: Liquid-filled bulb in copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass stem and of length to suit installation.

- a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.

12. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.

## 2.3 LIQUID-IN-GLASS THERMOMETERS

A. Metal-Case, Compact-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Terice, H. O. Co.

2. Standard: ASME B40.200.
3. Case: Cast aluminum; 6-inch nominal size.

4. Case Form: Back angle unless otherwise indicated.
5. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red organic liquid.
6. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F and deg C.
7. Window: Glass or plastic.
8. Stem: Aluminum or brass and of length to suit installation.
  - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
9. Connector: 3/4 inch, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
10. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

B. Plastic-Case, Compact-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
  - b. Weksler Glass Thermometer Corp.
  - c. WIKA Instrument Corporation.
2. Standard: ASME B40.200.
3. Case: Plastic; 6-inch nominal size.
4. Case Form: Back angle unless otherwise indicated.
5. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue organic liquid.
6. Tube Background: Nonreflective with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F and deg C.
7. Window: Glass or plastic.
8. Stem: Aluminum or brass and of length to suit installation.
  - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
9. Connector: 3/4 inch, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
10. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

C. Metal-Case, Industrial-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Palmer Wahl Instrumentation Group.
  - b. Trerice, H. O. Co.
  - c. Weiss Instruments, Inc.



2. Standard: ASME B40.200.
3. Case: Cast aluminum; 7-inch nominal size unless otherwise indicated.
4. Case Form: Adjustable angle unless otherwise indicated.
5. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue organic liquid.
6. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F and deg C.
7. Window: Glass.
8. Stem: Aluminum and of length to suit installation.
  - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
9. Connector: 1-1/4 inches, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
10. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

D. Plastic-Case, Industrial-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Marsh Bellofram.
  - b. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
  - c. Weksler Glass Thermometer Corp.
  - d. WIKA Instrument Corporation.
2. Standard: ASME B40.200.
3. Case: Plastic; 7-inch nominal size unless otherwise indicated.
4. Case Form: Adjustable angle unless otherwise indicated.
5. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue organic liquid.
6. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F and deg C.
7. Window: Glass.
8. Stem: Aluminum and of length to suit installation.
  - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
9. Connector: 1-1/4 inches, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
10. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

## 2.4 LIGHT-ACTIVATED THERMOMETERS

A. Direct-Mounted, Light-Activated Thermometers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Terice, H. O. Co.
  - b. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
  - c. WIKA Instrument Corporation.
2. Case: Plastic; 7-inch nominal size unless otherwise indicated.
3. Scale(s): Deg F and deg C.
4. Case Form: Adjustable angle.
5. Connector: 1-1/4 inches, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
6. Stem: Aluminum and of length to suit installation.
  - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
7. Display: Digital.
8. Accuracy: Plus or minus 2 deg F.

B. Remote-Mounted, Light-Activated Thermometers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Miljoco Corporation.
  - b. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
2. Case: Plastic, for wall mounting.
3. Scale(s): Deg F and deg C.
4. Sensor: Bulb and thermister wire.
  - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
5. Display: Digital.
6. Accuracy: Plus or minus 2 deg F.

## 2.5 THERMOWELLS

A. Thermowells:

1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
2. Description: Pressure-tight, socket-type fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
3. Material for Use with Copper Tubing: CNR.
4. Material for Use with Steel Piping: CRES.
5. Type: Stepped shank unless straight or tapered shank is indicated.
6. External Threads: NPS 1/2, NPS 3/4, or NPS 1, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.
7. Internal Threads: 1/2, 3/4, and 1 inch, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.

8. Bore: Diameter required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
9. Insertion Length: Length required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
10. Lagging Extension: Include on thermowells for insulated piping and tubing.
11. Bushings: For converting size of thermowell's internal screw thread to size of thermometer connection.

B. Heat-Transfer Medium: Mixture of graphite and glycerin.

## 2.6 PRESSURE GAGES

A. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Ametek U.S. Gauge.
  - b. Ashcroft Inc.
  - c. Trerice, H. O. Co.
  - d. Weksler Glass Thermometer Corp.
2. Standard: ASME B40.100.
3. Case: Liquid-filled type(s); cast aluminum or drawn steel; 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter.
4. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
5. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
6. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
7. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi.
8. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
9. Window: Glass.
10. Ring: Metal.
11. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of scale range.

B. Direct-Mounted, Plastic-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Ametek U.S. Gauge.
  - b. Ashcroft Inc.
  - c. Trerice, H. O. Co.
  - d. Weksler Glass Thermometer Corp.
2. Standard: ASME B40.100.
3. Case: Sealed type; plastic; 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter.
4. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.

5. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
6. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
7. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi.
8. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
9. Window: Glass.
10. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of scale range.

## 2.7 GAGE ATTACHMENTS

- A. Snubbers: ASME B40.100, brass; with NPS 1/4, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and porous-metal-type surge-dampening device. Include extension for use on insulated piping.
- B. Valves: Brass or stainless-steel needle, with NPS 1/4, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.

## 2.8 TEST PLUGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  1. Peterson Equipment Co., Inc.
  2. Terice, H. O. Co.
  3. Weksler Glass Thermometer Corp.
- B. Description: Test-station fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
- C. Body: Brass or stainless steel with core inserts and gasketed and threaded cap. Include extended stem on units to be installed in insulated piping.
- D. Thread Size: NPS 1/4, ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
- E. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Rating: 500 psig at 200 deg F.
- F. Core Inserts: Chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic self-sealing rubber.

## 2.9 TEST-PLUG KITS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  1. Peterson Equipment Co., Inc.
  2. Terice, H. O. Co.
  3. Weiss Instruments, Inc.

- B. Furnish one test-plug kit(s) containing one thermometer(s), one pressure gage and adapter, and carrying case. Thermometer sensing elements, pressure gage, and adapter probes shall be of diameter to fit test plugs and of length to project into piping.
- C. Low-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch- diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least 25 to 125 deg F.
- D. High-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch- diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least 0 to 220 deg F.
- E. Pressure Gage: Small, Bourdon-tube insertion type with 2- to 3-inch- diameter dial and probe. Dial range shall be at least 0 to 200 psig.
- F. Carrying Case: Metal or plastic, with formed instrument padding.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install thermowells with socket extending to center of pipe and in vertical position in piping tees.
- B. Install thermowells of sizes required to match thermometer connectors. Include bushings if required to match sizes.
- C. Install thermowells with extension on insulated piping.
- D. Fill thermowells with heat-transfer medium.
- E. Install direct-mounted thermometers in thermowells and adjust vertical and tilted positions.
- F. Install direct-mounted pressure gages in piping tees with pressure gage located on pipe at the most readable position.
- G. Install valve and snubber in piping for each pressure gage for fluids.
- H. Install test plugs in piping tees.
- I. Install thermometers in the following locations:
  - 1. Inlet and outlet of each water heater.
- J. Install pressure gages in the following locations:
  - 1. Building water service entrance into building.
  - 2. Inlet and outlet of each pressure-reducing valve.
  - 3. Suction and discharge of each domestic water pump.

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Install meters and gages adjacent to machines and equipment to allow service and maintenance of meters, gages, machines, and equipment.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust faces of meters and gages to proper angle for best visibility.

### 3.4 THERMOMETER SCHEDULE

- A. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each domestic water heater shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Liquid-filled, bimetallic-actuated type.
  - 2. Direct-mounted, metal-case, vapor-actuated type.
  - 3. Metal case, compact-style, liquid-in-glass type.
  - 4. Direct-mounted, light-activated type.
- B. Thermometer stems shall be of length to match thermowell insertion length.

### 3.5 THERMOMETER SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

- A. Scale Range for Domestic Cold-Water Piping: 0 to 100 deg F.
- B. Scale Range for Domestic Hot-Water Piping: 30 to 240 deg F.

### 3.6 PRESSURE-GAGE SCHEDULE

- A. Pressure gages at discharge of each water service into building shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Liquid-filled, direct-mounted, metal case.
  - 2. Sealed, direct-mounted, plastic case.
- B. Pressure gages at inlet and outlet of each water pressure-reducing valve shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Liquid-filled, direct-mounted, metal case.
  - 2. Sealed, direct-mounted, plastic case.
- C. Pressure gages at suction and discharge of each domestic water pump shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Liquid-filled, direct-mounted, metal case.
  - 2. Sealed, **[direct]**-mounted, plastic case.

### 3.7 PRESSURE-GAGE SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

- A. Scale Range for Water Service Piping: 0 to 100 psi.
- B. Scale Range for Domestic Water Piping: 0 to 100 psi.

END OF SECTION 220519

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK



## SECTION 220523.12 - BALL VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Bronze ball valves.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CWP: Cold working pressure.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve.
  - 1. Certification that products comply with NSF 61 Annex G.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
  - 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
  - 2. Protect threads, flange faces, and soldered ends.
  - 3. Set ball valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.
- B. Use the following precautions during storage:
  - 1. Maintain valve end protection.
  - 2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher-than-ambient-dew-point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.
- C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use operating handles or stems as lifting or rigging points.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. ASME Compliance:
  - 1. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded end valves.
  - 2. ASME B16.1 for flanges on iron valves.
  - 3. ASME B16.5 for flanges on steel valves.
  - 4. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
  - 5. ASME B16.18 for solder-joint connections.
  - 6. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.
- C. NSF Compliance: NSF 61 Annex G for valve materials for potable-water service.
- D. Bronze valves shall be made with dezincification-resistant materials. Bronze valves made with copper alloy (brass) containing more than 15 percent zinc are not permitted.
- E. Valve Pressure-Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- F. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Valve Actuator Types:
  - 1. Gear Actuator: For quarter-turn valves NPS 4 and larger.
  - 2. Handlever: For quarter-turn valves smaller than NPS 4.
- H. Valves in Insulated Piping:
  - 1. Include 2-inch stem extensions.
  - 2. Extended operating handles of nonthermal-conductive material and protective sleeves that allow operation of valves without breaking vapor seals or disturbing insulation.
  - 3. Memory stops that are fully adjustable after insulation is applied.

### 2.2 BRONZE BALL VALVES

- A. Bronze Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Full Port, and Bronze or Brass Trim:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.

- b. NIBCO INC.
- c. WATTS.
- d. Zurn Industries, LLC.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
- b. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
- c. Body Design: Two piece.
- d. Body Material: Bronze.
- e. Ends: Threaded and soldered.
- f. Seats: PTFE.
- g. Stem: Bronze or brass.
- h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
- i. Port: Full.

B. Bronze Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Full Port and Stainless-Steel Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

- a. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
- b. NIBCO INC.
- c. WATTS.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
- b. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
- c. Body Design: Two piece.
- d. Body Material: Bronze.
- e. Ends: Threaded or soldered.
- f. Seats: PTFE.
- g. Stem: Stainless steel.
- h. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
- i. Port: Full.

C. Bronze Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Regular Port and Bronze or Brass Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

- a. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
- b. NIBCO INC.
- c. WATTS.

2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
  - b. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
  - c. Body Design: Two piece.
  - d. Body Material: Bronze.
  - e. Ends: Threaded.
  - f. Seats: PTFE.
  - g. Stem: Bronze or brass.
  - h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
  - i. Port: Regular.

D. Bronze Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Regular Port and Stainless-Steel Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - b. NIBCO INC.
  - c. WATTS.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
  - b. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
  - c. Body Design: Two piece.
  - d. Body Material: Bronze.
  - e. Ends: Threaded.
  - f. Seats: PTFE.
  - g. Stem: Stainless steel.
  - h. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
  - i. Port: Regular.

E. Bronze Ball Valves, Three-Piece with Full Port and Bronze or Brass Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - b. NIBCO INC.
  - c. WATTS.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
  - b. CWP Rating: 600 psig.

- c. Body Design: Three piece.
- d. Body Material: Bronze.
- e. Ends: Threaded.
- f. Seats: PTFE.
- g. Stem: Bronze or brass.
- h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
- i. Port: Full.

F. Bronze Ball Valves, Three-Piece with Full Port and Stainless-Steel Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - b. NIBCO INC.
  - c. WATTS.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
  - b. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
  - c. Body Design: Three piece.
  - d. Body Material: Bronze.
  - e. Ends: Threaded.
  - f. Seats: PTFE.
  - g. Stem: Stainless steel.
  - h. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
  - i. Port: Full.

G. Bronze Ball Valves, Three-Piece with Regular Port and Bronze Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - b. NIBCO INC.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
  - b. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
  - c. Body Design: Three piece
  - d. Body Material: Bronze
  - e. Ends: Threaded or soldered.
  - f. Seats: PTFE.
  - g. Stem: Bronze.

- h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
- i. Port: Regular.

H. Bronze Ball Valves, Three-Piece with Regular Port and Stainless-Steel Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - b. NIBCO INC.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
  - b. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
  - c. Body Design: Three piece.
  - d. Body Material: Bronze.
  - e. Ends: Threaded or soldered.
  - f. Seats: PTFE.
  - g. Stem: Stainless steel.
  - h. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
  - i. Port: Regular.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

### 3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- E. Install valve tags. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.

### 3.3 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. If valves with specified CWP ratings are unavailable, the same types of valves with higher CWP ratings may be substituted.
- B. Select valves with the following end connections:
  - 1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
  - 2. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
  - 3. For Copper Tubing, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged ends.
  - 4. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends.
  - 5. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
  - 6. For Steel Piping, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged ends.

### 3.4 DOMESTIC HOT- AND COLD-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Pipe NPS 3 and Smaller:
  - 1. Bronze Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
  - 2. Bronze ball valves, two-piece with full port and bronze or brass trim.
  - 3. Bronze ball valves, three-piece with full port and bronze or brass trim.
  - 4. Bronze ball valves, two-piece with regular port and bronze trim.

END OF SECTION 220523.12

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK



## SECTION 220523.14 - CHECK VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Bronze lift check valves.
  - 2. Bronze swing check valves.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CWP: Cold working pressure.
- B. EPDM: Ethylene propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
- C. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve.
  - 1. Certification that products comply with NSF 61 Annex G and NSF 372.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
  - 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
  - 2. Protect threads, flange faces, grooves, and weld ends.
  - 3. Set check valves in either closed or open position.
- B. Use the following precautions during storage:
  - 1. Maintain valve end protection.
  - 2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher-than-ambient-dew-point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.

- C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. ASME Compliance:
  - 1. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded end valves.
  - 2. ASME B16.18 for solder joint.
  - 3. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.
- C. AWWA Compliance: Comply with AWWA C606 for grooved-end connections.
- D. NSF Compliance: NSF 61 Annex G for valve materials for potable-water service.
- E. Bronze valves shall be made with dezincification-resistant materials. Bronze valves made with copper alloy (brass) containing more than 15 percent zinc are not permitted.
- F. Valve Pressure-Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- G. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

### 2.2 BRONZE LIFT CHECK VALVES

- A. Bronze Lift Check Valves with Bronze Disc, Class 125:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Crane; Crane Energy Flow Solutions.
    - b. Jenkins Valves; Crane Energy Flow Solutions.
    - c. Stockham; Crane Energy Flow Solutions.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.

- c. Body Design: Vertical flow.
- d. Body Material: ASTM B 61 or ASTM B 62, bronze.
- e. Ends: Threaded or soldered. See valve schedule articles.
- f. Disc: Bronze.

B. Bronze Lift Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc, Class 125, :

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - b. NIBCO INC.
  - c. WATTS.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
  - c. Body Design: Vertical flow.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM B 61 or ASTM B 62, bronze.
  - e. Ends: Threaded or soldered. See valve schedule articles.
  - f. Disc: NBR, PTFE.

## 2.3 BRONZE SWING CHECK VALVES

A. Bronze Swing Check Valves with Bronze Disc, Class 125:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - b. NIBCO INC.
  - c. WATTS.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 3.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
  - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
  - e. Ends: Threaded or soldered. See valve schedule articles.
  - f. Disc: Bronze.

B. Bronze Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc, Class 125:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - b. NIBCO INC.
  - c. WATTS.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 4.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
  - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
  - e. Ends: Threaded or soldered. See valve schedule articles.
  - f. Disc: PTFE.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

#### 3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.

- E. Install check valves for proper direction of flow and as follows:
  - 1. Swing Check Valves: In horizontal position with hinge pin level.
  - 2. Center-Guided Check Valves: In horizontal or vertical position, between flanges.
  - 3. Lift Check Valves: With stem upright and plumb.
- F. Install valve tags. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

### 3.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:
  - 1. Pump-Discharge Check Valves:
    - a. NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze swing check valves with bronze disc.
- B. If valves with specified CWP ratings are unavailable, the same types of valves with higher CWP ratings may be substituted.
- C. End Connections:
  - 1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 3 and Smaller: Threaded or soldered.

### 3.5 DOMESTIC HOT- AND COLD-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Pipe NPS 3 and Smaller: Bronze swing check valves with bronze disc, Class 125, with soldered end connections.

END OF SECTION 220523.14

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 220529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
  - 2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
  - 3. Metal framing systems.
  - 4. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
  - 5. Fastener systems.
  - 6. Pipe stands.
  - 7. Pipe positioning systems.
  - 8. Equipment supports.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for structural-steel shapes and plates for trapeze hangers for pipe and equipment supports.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.

#### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for plumbing piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
  - 1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
  - 2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.

## 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

## 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Structural Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
  - 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
  - 2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.
  - 3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
  - 4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
  - 5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.

### 2.2 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

- A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

### 2.3 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

- A. MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. B-line, an Eaton business.



- b. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.
    - c. Unistrut; Part of Atkore International.
  - 2. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
  - 3. Standard: MFMA-4.
  - 4. Channels: Continuous slotted steel channel with inturned lips.
  - 5. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped steel nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
  - 6. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
  - 7. Metallic Coating: Electroplated zinc.
  - 8. Paint Coating: Vinyl.
  - 9. Plastic Coating: PVC.
- B. Non-MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Anvil International.
    - b. Empire Industries, Inc.
    - c. Gripple Inc.
  - 2. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made of steel channels, accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
  - 3. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4.
  - 4. Channels: Continuous slotted steel channel with inturned lips.
  - 5. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped steel nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
  - 6. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
  - 7. Coating: Zinc.

## 2.4 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Buckaroos, Inc.
  - 2. National Pipe Hanger Corporation.
  - 3. Pipe Shields Inc.
- B. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig minimum compressive strength and vapor barrier.
- C. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig minimum compressive strength.

- D. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.
- E. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
- F. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

## 2.5 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated steel anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

## 2.6 PIPE STANDS

- A. General Requirements for Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated assemblies made of manufactured corrosion-resistant components to support roof-mounted piping.
- B. Compact Pipe Stand: One-piece plastic unit with integral-rod roller, pipe clamps, or V-shaped cradle to support pipe, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
- C. Low-Type, Single-Pipe Stand: One-piece plastic base unit with plastic roller, for roof installation without membrane penetration.

## 2.7 PIPE POSITIONING SYSTEMS

- A. Description: IAPMO PS 42, positioning system of metal brackets, clips, and straps for positioning piping in pipe spaces; for plumbing fixtures in commercial applications.

## 2.8 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

## 2.9 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.

- B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
  - 1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
  - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.
- B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
  - 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
  - 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled metal framing systems.
- D. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
- E. Fastener System Installation:
  - 1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
  - 2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Pipe Stand Installation:
  - 1. Pipe Stand Types: Assemble components and mount on smooth roof surface. Do not penetrate roof membrane.
- G. Pipe Positioning-System Installation: Install support devices to make rigid supply and waste piping connections to each plumbing fixture.

- H. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- I. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- J. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- K. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- L. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- M. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- N. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- O. Insulated Piping:
  - 1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
    - a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
    - b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
    - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
  - 2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
    - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
  - 3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
    - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
  - 4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
    - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
    - b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.

- c. NPS 5 and NPS 6: 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
- d. NPS 8 to NPS 14: 24 inches long and 0.075 inch thick.
- e. NPS 16 to NPS 24: 24 inches long and 0.105 inch thick.

5. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

### 3.2 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

### 3.3 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - 4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

### 3.5 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
  - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

### 3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports, metal trapeze pipe hangers and metal framing systems and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper or stainless-steel attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- G. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- H. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.
- I. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
  - 2. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 if little or no insulation is required.
  - 3. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 4, to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
  - 4. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 8.
  - 5. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.

6. Adjustable Band Hangers (MSS Type 9): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
  7. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
  8. Split Pipe Ring with or without Turnbuckle Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 8.
  9. Extension Hinged or Two-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 3.
  10. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
  11. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
  12. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
  13. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
  14. Adjustable Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36 if vertical adjustment is required, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
  15. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 1 to NPS 30, from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
  16. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 24, from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
  17. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 42 if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.
  18. Pipe Roll and Plate Units (MSS Type 45): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 24 if small horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur and vertical adjustment is not necessary.
  19. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 30 if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation might be required in addition to expansion and contraction.
- J. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.
  2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- K. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
  2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
  3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11, split pipe rings.

4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
  5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
- L. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
  2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
  3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
  4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
  5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
  6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
  7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
  8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
  9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
  10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
  11. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
  12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
    - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
    - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
    - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.
  13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
  14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
  15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.
- M. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
  2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
  3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.



- N. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Restraint-Control Devices (MSS Type 47): Where indicated to control piping movement.
  2. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches.
  3. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41, roll hanger with springs.
  4. Spring Sway Braces (MSS Type 50): To retard sway, shock, vibration, or thermal expansion in piping systems.
  5. Variable-Spring Hangers (MSS Type 51): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from hanger.
  6. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
  7. Variable-Spring Trapeze Hangers (MSS Type 53): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from trapeze support.
- O. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- P. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- Q. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.
- R. Use pipe positioning systems in pipe spaces behind plumbing fixtures to support supply and waste piping for plumbing fixtures.

END OF SECTION 220529

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 220553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Equipment labels.
  - 2. Warning signs and labels.
  - 3. Pipe labels.
  - 4. Stencils.
  - 5. Valve tags.
  - 6. Warning tags.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Valve Schedules: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

- A. Metal Labels for Equipment:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Brady Corporation.
    - b. Marking Services, Inc.
    - c. Seton Identification Products.
  - 2. Material and Thickness: Brass, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
  - 3. Letter Color: Black.

4. Background Color: White.
5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets.
8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

B. Plastic Labels for Equipment:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Brady Corporation.
  - b. Marking Services, Inc.
  - c. Seton Identification Products.
2. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
3. Letter Color: Black.
4. Background Color: White.
5. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
6. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
7. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
8. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets.
9. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

C. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number.

## 2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  1. Brady Corporation.
  2. Marking Services Inc.
  3. Seton Identification Products.
- B. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.

- C. Letter Color: White.
- D. Background Color: Red.
- E. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- F. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- G. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
- H. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets.
- I. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- J. Label Content: Include caution and warning information plus emergency notification instructions.

## 2.3 PIPE LABELS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Brady Corporation.
  - 2. Marking Services Inc.
  - 3. Seton Identification Products.
- B. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction.
- C. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to partially cover circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- D. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- E. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings; also include pipe size and an arrow indicating flow direction.
  - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping-system service lettering to accommodate both directions or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
  - 2. Lettering Size: Size letters according to ASME A13.1 for piping.

## 2.4 STENCILS

### A. Stencils for Piping:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Brimar Industries, Inc.
  - b. Craftmark Pipe Markers.
  - c. Marking Seviles Inc.
2. Lettering Size: Size letters according to ASME A13.1 for piping.
3. Stencil Material: Fiberboard or metal.
4. Stencil Paint: Exterior, gloss, alkyd enamel in colors complying with recommendations in ASME A13.1 unless otherwise indicated. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
5. Identification Paint: Exterior, alkyd enamel in colors according to ASME A13.1 unless otherwise indicated. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.

## 2.5 VALVE TAGS

### A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

1. Brady Corporation.
2. Marking Seviles Inc.
3. Seton Identification Products.

### B. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers.

1. Tag Material: Brass, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
2. Fasteners: Brass wire-link chain.

### C. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.

1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

## 2.6 WARNING TAGS

### A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

1. Brady Corporation.
  2. Marking Services Inc.
  3. Seton Identification Products.
- B. Description: Preprinted or partially preprinted accident-prevention tags of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.
1. Size: 3 by 5-1/4 inches minimum.
  2. Fasteners: Brass grommet and wire.
  3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
  4. Color: Safety yellow background with black lettering.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

#### 3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

#### 3.3 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

#### 3.4 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Piping Color Coding: Painting of piping is specified in Division 09 Section "Interior Painting."
- B. Stenciled Pipe Label Option: Stenciled labels may be provided instead of manufactured pipe labels, at Installer's option. Install stenciled pipe labels, complying with ASME A13.1, on each piping system.

1. Identification Paint: Use for contrasting background.
  2. Stencil Paint: Use for pipe marking.
- C. Pipe Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
1. Near each valve and control device.
  2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
  3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
  4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
  5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
  6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
  7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.
- D. Directional Flow Arrows: Arrows shall be used to indicate direction of flow in pipes, including pipes where flow is allowed in both directions.
- E. Pipe Label Color Schedule:
1. Domestic Water Piping
    - a. Background: Safety green.
    - b. Letter Colors: White.
  2. Sanitary Waste and Storm Drainage Piping:
    - a. Background Color: Safety white.
    - b. Letter Color: Black.

### 3.5 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves, valves within factory-fabricated equipment units, shutoff valves, faucets, convenience and lawn-watering hose connections, and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.
- B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in the following subparagraphs:
1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:
    - a. Cold Water: 1-1/2 inches, round.
    - b. Hot Water: 1-1/2 inches, round.



2. Valve-Tag Colors:
  - a. Cold Water: Natural.
  - b. Hot Water: Natural.
3. Letter Colors:
  - a. Cold Water: White.
  - b. Hot Water: White.

### 3.6 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

END OF SECTION 220553

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 220719 - PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following plumbing piping services:
  - 1. Domestic cold-water piping.
  - 2. Domestic hot-water piping.
  - 3. Domestic recirculating hot-water piping.
  - 4. Roof drains and rainwater leaders.
  - 5. Supplies and drains for handicap-accessible lavatories and sinks.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied, if any).

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.

2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.
- C. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous components:
  1. Supply and Drain Protective Shielding Guards: ICC A117.1.

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

#### 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.
- C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

#### 1.8 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" and "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.

- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.
    - b. Armacell LLC.
    - c. K-Flex USA.
- G. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
    - b. Knauf Insulation.
    - c. Owens Corning.
  - 2. Type I, 850 Deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ-SSL. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

## 2.2 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.
    - b. Armacell LLC.
    - c. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - d. K-Flex USA.

- C. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
- D. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - c. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.
- E. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Dow Consumer Solutions.
    - b. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
    - c. Speedline Corporation.

## 2.3 SEALANTS

- A. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - c. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.
  - 2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
  - 3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
  - 4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
  - 5. Color: Aluminum.
- B. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl, PVDC, and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
5. Color: White.

#### 2.4 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
  1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
  2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
  3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.

#### 2.5 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
    - b. Proto Corporation.
    - c. Speedline Corporation.
  2. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
  3. Color: White.
  4. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.
    - a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.

C. Metal Jacket:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. ITW Insulation Systems; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
  - b. RPR Products, Inc.
2. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
  - a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing.
  - b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
  - c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
  - d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
  - e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
    - 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
    - 2) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
    - 3) Tee covers.
    - 4) Flange and union covers.
    - 5) End caps.
    - 6) Beveled collars.
    - 7) Valve covers.
    - 8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.
3. Stainless-Steel Jacket: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M.
  - a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing.
  - b. Material, finish, and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
  - c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
  - d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
  - e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
    - 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
    - 2) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
    - 3) Tee covers.
    - 4) Flange and union covers.
    - 5) End caps.
    - 6) Beveled collars.



- 7) Valve covers.
- 8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.

## 2.6 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. 3M Industrial Adhesives and Tapes Division.
    - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division.
    - c. Knauf Insulation.
  2. Width: 3 inches.
  3. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
  4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
  5. Elongation: 2 percent.
  6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
  7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. 3M Industrial Adhesives and Tapes Division.
    - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division.
    - c. Knauf Insulation.
  2. Width: 3 inches.
  3. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
  4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
  5. Elongation: 2 percent.
  6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
  7. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.
- C. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. 3M Industrial Adhesives and Tapes Division.
  - b. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company.
2. Width: 2 inches.
3. Thickness: 6 mils.
4. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 500 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch in width.

D. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. 3M Industrial Adhesives and Tapes Division.
  - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division.
  - c. Knauf Insulation.
2. Width: 2 inches.
3. Thickness: 3.7 mils.
4. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 5 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.

## 2.7 SECUREMENTS

A. Bands:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. ITW Insulation Systems; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
  - b. RPR Products, Inc.
2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304; 0.015 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing seal.
3. Aluminum: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing seal.

B. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch-wide, stainless steel or Monel.

C. Wire: 0.080-inch nickel-copper alloy.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

- a. C & F Wire.

## 2.8 PROTECTIVE SHIELDING GUARDS

### A. Protective Shielding Pipe Covers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

- a. Buckaroos, Inc.
  - b. McGuire Manufacturing.
  - c. Truebro.
  - d. Zurn Industries, LLC.

2. Description: Manufactured plastic wraps for covering plumbing fixture hot- and cold-water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) requirements.

### B. Protective Shielding Piping Enclosures:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

- a. Truebro.
  - b. Zurn Industries, LLC.

2. Description: Manufactured plastic enclosure for covering plumbing fixture hot- and cold-water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with ADA requirements.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.

1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
  2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.

- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.

### 3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
  - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
  - 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.

- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
  - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
  - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch-wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
  - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 4 inches o.c.
    - a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
  - 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
  - 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.
- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.
- P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
  - 1. Vibration-control devices.
  - 2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
  - 3. Nameplates and data plates.
  - 4. Cleanouts.

### 3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
  - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  - 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  - 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
  - 4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.

- B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
  - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  - 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  - 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
  - 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
  - 1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
  - 1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
  - 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.
- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:
  - 1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
  - 3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt

each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.

4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
  5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
  6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
  7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
  8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
  9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union." Match size and color of pipe labels.
- C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.
- D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:
1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
  2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.

3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

### 3.6 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

- A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
  1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
  2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
  3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
  4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
  1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
  2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
  1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.
  2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
  3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
  4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.



### 3.7 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

#### A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

#### B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

#### C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

#### D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

### 3.8 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

#### A. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:

1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
  2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
  3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
  4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch-wide joint strips at end joints.
  5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.
- B. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.
- C. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

### 3.9 FINISHES

- A. Insulation with ASJ, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Division 09 Section "Exterior Painting" and Division 09 Section "Interior Painting."
1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
    - a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
- C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
- D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

### 3.10 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:
1. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces.

2. Underground piping.
3. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

### 3.11 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

#### A. Domestic Cold Water:

1. NPS 1 and Smaller: Insulation shall be one of the following:
  - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1/2 inch thick.
  - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1/2 inch thick.
2. NPS 1-1/4 and Larger: Insulation shall be one of the following:
  - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
  - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.

#### B. Domestic Hot and Recirculated Hot Water:

1. NPS 1-1/4 and Smaller: Insulation shall be one of the following:
  - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 3/4 inch thick.
  - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1/2 inch thick.
2. NPS 1-1/2 and Larger: Insulation shall be one of the following:
  - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
  - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.

#### C. Roof Drain and Overflow Drain Bodies:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
  - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
  - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.

#### D. Exposed Sanitary Drains, Domestic Water, Domestic Hot Water, and Stops for Plumbing Fixtures for People with Disabilities:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
  - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1/2 inch thick.
  - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1/2 inch thick.

#### E. Floor Drains, Traps, and Sanitary Drain Piping within 10 Feet of Drain Receiving Condensate and Equipment Drain Water below 60 Deg F:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:

- a. Flexible Elastomeric: 3/4 inch thick.
- b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1/2 inch thick.

### 3.12 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Piping, Concealed:
  - 1. None.
- D. Piping, Exposed:
  - 1. PVC: 20 mils thick.

END OF SECTION 220719

## SECTION 22 1113 - FACILITY WATER DISTRIBUTION PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes water-distribution piping and related components outside the building for combined water service and fire-service mains.
- B. Utility-furnished products include water meters that will be furnished to the site, ready for installation.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Detail precast concrete vault assemblies and indicate dimensions, method of field assembly, and components.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control test reports.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Regulatory Requirements:
  - 1. Comply with requirements of utility company supplying water. Include tapping of water mains and backflow prevention.
  - 2. Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction for potable-water-service piping, including materials, installation, testing, and disinfection.
  - 3. Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction for fire-suppression water-service piping, including materials, hose threads, installation, and testing.
- B. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- C. Comply with ASTM F 645 for selection, design, and installation of thermoplastic water piping.

- D. Comply with FMG's "Approval Guide" or UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" for fire-service-main products.
- E. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 24 for materials, installations, tests, flushing, and valve and hydrant supervision for fire-service-main piping for fire suppression.
- F. NSF Compliance:
  - 1. Comply with NSF 14 for plastic potable-water-service piping. Include marking "NSF-pw" on piping.
  - 2. Comply with NSF 61 for materials for water-service piping and specialties for domestic water.

## 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Water-Distribution Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary water-distribution service according to requirements indicated:
  - 1. Notify Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of service.
  - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of water-distribution service without Owner's written permission.

## 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate connection to water main with utility company.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K and ASTM B 88, Type L, water tube, annealed temper.
  - 1. Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper, solder-joint pressure type. Furnish only wrought-copper fittings if indicated.
- B. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K and ASTM B 88, Type L, water tube, drawn temper.
  - 1. Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper, solder-joint pressure type. Furnish only wrought-copper fittings if indicated.
- C. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151, with mechanical-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.

1. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153, ductile-iron compact pattern.
  2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
- D. Push-on-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151, with push-on-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
1. Push-on-Joint, Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153, ductile-iron compact pattern.
  2. Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber.
- E. Grooved-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151, with cut, rounded-grooved ends.
1. Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Pipe Appurtenances:
    - a. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - b. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - 1) Anvil International, Inc.
      - 2) Victaulic Company of America.
- F. PE, Fire-Service Pipe: ASTM F 714, AWWA C906, or equivalent for PE water pipe; FMG approved, with minimum thickness equivalent to FMG Class 200.
1. Molded PE Fittings: ASTM D 3350, PE resin, socket- or butt-fusion type, made to match PE pipe dimensions and class.
- G. PVC, AWWA Pipe: AWWA C900, Class 200, with bell end with gasket, and with spigot end.
1. Comply with UL 1285 for fire-service mains if indicated.
  2. PVC Fabricated Fittings: AWWA C900, Class 200, with bell-and-spigot or double-bell ends. Include elastomeric gasket in each bell.
  3. PVC Molded Fittings: AWWA C907, Class 150, with bell-and-spigot or double-bell ends. Include elastomeric gasket in each bell.
  4. Push-on-Joint, Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153, ductile-iron compact pattern.
    - a. Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber.
  5. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153, ductile-iron compact pattern.
    - a. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.

## 2.2 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to Section 33 0500 "Common Work Results for Utilities" for commonly used joining materials.
- B. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series.
- C. Bonding Adhesive for Fiberglass Piping: As recommended by fiberglass piping manufacturer.
- D. Plastic Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.3 PIPING SPECIALTIES

- A. Transition Fittings: Manufactured fitting or coupling same size as, with pressure rating at least equal to and ends compatible with, piping to be joined.
- B. Tubular-Sleeve Pipe Couplings:
  - 1. Description: Metal, bolted, sleeve-type, reducing or transition coupling, with center sleeve, gaskets, end rings, and bolt fasteners and with ends of same sizes as piping to be joined.
    - a. Standard: AWWA C219.

## 2.4 GATE VALVES

- A. AWWA, Cast-Iron Gate Valves:
  - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide a comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. American AVK Co.; Valves & Fittings Div.
    - b. American Cast Iron Pipe Co.; American Flow Control Div.
    - c. American Cast Iron Pipe Co.; Waterous Co. Subsidiary.
    - d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Div.
    - e. East Jordan Iron Works, Inc.
    - f. McWane, Inc.; Clow Valve Co. Div. (Oskaloosa).
    - g. McWane, Inc.; Kennedy Valve Div.
    - h. McWane, Inc.; M & H Valve Company Div.
    - i. McWane, Inc.; Tyler Pipe Div.; Utilities Div.
    - j. Mueller Co.; Water Products Div.



- k. NIBCO INC.
  - l. U.S. Pipe and Foundry Company.
4. Nonrising-Stem, Metal-Seated Gate Valves:
- a. Description: Gray- or ductile-iron body and bonnet; with cast-iron or bronze double-disc gate, bronze gate rings, bronze stem, and stem nut.
    - 1) Standard: AWWA C500.
    - 2) Minimum Pressure Rating: 200 psig.
    - 3) End Connections: Mechanical joint.
    - 4) Interior Coating: Complying with AWWA C550.
5. Nonrising-Stem, Resilient-Seated Gate Valves:
- a. Description: Gray- or ductile-iron body and bonnet; with bronze or gray- or ductile-iron gate, resilient seats, bronze stem, and stem nut.
    - 1) Standard: AWWA C509.
    - 2) Minimum Pressure Rating: 200 psig.
    - 3) End Connections: Mechanical joint.
    - 4) Interior Coating: Complying with AWWA C550.
6. Nonrising-Stem, High-Pressure, Resilient-Seated Gate Valves:
- a. Description: Ductile-iron body and bonnet; with bronze or ductile-iron gate, resilient seats, bronze stem, and stem nut.
    - 1) Standard: AWWA C509.
    - 2) Minimum Pressure Rating: 250 psig.
    - 3) End Connections: Push on or mechanical joint.
    - 4) Interior Coating: Complying with AWWA C550.
7. OS&Y, Rising-Stem, Metal-Seated Gate Valves:
- a. Description: Cast- or ductile-iron body and bonnet, with cast-iron double disc, bronze disc and seat rings, and bronze stem.
    - 1) Standard: AWWA C500.
    - 2) Minimum Pressure Rating: 200 psig.
    - 3) End Connections: Flanged.
8. OS&Y, Rising-Stem, Resilient-Seated Gate Valves:
- a. Description: Cast- or ductile-iron body and bonnet, with bronze or gray- or ductile-iron gate, resilient seats, and bronze stem.
    - 1) Standard: AWWA C509.
    - 2) Minimum Pressure Rating: 200 psig.

3) End Connections: Flanged.

B. UL/FMG, Cast-Iron Gate Valves:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide a comparable product by one of the following:

- a. American Cast Iron Pipe Co.; American Flow Control Div.
- b. American Cast Iron Pipe Co.; Waterous Co. Subsidiary.
- c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Div.
- d. McWane, Inc.; Clow Valve Co. Div. (Oskaloosa).McWane, Inc.; Kennedy Valve Div.
- e. McWane, Inc.; M & H Valve Company Div.
- f. Mueller Co.; Water Products Div.
- g. NIBCO INC.
- h. U.S. Pipe and Foundry Company.

4. UL/FMG, Nonrising-Stem Gate Valves:

- a. Description: Iron body and bonnet with flange for indicator post, bronze seating material, and inside screw.
  - 1) Standards: UL 262 and FMG approved.
  - 2) Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
  - 3) End Connections: Flanged.

5. OS&Y, Rising-Stem Gate Valves:

- a. Description: Iron body and bonnet and bronze seating material.
  - 1) Standards: UL 262 and FMG approved.
  - 2) Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
  - 3) End Connections: Flanged.

C. Bronze Gate Valves:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide or a comparable product by one of the following:

- a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
- b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
- c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Div.
- d. Hammond Valve.
- e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- f. NIBCO INC.
- g. Red-White Valve Corporation.

4. OS&Y, Rising-Stem Gate Valves:

- a. Description: Bronze body and bonnet and bronze stem.
  - 1) Standards: UL 262 and FMG approved.
  - 2) Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
  - 3) End Connections: Threaded.

5. Nonrising-Stem Gate Valves:

- a. Description: Class 125, Type 1, bronze with solid wedge, threaded ends, and malleable-iron handwheel.
  - 1) Standard: MSS SP-80.

## 2.5 GATE VALVE ACCESSORIES AND SPECIALTIES

### A. Tapping-Sleeve Assemblies:

- 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- 3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide a comparable product by one of the following:
  - a. American Cast Iron Pipe Co.; Waterous Co. Subsidiary.
  - b. East Jordan Iron Works, Inc.
  - c. Flowserve.
  - d. McWane, Inc.; Clow Valve Co. Div. (Oskaloosa).
  - e. McWane, Inc.; Kennedy Valve Div.
  - f. McWane, Inc.; M & H Valve Company Div.
  - g. Mueller Co.; Water Products Div.
  - h. U.S. Pipe and Foundry Company.
- 4. Description: Sleeve and valve compatible with drilling machine.

- a. Standard: MSS SP-60.
  - b. Tapping Sleeve: Cast- or ductile-iron or stainless-steel, two-piece bolted sleeve with flanged outlet for new branch connection. Include sleeve matching size and type of pipe material being tapped and with recessed flange for branch valve.
  - c. Valve: AWWA, cast-iron, nonrising-stem, resilient-seated gate valve with one raised face flange mating tapping-sleeve flange.
- B. Valve Boxes: Comply with AWWA M44 for cast-iron valve boxes. Include top section, adjustable extension of length required for depth of burial of valve, plug with lettering "WATER," and bottom section with base that fits over valve and with a barrel approximately 5 inches in diameter.
  - 1. Operating Wrenches: Steel, tee-handle with one pointed end, stem of length to operate deepest buried valve, and socket matching valve operating nut.
- C. Indicator Posts: UL 789, FMG-approved, vertical-type, cast-iron body with operating wrench, extension rod, and adjustable cast-iron barrel of length required for depth of burial of valve.

## 2.6 CURB VALVES

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Amcast Industrial Corporation; Lee Brass Co.
    - b. Ford Meter Box Company, Inc. (The); Pipe Products Div.
    - c. Jones, James Company.
    - d. Master Meter, Inc.
    - e. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
    - f. Mueller Co.; Water Products Div.
    - g. Red Hed Manufacturing & Supply.
- B. Service-Saddle Assemblies: Comply with AWWA C800. Include saddle and valve compatible with tapping machine.
  - 1. Service Saddle: Copper alloy with seal and AWWA C800, threaded outlet for corporation valve.
  - 2. Corporation Valve: Bronze body and ground-key plug, with AWWA C800, threaded inlet and outlet matching service piping material.
  - 3. Manifold: Copper fitting with two to four inlets as required, with ends matching corporation valves and outlet matching service piping material.

- C. Curb Valves: Comply with AWWA C800. Include bronze body, ground-key plug or ball, and wide tee head, with inlet and outlet matching service piping material.
- D. Service Boxes for Curb Valves: Similar to AWWA M44 requirements for cast-iron valve boxes. Include cast-iron telescoping top section of length required for depth of burial of valve, plug with lettering "WATER," and bottom section with base that fits over curb valve and with a barrel approximately 3 inches in diameter.
  - 1. Shutoff Rods: Steel, tee-handle with one pointed end, stem of length to operate deepest buried valve, and slotted end matching curb valve.

## 2.7 CONCRETE VAULTS

- A. Description: Precast, reinforced-concrete vault, designed for A-16 load designation according to ASTM C 857 and made according to ASTM C 858.
  - 1. Ladder: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel or polyethylene-encased steel steps.
  - 2. Manhole: ASTM A 48/A 48M Class No. 35A minimum tensile strength, gray-iron traffic frame and cover.
    - a. Dimension: 24-inch minimum diameter, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Manhole: ASTM A 536, Grade 60-40-18, ductile-iron traffic frame and cover.
    - a. Dimension: 24-inch- minimum diameter, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 4. Drain: ASME A112.6.3, cast-iron floor drain with outlet of size indicated. Include body anchor flange, light-duty cast-iron grate, bottom outlet, and integral or field-installed bronze ball or clapper-type backwater valve.

## 2.8 FIRE HYDRANTS

- A. Dry-Barrel Fire Hydrants:
  - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide or a comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. American AVK Co.; Valves & Fittings Div.
    - b. American Cast Iron Pipe Co.; American Flow Control Div.
    - c. American Cast Iron Pipe Co.; Waterous Co. Subsidiary.
    - d. American Foundry Group, Inc.
    - e. East Jordan Iron Works, Inc.

- f. McWane, Inc.; Clow Valve Co. Div. (Oskaloosa).
  - g. McWane, Inc.; Kennedy Valve Div.
  - h. McWane, Inc.; M & H Valve Company Div.
  - i. Mueller Co.; Water Products Div.
  - j. Troy Valve; a division of Penn-Troy Manufacturing, Inc.
  - k. U.S. Pipe and Foundry Company.
4. Description: Freestanding, with one NPS 4-1/2 and two NPS 2-1/2 outlets, 5-1/4-inch main valve, drain valve, and NPS 6 mechanical-joint inlet. Include interior coating according to AWWA C550. Hydrant shall have cast-iron body, compression-type valve opening against pressure and closing with pressure.
- a. Standard: AWWA C502.
  - b. Pressure Rating: 250 psig.
5. Description: Freestanding, with one NPS 4-1/2 and two NPS 2-1/2 outlets, 5-1/4-inch main valve, drain valve, and NPS 6 mechanical-joint inlet. Hydrant shall have cast-iron body, compression-type valve opening against pressure and closing with pressure.
- a. Standards: UL 246, FMG approved.
  - b. Pressure Rating: 250 psig.
  - c. Outlet Threads: NFPA 1963, with external hose thread used by local fire department. Include cast-iron caps with steel chains.
  - d. Operating and Cap Nuts: Pentagon, 1-1/2 inches point to flat.
  - e. Direction of Opening: Open hydrant valve by turning operating nut to left or counterclockwise.
  - f. Exterior Finish: Red alkyd-gloss enamel paint, unless otherwise indicated.

**B. Wet-Barrel Fire Hydrants:**

- 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- 3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide or a comparable product by one of the following:
  - a. American AVK Co.; Valves & Fittings Div.
  - b. Jones, James Company.
  - c. McWane, Inc.; Clow Valve Co. Div. (Corona).
  - d. McWane, Inc.; Clow Valve Co. Div. (Oskaloosa).
  - e. Mueller Co.; Water Products Div.
- 4. Description: Freestanding, with one NPS 4-1/2 and two NPS 2-1/2 outlets, NPS 6 threaded or flanged inlet, and base section with NPS 6 mechanical-joint inlet. Include interior coating according to AWWA C550.

- a. Standard: AWWA C503.
  - b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig minimum.
5. Description: Freestanding, with one NPS 4-1/2 and two NPS 2-1/2 outlets, NPS 6 threaded or flanged inlet, and base section with NPS 6 mechanical-joint inlet.
- a. Standards: UL 246 and FMG approved.
  - b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig minimum.
  - c. Outlet Threads: NFPA 1963, with external hose thread used by local fire department. Include cast-iron caps with steel chains.
  - d. Operating and Cap Nuts: Pentagon, 1-1/2 inches point to flat.
  - e. Direction of Opening: Open hydrant valves by turning operating nut to left or counterclockwise.
  - f. Exterior Finish: Red alkyd-gloss enamel paint, unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.9 FIRE DEPARTMENT CONNECTIONS

### A. Fire Department Connections:

- 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- 3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide or a comparable product by one of the following:
  - a. Elkhart Brass Mfg. Co., Inc.
  - b. Fire End & Croker Corporation.
  - c. Guardian Fire Equipment, Inc.
  - d. Kidde Fire Fighting.
  - e. Potter Roemer.
  - f. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
- 4. Description: Freestanding, with cast-bronze body, thread inlets according to NFPA 1963 and matching local fire department hose threads, and threaded bottom outlet. Include lugged caps, gaskets, and chains; lugged swivel connection and drop clapper for each hose-connection inlet; 18-inch- high brass sleeve; and round escutcheon plate.
  - a. Standard: UL 405.
  - b. Connections: Two NPS 2-1/2 inlets and one NPS 4 outlet.
  - c. Connections: Three NPS 2-1/2 inlets and one NPS 6 outlet.
  - d. Connections: Six NPS 2-1/2 inlets and one NPS 6 outlet.
  - e. Inlet Alignment: Inline, horizontal.
  - f. Finish Including Sleeve: Polished bronze.
  - g. Escutcheon Plate Marking: "AUTO SPKR & STANDPIPE."

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EARTHWORK

- A. Refer to Section 31 2000 "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

### 3.2 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. General: Use pipe, fittings, and joining methods for piping systems according to the following applications.
- B. Transition couplings and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping pressure rating may be used, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Do not use flanges or unions for underground piping.
- D. Flanges, unions, and special fittings may be used, instead of joints indicated, on aboveground piping and piping in vaults.
- E. Underground water-service piping NPS 3/4 to NPS 3 shall be soft copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type K ASTM B 88, Type L; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
- F. Underground water-service piping NPS 4 and NPS 6 shall be the following:
  - 1. Ductile-iron, push-on-joint pipe; ductile-iron, push-on-joint fittings; and gasketed joints or
  - 2. NPS 4 and NPS 6: NPS 6 PVC, AWWA Class 150 pipe; PVC, AWWA Class 150 molded fittings; and gasketed joints.
- G. Aboveground and Vault Water-Service Piping NPS 3/4 to NPS 3 shall be hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type K ASTM B 88, Type L; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
- H. Aboveground and vault water-service piping NPS 4 and NPS 6 shall be the any of following:
  - 1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type K ASTM B 88, Type L; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
  - 2. Ductile-iron, grooved-end pipe; ductile-iron, grooved-end appurtenances; and grooved joints.
- I. Underground Fire-Service-Main Piping NPS 4 to NPS 8 shall be any of the following:
  - 1. Ductile-iron, push-on-joint pipe; ductile-iron, push-on-joint fittings; and gasketed joints.
  - 2. PE, Class 200, fire-service pipe; molded PE fittings; and heat-fusion joints.
  - 3. PVC, AWWA Class 150 pipe listed for fire-protection service; PVC Class 150 fabricated or molded fittings; and gasketed joints.
  - 4. PVC, AWWA Class 200 pipe listed for fire-protection service; PVC Class 200 fabricated fittings; and gasketed joints.



- J. Aboveground and Vault Fire-Service-Main Piping NPS 4 to NPS 8 shall be ductile-iron, grooved-end pipe; ductile-iron-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
- K. Underground Combined Water-Service and Fire-Service-Main Piping NPS 6 to NPS 10 shall be any of the following:
  - 1. Ductile-iron, push-on-joint pipe; ductile-iron, push-on-joint fittings; and gasketed joints.
  - 2. PVC, AWWA Class 200 pipe listed for fire-protection service; PVC fabricated or molded fittings of same class as pipe; and gasketed joints.
- L. Aboveground and Vault Combined Water Service and Fire-Service-Main Piping NPS 6 to NPS 10 shall be ductile-iron, grooved-end pipe; ductile-iron-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.

### 3.3 VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. General Application: Use mechanical-joint-end valves for NPS 3 and larger underground installation. Use threaded- or flanged-end valves for installation in vaults. Use UL/FMG, nonrising-stem gate valves for installation with indicator posts. Use corporation valves and curb valves with ends compatible with piping, for NPS 2 and smaller installation.
- B. Drawings indicate valve types to be used. Where specific valve types are not indicated, the following requirements apply:
  - 1. Underground Valves, NPS 3 and Larger: AWWA, cast-iron, nonrising-stem, resilient-seated gate valves with valve box.
  - 2. Underground Valves, NPS 4 and Larger, for Indicator Posts: UL/FMG, cast-iron, nonrising-stem gate valves with indicator post.
  - 3. Use the following for valves in vaults and aboveground:
    - a. Gate Valves, NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze, rising stem.
    - b. Gate Valves, NPS 3 and Larger: AWWA, cast iron, OS&Y rising stem, resilient seated.

### 3.4 PIPING SYSTEMS - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. See Section 33 0500 "Common Work Results for Utilities" for piping-system common requirements.

### 3.5 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Water-Main Connection: Arrange with utility company for tap of size and in location indicated in water main.
- B. Water-Main Connection: Tap water main according to requirements of water utility company and of size and in location indicated.
- C. Make connections larger than NPS 2 with tapping machine according to the following:

1. Install tapping sleeve and tapping valve according to MSS SP-60.
  2. Install tapping sleeve on pipe to be tapped. Position flanged outlet for gate valve.
  3. Use tapping machine compatible with valve and tapping sleeve; cut hole in main. Remove tapping machine and connect water-service piping.
  4. Install gate valve onto tapping sleeve. Comply with MSS SP-60. Install valve with stem pointing up and with valve box.
- D. Make connections NPS 2 and smaller with drilling machine according to the following:
1. Install service-saddle assemblies and corporation valves in size, quantity, and arrangement required by utility company standards.
  2. Install service-saddle assemblies on water-service pipe to be tapped. Position outlets for corporation valves.
  3. Use drilling machine compatible with service-saddle assemblies and corporation valves. Drill hole in main. Remove drilling machine and connect water-service piping.
  4. Install corporation valves into service-saddle assemblies.
  5. Install manifold for multiple taps in water main.
  6. Install curb valve in water-service piping with head pointing up and with service box.
- E. Comply with NFPA 24 for fire-service-main piping materials and installation.
1. Install copper tube and fittings according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- F. Install ductile-iron, water-service piping according to AWWA C600 and AWWA M41.
- G. Install PE pipe according to ASTM D 2774 and ASTM F 645.
- H. Install PVC, AWWA pipe according to ASTM F 645 and AWWA M23.
- I. Bury piping with depth of cover over top at least 42 inches, with top at least 12 inches below level of maximum frost penetration.
- J. Extend water-service piping and connect to water-supply source and building-water-piping systems at outside face of building wall in locations and pipe sizes indicated.
1. Terminate water-service piping at building wall until building-water-piping systems are installed. Terminate piping with caps, plugs, or flanges as required for piping material. Make connections to building-water-piping systems when those systems are installed.
- K. Sleeves are specified in Section 22 0517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- L. Mechanical sleeve seals are specified in Section 22 0517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- M. Install underground piping with restrained joints at horizontal and vertical changes in direction. Use restrained-joint piping, thrust blocks, anchors, tie-rods and clamps, and other supports.

### 3.6 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. See Section 33 0500 "Common Work Results for Utilities" for basic piping joint construction.
- B. Make pipe joints according to the following:
  - 1. Ductile-Iron Piping, Gasketed Joints for Water-Service Piping: AWWA C600 and AWWA M41.
  - 2. Ductile-Iron Piping, Gasketed Joints for Fire-Service-Main Piping: UL 194.
  - 3. Ductile-Iron Piping, Grooved Joints: Cut-groove pipe. Assemble joints with grooved-end, ductile-iron-piping couplings, gaskets, lubricant, and bolts according to coupling manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 4. PE Piping Insert-Fitting Joints: Use plastic insert fittings and fasteners according to fitting manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 5. PVC Piping Gasketed Joints: Use joining materials according to AWWA C900. Construct joints with elastomeric seals and lubricant according to ASTM D 2774 or ASTM D 3139 and pipe manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 6. Dissimilar Materials Piping Joints: Use adapters compatible with both piping materials, with OD, and with system working pressure.

### 3.7 ANCHORAGE INSTALLATION

- A. Anchorage, General: Install water-distribution piping with restrained joints. Anchorages and restrained-joint types that may be used include the following:
  - 1. Concrete thrust blocks.
  - 2. Locking mechanical joints.
  - 3. Set-screw mechanical retainer glands.
  - 4. Bolted flanged joints.
  - 5. Heat-fused joints.
  - 6. Pipe clamps and tie rods.
- B. Install anchorages for tees, plugs and caps, bends, crosses, valves, and hydrant branches. Include anchorages for the following piping systems:
  - 1. Gasketed-Joint, Ductile-Iron, Water-Service Piping: According to AWWA C600.
  - 2. Gasketed-Joint, PVC Water-Service Piping: According to AWWA M23.
  - 3. Fire-Service-Main Piping: According to NFPA 24.
- C. Apply full coat of asphalt or other acceptable corrosion-resistant material to surfaces of installed ferrous anchorage devices.

### 3.8 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. AWWA Gate Valves: Comply with AWWA C600 and AWWA M44. Install each underground valve with stem pointing up and with valve box.

- B. UL/FMG, Gate Valves: Comply with NFPA 24. Install each underground valve and valves in vaults with stem pointing up and with vertical cast-iron indicator post.
- C. MSS Valves: Install as component of connected piping system.
- D. Corporation Valves and Curb Valves: Install each underground curb valve with head pointed up and with service box.

### 3.9 CONCRETE VAULT INSTALLATION

- A. Install precast concrete vaults according to ASTM C 891.

### 3.10 FIRE HYDRANT INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install each fire hydrant with separate gate valve in supply pipe, anchor with restrained joints or thrust blocks, and support in upright position.
- B. Wet-Barrel Fire Hydrants: Install with valve below frost line. Provide for drainage.
- C. AWWA Fire Hydrants: Comply with AWWA M17.
- D. UL/FMG Fire Hydrants: Comply with NFPA 24.

### 3.11 FIRE DEPARTMENT CONNECTION INSTALLATION

- A. Install protective pipe bollards on two sides of each fire department connection. Pipe bollards are specified in Section 05 5000 "Metal Fabrications."

### 3.12 CONNECTIONS

- A. See Section 33 0500 "Common Work Results for Utilities" for piping connections to valves and equipment.
- B. Connect water-distribution piping to existing water main where indicated on Contract Documents. Use tapping sleeve and tapping valve.
- C. Connect water-distribution piping to interior domestic water and fire-suppression piping.
- D. Connect waste piping from concrete vault drains to storm-drainage system. See Section 33 4100 "Storm Utility Drainage Piping" for connection to storm-sewer piping.

### 3.13 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Piping Tests: Conduct piping tests before joints are covered and after concrete thrust blocks have hardened sufficiently. Fill pipeline 24 hours before testing and apply test pressure to stabilize system. Use only potable water.
- B. Hydrostatic Tests: Test at not less than one-and-one-half times working pressure for two hours.
  - 1. Increase pressure in 50-psig increments and inspect each joint between increments. Hold at test pressure for 1 hour; decrease to . Slowly increase again to test pressure and hold for 1 more hour. Maximum allowable leakage is per hour per 100 joints. Remake leaking joints with new materials and repeat test until leakage is within allowed limits.
- C. Prepare reports of testing activities.

### 3.14 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install continuous underground detectable warning tape during backfilling of trench for underground water-distribution piping. Locate below finished grade, directly over piping. Underground warning tapes are specified in Section 31 2000 "Earth Moving."
- B. Permanently attach equipment nameplate or marker indicating plastic water-service piping, on main electrical meter panel. See Section 33 0500 "Common Work Results for Utilities" for identifying devices.

### 3.15 CLEANING

- A. Clean and disinfect water-distribution piping as follows:
  - 1. Purge new water-distribution piping systems and parts of existing systems that have been altered, extended, or repaired before use.
  - 2. Use purging and disinfecting procedure prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or, if method is not prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction, use procedure described in NFPA 24 for flushing of piping. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at points of outlet.
  - 3. Use purging and disinfecting procedure prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or, if method is not prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction, use procedure described in AWWA C651 or do as follows:
    - a. Fill system or part of system with water/chlorine solution containing at least 50 ppm of chlorine; isolate and allow to stand for 24 hours.
    - b. Drain system or part of system of previous solution and refill with water/chlorine solution containing at least 200 ppm of chlorine; isolate and allow to stand for 3 hours.
    - c. After standing time, flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine remains in water coming from system.

- d. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedure if biological examination shows evidence of contamination.
- B. Prepare reports of purging and disinfecting activities.

END OF SECTION 22 1113

## SECTION 221116 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Copper tube and fittings.
  - 2. Ductile-iron pipe and fittings.
  - 3. Piping joining materials.
  - 4. Encasement for piping.
  - 5. Transition fittings.
  - 6. Dielectric fittings.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For transition fittings and dielectric fittings.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. System purging and disinfecting activities report.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.
- B. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 14 and NSF 61 Annex G. Plastic piping components shall be marked with "NSF-pw."
- C. Comply with NSF Standard 372 for low lead.

## 2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L water tube, drawn temper.
- B. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K water tube, annealed temper.
- C. Cast-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.18, pressure fittings.
- D. Wrought-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought-copper pressure fittings.
- E. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint ends.
- F. Copper Unions:
  - 1. MSS SP-123.
  - 2. Cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body.
  - 3. Ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces.
  - 4. Solder-joint or threaded ends.

## 2.3 DUCTILE-IRON PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe:
  - 1. AWWA C151/A21.51, with mechanical-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
  - 2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
- B. Standard-Pattern, Mechanical-Joint Fittings:
  - 1. AWWA C110/A21.10, ductile or gray iron.
  - 2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
- C. Compact-Pattern, Mechanical-Joint Fittings:
  - 1. AWWA C153/A21.53, ductile iron.
  - 2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
- D. Push-on-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe:
  - 1. AWWA C151/A21.51.
  - 2. Push-on-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
- E. Standard-Pattern, Push-on-Joint Fittings:
  - 1. AWWA C110/A21.10, ductile or gray iron.



2. Gaskets: AWWA C111/A21.11, rubber.
- F. Compact-Pattern, Push-on-Joint Fittings:
1. AWWA C153/A21.53, ductile iron.
  2. Gaskets: AWWA C111/A21.11, rubber.
- G. Plain-End, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151/A21.51.
- H. Appurtenances for Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Pipe:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Victaulic Company.
  2. Fittings for Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Pipe: ASTM A 47/A 47M, malleable-iron castings or ASTM A 536, ductile-iron castings with dimensions that match pipe.
  3. Mechanical Couplings for Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron-Piping:
    - a. AWWA C606 for ductile-iron-pipe dimensions.
    - b. Ferrous housing sections.
    - c. EPDM-rubber gaskets suitable for hot and cold water.
    - d. Bolts and nuts.

## 2.4 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials:
1. AWWA C110/A21.10, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick or ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and asbestos free unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Full-face or ring type unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys.
- D. Flux: ASTM B 813, water flushable.
- E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8M/A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.5 ENCASEMENT FOR PIPING

- A. Standard: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A21.5.

- B. Form: Sheet or tube.
- C. Color: Black or natural.

## 2.6 TRANSITION FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements:
  - 1. Same size as pipes to be joined.
  - 2. Pressure rating at least equal to pipes to be joined.
  - 3. End connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
- C. Sleeve-Type Transition Coupling: AWWA C219.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Dresser, Inc.
    - b. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.

## 2.7 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Dielectric Unions:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. WATTS.
    - b. Wilkins.
    - c. Zurn Industries, LLC.
  - 2. Standard: ASSE 1079.
  - 3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
  - 4. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- C. Dielectric Flanges:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. WATTS.
  - b. Wilkins.
  - c. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Standard: ASSE 1079.
3. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
4. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
5. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

D. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
  - b. Calpico, Inc.
2. Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
3. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
4. Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
5. Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
6. Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.

E. Dielectric Nipples:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Grinnell Mechanical Products.
  - b. Precision Plumbing Products.
  - c. Victaulic Company.
2. Standard: IAPMO PS 66.
3. Electroplated steel nipple complying with ASTM F 1545.
4. Pressure Rating and Temperature: 300 psig at 225 deg F.
5. End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
6. Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EARTHWORK

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

### 3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of domestic water piping. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install copper tubing under building slab according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- C. Install ductile-iron piping under building slab with restrained joints according to AWWA C600 and AWWA M41.
- D. Install underground copper tube and ductile-iron pipe in PE encasement according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A21.5.
- E. Install shutoff valve, hose-end drain valve, strainer, pressure gage, and test tee with valve inside the building at each domestic water-service entrance. Comply with requirements for pressure gages in Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" and with requirements for drain valves and strainers in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- F. Install shutoff valve immediately upstream of each dielectric fitting.
- G. Install water-pressure-reducing valves downstream from shutoff valves. Comply with requirements for pressure-reducing valves in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- H. Install domestic water piping level without pitch and plumb.
- I. Rough-in domestic water piping for water-meter installation according to utility company's requirements.
- J. Install piping concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- K. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

- L. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal, and coordinate with other services occupying that space.
- M. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- N. Install nipples, unions, special fittings, and valves with pressure ratings the same as or higher than the system pressure rating used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- O. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- P. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- Q. Install unions in copper tubing at final connection to each piece of equipment, machine, and specialty.
- R. Install pressure gages on suction and discharge piping for each plumbing pump and packaged booster pump. Comply with requirements for pressure gages in Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- S. Install thermostats in hot-water circulation piping. Comply with requirements for thermostats in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Pumps."
- T. Install thermometers on outlet piping from each water heater. Comply with requirements for thermometers in Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- U. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Division 22 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- V. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Division 22 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- W. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Division 22 Section "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

### 3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
- C. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.

2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.
  - D. Brazed Joints for Copper Tubing: Comply with CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," "Braze Joints" chapter.
  - E. Soldered Joints for Copper Tubing: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux to end of tube. Join copper tube and fittings according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
  - F. Joint Construction for Grooved-End Copper Tubing: Make joints according to AWWA C606. Roll groove ends of tubes. Lubricate and install gasket over ends of tubes or tube and fitting. Install coupling housing sections over gasket with keys seated in tubing grooves. Install and tighten housing bolts.
  - G. Joint Construction for Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Piping: Make joints according to AWWA C606. Cut round-bottom grooves in ends of pipe at gasket-seat dimension required for specified (flexible or rigid) joint. Lubricate and install gasket over ends of pipes or pipe and fitting. Install coupling housing sections over gasket with keys seated in piping grooves. Install and tighten housing bolts.
  - H. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate asbestos-free, nonmetallic gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for domestic water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.
  - I. Joints for Dissimilar-Material Piping: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.
- 3.4 TRANSITION FITTING INSTALLATION
- A. Install transition couplings at joints of dissimilar piping.
  - B. Transition Fittings in Underground Domestic Water Piping:
    1. Fittings for NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Fitting-type coupling.
    2. Fittings for NPS 2 and Larger: Sleeve-type coupling.
  - C. Transition Fittings in Aboveground Domestic Water Piping NPS 2 and Smaller: Plastic-to-metal transition fittings or unions.
- 3.5 DIELECTRIC FITTING INSTALLATION
- A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
  - B. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric couplings or nipples.
  - C. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Use dielectric flanges.

- D. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5 and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

### 3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger, support products, and installation in Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
  - 1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or 42, clamps.
  - 2. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:
    - a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
    - b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
    - c. Longer Than 100 Feet if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
  - 3. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
  - 4. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- B. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- C. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, to a minimum of 3/8 inch.
- D. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - 1. NPS 3/4 and Smaller: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 2. NPS 1 and NPS 1-1/4: 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 4. NPS 2-1/2: 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
  - 5. NPS 3 to NPS 5: 10 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
  - 6. NPS 6: 10 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
  - 7. NPS 8: 10 feet with 3/4-inch rod.
- E. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.
- F. Support piping and tubing not listed in this article according to MSS SP-58 and manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.7 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. When installing piping adjacent to equipment and machines, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect domestic water piping to exterior water-service piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.

- D. Connect domestic water piping to water-service piping with shutoff valve; extend and connect to the following:
  - 1. Domestic Water Booster Pumps: Cold-water suction and discharge piping.
  - 2. Water Heaters: Cold-water inlet and hot-water outlet piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than sizes of water heater connections.
  - 3. Plumbing Fixtures: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than that required by plumbing code.
  - 4. Equipment: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping as indicated, but not smaller than equipment connections. Provide shutoff valve and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

### 3.8 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification materials and installation in Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Label pressure piping with system operating pressure.

### 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. Piping Inspections:
    - a. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it has been inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
    - b. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least one day before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction:
      - 1) Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing in after roughing in and before setting fixtures.
      - 2) Final Inspection: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified in "Piping Tests" Subparagraph below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
    - c. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass tests or inspections, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
    - d. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Piping Tests:
    - a. Fill domestic water piping. Check components to determine that they are not air bound and that piping is full of water.



- b. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit a separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
  - c. Leave new, altered, extended, or replaced domestic water piping uncovered and unconcealed until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
  - d. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow it to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
  - e. Repair leaks and defects with new materials, and retest piping or portion thereof until satisfactory results are obtained.
  - f. Prepare reports for tests and for corrective action required.
- B. Domestic water piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.10 ADJUSTING

- A. Perform the following adjustments before operation:
  - 1. Close drain valves, hydrants, and hose bibbs.
  - 2. Open shutoff valves to fully open position.
  - 3. Open throttling valves to proper setting.
  - 4. Adjust balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide adequate flow.
    - a. Manually adjust ball-type balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide hot-water flow in each branch.
    - b. Adjust calibrated balancing valves to flows indicated.
  - 5. Remove plugs used during testing of piping and for temporary sealing of piping during installation.
  - 6. Remove and clean strainer screens. Close drain valves and replace drain plugs.
  - 7. Remove filter cartridges from housings and verify that cartridges are as specified for application where used and are clean and ready for use.
  - 8. Check plumbing specialties and verify proper settings, adjustments, and operation.

### 3.11 CLEANING

- A. Clean and disinfect potable domestic water piping as follows:
  - 1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.

2. Use purging and disinfecting procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction; if methods are not prescribed, use procedures described in either AWWA C651 or AWWA C652 or follow procedures described below:
  - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
  - b. Fill and isolate system according to either of the following:
    - 1) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 50 ppm of chlorine. Isolate with valves and allow to stand for 24 hours.
    - 2) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 200 ppm of chlorine. Isolate and allow to stand for three hours.
  - c. Flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine is in water coming from system after the standing time.
  - d. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
  - e. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Clean non-potable domestic water piping as follows:
  1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
  2. Use purging procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or; if methods are not prescribed, follow procedures described below:
    - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
    - b. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
- C. Prepare and submit reports of purging and disinfecting activities. Include copies of water-sample approvals from authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Clean interior of domestic water piping system. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

### 3.12 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Transition and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flanges and unions may be used for aboveground piping joints unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Fitting Option: Brazed joints may be used on aboveground copper tubing.
- D. Under-building-slab, domestic water, building-service piping, NPS 4 to NPS 8 and larger, shall be the following:

1. Mechanical-joint, ductile-iron pipe; standard- or compact-pattern, mechanical-joint fittings; and mechanical joints.
  2. Push-on-joint, ductile-iron pipe; standard- or compact-pattern, push-on-joint fittings; and gasketed joints.
  3. Plain-end, ductile-iron pipe; grooved-joint, ductile-iron-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
- E. Under-building-slab, combined domestic water, building-service, and fire-service-main piping, NPS 6 to NPS 12, shall be the following:
1. Mechanical-joint, ductile-iron pipe; standard- or compact-pattern, mechanical-joint fittings; and mechanical joints.
  2. Push-on-joint, ductile-iron pipe; standard- or compact-pattern, push-on-joint fittings; and gasketed joints.
  3. Plain-end, ductile-iron pipe; grooved-joint, ductile-iron-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
- F. Under-building-slab, domestic water pipe piping, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be the following:
1. Hard or soft copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
- G. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be the following:
1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; cast- or wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints.
- H. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4, shall be the following:
1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; cast- or wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints.
- I. Aboveground, combined domestic water-service and fire-service-main piping, NPS 6 to NPS 12, shall be the following:
1. Plain-end, ductile-iron pipe; grooved-joint, ductile-iron-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.

### 3.13 VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Drawings indicate valve types to be used. Where specific valve types are not indicated, the following requirements apply:
1. Shutoff Duty: Use ball or gate valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use butterfly, ball, or gate valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
  2. Throttling Duty: Use ball or globe valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use butterfly or ball valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
  3. Hot-Water Circulation Piping, Balancing Duty: Calibrated balancing valves.

- 4. Drain Duty: Hose-end drain valves.
- B. Use check valves to maintain correct direction of domestic water flow to and from equipment.
- C. Iron grooved-end valves may be used with grooved-end piping.

END OF SECTION 221116

## SECTION 221119 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Vacuum breakers.
2. Backflow preventers.
3. Water pressure-reducing valves.
4. Balancing valves.
5. Temperature-actuated, water mixing valves.
6. Strainers.
7. Outlet boxes.
8. Hose bibbs.
9. Wall hydrants.
10. Drain valves.
11. Water-hammer arresters.
12. Air vents.
13. Trap-seal primer valves.
14. Flexible connectors.
15. Water meters.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" for thermometers, pressure gages, and flow meters in domestic water piping.
2. Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping" for water meters.
3. Division 22 Section "Emergency Plumbing Fixtures" for water tempering equipment.
4. Division 22 Section "Pressure Water Coolers" for water filters for water coolers.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For domestic water piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR PIPING SPECIALTIES

- A. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 61 Annex G.

#### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Minimum Working Pressure for Domestic Water Piping Specialties: 125 psig unless otherwise indicated.

#### 2.3 VACUUM BREAKERS

- A. Pipe-Applied, Atmospheric-Type Vacuum Breakers:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
    - b. WATTS.
    - c. Zurn Industries, LLC.
  - 2. Standard: ASSE 1001.
  - 3. Size: NPS 1/4 to NPS 3, as required to match connected piping.
  - 4. Body: Bronze.
  - 5. Inlet and Outlet Connections: Threaded.
  - 6. Finish: Rough bronze.
- B. Hose-Connection Vacuum Breakers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - b. WATTS.
  - c. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Standard: ASSE 1011.
3. Body: Bronze, nonremovable, with manual drain.
4. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose threaded complying with ASME B1.20.7.
5. Finish: Chrome or nickel plated.

## 2.4 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

### A. Reduced-Pressure-Principle Backflow Preventers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - b. WATTS.
  - c. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Standard: ASSE 1013.
3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
4. Pressure Loss: 12 psig maximum, through middle third of flow range.
5. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
6. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
7. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight-through flow.
8. Accessories:
  - a. Valves NPS 2 and Smaller: Ball type with threaded ends on inlet and outlet.
  - b. Valves NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Outside-screw and yoke-gate type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet.
  - c. Air-Gap Fitting: ASME A112.1.2, matching backflow-preventer connection.

### B. Double-Check, Detector-Assembly Backflow Preventers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Ames Fire & Waterworks; A WATTS Brand.
  - b. WATTS.

- c. Zurn Industries, LLC.
  - 2. Standard: ASSE 1048 and is FM Global approved or UL listed.
  - 3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
  - 4. Pressure Loss: 5 psig maximum, through middle third of flow range.
  - 5. Body: Cast iron with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved.
  - 6. End Connections: Flanged.
  - 7. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight-through flow.
  - 8. Accessories:
    - a. Valves: Outside-screw and yoke-gate type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet.
    - b. Bypass: With displacement-type water meter, shutoff valves, and reduced-pressure backflow preventer.
- C. Backflow-Preventer Test Kits:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
    - b. WATTS.
    - c. Zurn Industries, LLC.
  - 2. Description: Factory calibrated, with gages, fittings, hoses, and carrying case with test-procedure instructions.

## 2.5 WATER PRESSURE-REDUCING VALVES

- A. Water Regulators:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
    - b. WATTS.
    - c. Zurn Industries, LLC.
  - 2. Standard: ASSE 1003.
  - 3. Pressure Rating: Initial working pressure of 150 psig.
  - 4. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron for NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3.
  - 5. Valves for Booster Heater Water Supply: Include integral bypass.
  - 6. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3.



## 2.6 BALANCING VALVES

### A. Copper-Alloy Calibrated Balancing Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Armstrong International, Inc.
  - b. ITT Corporation.
  - c. NIBCO INC.
2. Type: Ball valve with two readout ports and memory-setting indicator.
3. Body: Brass or bronze.
4. Size: Same as connected piping, but not larger than NPS 2.
5. Accessories: Meter hoses, fittings, valves, differential pressure meter, and carrying case.

### B. Memory-Stop Balancing Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - b. NIBCO INC.
  - c. Stockham; Crane Energy Flow Solutions.
2. Standard: MSS SP-110 for two-piece, copper-alloy ball valves.
3. Pressure Rating: 400-psig minimum CWP.
4. Size: NPS 2 or smaller.
5. Body: Copper alloy.
6. Port: Standard or full port.
7. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
8. Seats and Seals: Replaceable.
9. End Connections: Solder joint or threaded.
10. Handle: Vinyl-covered steel with memory-setting device.

## 2.7 TEMPERATURE-ACTUATED, WATER MIXING VALVES

### A. Water-Temperature Limiting Devices:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Leonard Valve Company.
  - b. POWERS; A WATTS Brand.
  - c. Symmons Industries, Inc.

2. Standard: ASSE 1017.
3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
4. Type: Thermostatically controlled, water mixing valve.
5. Material: Bronze body with corrosion-resistant interior components.
6. Connections: Threaded inlets and outlet.
7. Accessories: Check stops on hot- and cold-water supplies, and adjustable, temperature-control handle.
8. Valve Finish: Chrome plated.

B. Primary, Thermostatic, Water Mixing Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Lawler Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  - b. Leonard Valve Company.
  - c. POWERS; A WATTS Brand.
  - d. Symmons Industries, Inc.
2. Standard: ASSE 1017.
3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
4. Type: Exposed-mounted, thermostatically controlled, water mixing valve.
5. Material: Bronze body with corrosion-resistant interior components.
6. Connections: Threaded inlets and outlet.
7. Accessories: Manual temperature control, check stops on hot- and cold-water supplies, and adjustable, temperature-control handle.
8. Valve Finish: Chrome plated.
9. Piping Finish: Chrome plated.
10. Cabinet: Factory fabricated, stainless steel, for surface mounting and with hinged, stainless-steel door.

C. Individual-Fixture, Water Tempering Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Lawler Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  - b. Leonard Valve Company.
  - c. POWERS; A WATTS Brand.
2. Standard: ASSE 1016, thermostatically controlled, water tempering valve.
3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
4. Body: Bronze body with corrosion-resistant interior components.
5. Temperature Control: Adjustable.
6. Inlets and Outlet: Threaded.
7. Finish: Rough or chrome-plated bronze.

## 2.8 STRAINERS FOR DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

### A. Y-Pattern Strainers:

1. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
2. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved, epoxy coated and for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
3. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
4. Screen: Stainless steel with round perforations unless otherwise indicated.
5. Perforation Size:
  - a. Strainers NPS 2 and Smaller: 0.020 inch.
  - b. Strainers NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: 0.045 inch.
  - c. Strainers NPS 5 and Larger: 0.10 inch.
6. Drain: Pipe plug.

## 2.9 OUTLET BOXES

### A. Clothes Washer Outlet Boxes:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Guy Gray Manufacturing Co., Inc.
  - b. Oatey.
  - c. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
2. Mounting: Recessed.
3. Material and Finish: Enameled-steel, epoxy-painted-steel, or plastic box and faceplate.
4. Faucet: Combination valved fitting or separate hot- and cold-water valved fittings complying with ASME A112.18.1. Include garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 on outlets.
5. Supply Shutoff Fittings: NPS 1/2 gate, globe, or ball valves and NPS 1/2 copper, water tubing.
6. Drain: NPS 1-1/2 standpipe and P-trap for direct waste connection to drainage piping.
7. Inlet Hoses: Two 60-inch-long, rubber household clothes washer inlet hoses with female, garden-hose-thread couplings. Include rubber washers.
8. Drain Hose: One 48-inch-long, rubber household clothes washer drain hose with hooked end.

### B. Icemaker Outlet Boxes:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

- a. Oatey.
  - b. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
- 2. Mounting: Recessed.
  - 3. Material and Finish: Enameled-steel, epoxy-painted-steel, or plastic box and faceplate.
  - 4. Faucet: Valved fitting complying with ASME A112.18.1. Include NPS 1/2 or smaller copper tube outlet.
  - 5. Supply Shutoff Fitting: NPS 1/2 gate, globe, or ball valve and NPS 1/2 copper, water tubing.

## 2.10 HOSE BIBBS

### A. Hose Bibbs:

- 1. Standard: ASME A112.18.1 for sediment faucets.
- 2. Body Material: Bronze.
- 3. Seat: Bronze, replaceable.
- 4. Supply Connections: NPS 1/2 or NPS 3/4 threaded or solder-joint inlet.
- 5. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
- 6. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
- 7. Vacuum Breaker: Integral nonremovable, drainable, hose-connection vacuum breaker complying with ASSE 1011.
- 8. Finish for Equipment Rooms: Rough bronze, or chrome or nickel plated.
- 9. Finish for Service Areas: Rough bronze.
- 10. Finish for Finished Rooms: Chrome or nickel plated.
- 11. Operation for Equipment Rooms: Wheel handle or operating key.
- 12. Operation for Service Areas: Wheel handle.
- 13. Operation for Finished Rooms: Wheel handle.
- 14. Include operating key with each operating-key hose bibb.
- 15. Include wall flange with each chrome- or nickel-plated hose bibb.

## 2.11 WALL HYDRANTS

### A. Nonfreeze Wall Hydrants:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. WATTS.
  - b. Woodford Manufacturing Company.
  - c. Zurn Industries, LLC.
- 2. Standard: ASME A112.21.3M for concealed-outlet, self-draining wall hydrants.
- 3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
- 4. Operation: Loose key.

5. Casing and Operating Rod: Of length required to match wall thickness. Include wall clamp.
6. Inlet: NPS 3/4 or NPS 1.
7. Outlet: Concealed, with integral vacuum breaker and garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
8. Box: Deep, flush mounted with cover.
9. Box and Cover Finish: Polished nickel bronze.
10. Outlet: Exposed, with integral vacuum breaker and garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
11. Nozzle and Wall-Plate Finish: Polished nickel bronze.
12. Operating Keys(s): One with each wall hydrant.

B. Vacuum Breaker Wall Hydrants:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. WATTS.
  - b. Woodford Manufacturing Company.
  - c. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Standard: ASSE 1019, Type A or Type B.
3. Type: Freeze-resistant, automatic draining with integral air-inlet valve.
4. Classification: Type A, for automatic draining with hose removed or Type B, for automatic draining with hose removed or with hose attached and nozzle closed.
5. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
6. Operation: Loose key.
7. Casing and Operating Rod: Of length required to match wall thickness. Include wall clamp.
8. Inlet: NPS 1/2 or NPS 3/4.
9. Outlet: Exposed with garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.

## 2.12 DRAIN VALVES

A. Ball-Valve-Type, Hose-End Drain Valves:

1. Standard: MSS SP-110 for standard-port, two-piece ball valves.
2. Pressure Rating: 400-psig minimum CWP.
3. Size: NPS 3/4.
4. Body: Copper alloy.
5. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
6. Seats and Seals: Replaceable.
7. Handle: Vinyl-covered steel.
8. Inlet: Threaded or solder joint.
9. Outlet: Threaded, short nipple with garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 and cap with brass chain.

B. Gate-Valve-Type, Hose-End Drain Valves:

1. Standard: MSS SP-80 for gate valves.
2. Pressure Rating: Class 125.
3. Size: NPS 3/4.
4. Body: ASTM B 62 bronze.
5. Inlet: NPS 3/4 threaded or solder joint.
6. Outlet: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 and cap with brass chain.

2.13 WATER-HAMMER ARRESTERS

A. Water-Hammer Arresters:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Precision Plumbing Products.
  - b. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  - c. WATTS.
  - d. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Standard: ASSE 1010 or PDI-WH 201.
3. Type: Metal bellows.
4. Size: ASSE 1010, Sizes AA and A through F, or PDI-WH 201, Sizes A through F.

2.14 AIR VENTS

A. Bolted-Construction Automatic Air Vents:

1. Body: Bronze.
2. Pressure Rating and Temperature: 125-psig minimum pressure rating at 140 deg F.
3. Float: Replaceable, corrosion-resistant metal.
4. Mechanism and Seat: Stainless steel.
5. Size: NPS 3/8 minimum inlet.
6. Inlet and Vent Outlet End Connections: Threaded.

2.15 TRAP-SEAL PRIMER DEVICE

A. Supply-Type, Trap-Seal Primer Device:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.

- b. Precision Plumbing Products.
    - c. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
    - d. WATTS.
    - e. Zurn Industries, LLC.
  - 2. Standard: ASSE 1018.
  - 3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum.
  - 4. Body: Bronze.
  - 5. Inlet and Outlet Connections: NPS 1/2 threaded, union, or solder joint.
  - 6. Gravity Drain Outlet Connection: NPS 1/2 threaded or solder joint.
  - 7. Finish: Chrome plated, or rough bronze for units used with pipe or tube that is not chrome finished.
- B. Drainage-Type, Trap-Seal Primer Device:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.
    - b. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  - 2. Standard: ASSE 1044, lavatory P-trap with NPS 3/8 minimum, trap makeup connection.
  - 3. Size: NPS 1-1/4 minimum.
  - 4. Material: Chrome-plated, cast brass.

## 2.16 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Flexicraft Industries.
  - 2. Metraflex Company (The).
  - 3. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
- B. Bronze-Hose Flexible Connectors: Corrugated-bronze tubing with bronze wire-braid covering and ends brazed to inner tubing.
  - 1. Working-Pressure Rating: Minimum 200 psig.
  - 2. End Connections NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded copper pipe or plain-end copper tube.
  - 3. End Connections NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged copper alloy.
- C. Stainless-Steel-Hose Flexible Connectors: Corrugated-stainless-steel tubing with stainless-steel wire-braid covering and ends welded to inner tubing.
  - 1. Working-Pressure Rating: Minimum 200 psig.
  - 2. End Connections NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded steel-pipe nipple.
  - 3. End Connections NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged steel nipple.

## 2.17 WATER METERS

### A. Displacement-Type Water Meters:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Schlumberger Limited.
  - b. Sensus.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: AWWA C700.
  - b. Pressure Rating: 150-psig working pressure.
  - c. Body Design: Nutating disc; totalization meter.
  - d. Registration: In gallons or cubic feet as required by utility company.
  - e. Case: Bronze.
  - f. End Connections: Threaded.

### B. Turbine-Type Water Meters:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Badger Industries, Inc.
  - b. Schlumberger Limited.
  - c. Sensus.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: AWWA C701.
  - b. Pressure Rating: 150-psig working pressure.
  - c. Body Design: Turbine; totalization meter.
  - d. Registration: In gallons or cubic feet as required by utility company.
  - e. Case: Bronze.
  - f. End Connections for Meters NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded.
  - g. End Connections for Meters NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged.

### C. Compound-Type Water Meters:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Badger Industries, Inc.
  - b. Schlumberger Limited.
  - c. Sensus.



2. Description:

- a. Standard: AWWA C702.
  - b. Pressure Rating: 150-psig working pressure.
  - c. Body Design: With integral mainline and bypass meters; totalization meter.
  - d. Registration: In gallons or cubic feet as required by utility company.
  - e. Case: Bronze.
  - f. Pipe Connections: Flanged.
- D. Remote Registration System: Direct-reading type complying with AWWA C706; modified with signal-transmitting assembly, low-voltage connecting wiring, and remote register assembly as required by utility company.
- E. Remote Registration System: Encoder type complying with AWWA C707; modified with signal-transmitting assembly, low-voltage connecting wiring, and remote register assembly as required by utility company.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install backflow preventers in each water supply to mechanical equipment and systems and to other equipment and water systems that may be sources of contamination. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction.
- 1. Locate backflow preventers in same room as connected equipment or system.
  - 2. Install drain for backflow preventers with atmospheric-vent drain connection with air-gap fitting, fixed air-gap fitting, or equivalent positive pipe separation of at least two pipe diameters in drain piping and pipe-to-floor drain. Locate air-gap device attached to or under backflow preventer. Simple air breaks are unacceptable for this application.
  - 3. Do not install bypass piping around backflow preventers.
- B. Install water regulators with inlet and outlet shutoff valves. Install pressure gages on inlet and outlet.
- C. Install water-control valves with inlet and outlet shutoff valves. Install pressure gages on inlet and outlet.
- D. Install balancing valves in locations where they can easily be adjusted.
- E. Install temperature-actuated, water mixing valves with check stops or shutoff valves on inlets and with shutoff valve on outlet.
- 1. Install cabinet-type units recessed in or surface mounted on wall as specified.
- F. Install Y-pattern strainers for water on supply side of each water pressure-reducing valve and pump.

- G. Install outlet boxes recessed in wall or surface mounted on wall. Install 2-by-4-inch fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking, wall reinforcement between studs. Comply with requirements for fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking in Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry."
- H. Install water-hammer arresters in water piping according to PDI-WH 201.
- I. Install air vents at high points of water piping. Install drain piping and discharge onto floor drain.
- J. Install supply-type, trap-seal primer valves with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting. Adjust valve for proper flow.
- K. Install drainage-type, trap-seal primer valves as lavatory trap with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting.
- L. Install trap-seal primer systems with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting. Adjust system for proper flow.

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for ground equipment in Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- B. Fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking is specified in Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for electrical connections.

### 3.3 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Equipment Nameplates and Signs: Install engraved plastic-laminate equipment nameplate or sign on or near each of the following:
  - 1. Pressure vacuum breakers.
  - 2. Reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventers.
  - 3. Double-check, detector-assembly backflow preventers.
  - 4. Water pressure-reducing valves.
  - 5. Calibrated balancing valves.
  - 6. Primary, thermostatic, water mixing valves.
  - 7. Primary water tempering valves.
  - 8. Outlet boxes.
  - 9. Hose stations.
  - 10. Supply-type, trap-seal primer valves.

- B. Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to identifying unit. Nameplates and signs are specified in Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. Test each pressure vacuum breaker, reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventer, and double-check detector-assembly backflow preventer according to authorities having jurisdiction and the device's reference standard.
- B. Domestic water piping specialties will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Set field-adjustable pressure set points of water pressure-reducing valves.
- B. Set field-adjustable flow set points of balancing valves.
- C. Set field-adjustable temperature set points of temperature-actuated, water mixing valves.

END OF SECTION 221119

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 221123.21 - INLINE, DOMESTIC-WATER PUMPS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. In-line, sealless centrifugal pumps.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include construction materials, rated capacities, certified performance curves with operating points plotted on curves, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For inline, domestic-water pumps to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Retain shipping flange protective covers and protective coatings during storage.
- B. Protect bearings and couplings against damage.
- C. Comply with pump manufacturer's written instructions for handling.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. UL Compliance: UL 778 for motor-operated water pumps.
- C. Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects and Drinking Water System Components - Lead Content Compliance: NSF 61 and NSF 372.

### 2.2 IN-LINE, SEALLESS CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

- A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, in-line, close-coupled, canned-motor, sealless, overhung-impeller centrifugal pumps.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Grundfos Pumps Corp.
  - 2. TACO Comfort Solutions, Inc.
  - 3. WILO USA LLC - WILO Canada Inc.
- C. Pump Construction:
  - 1. Pump and Motor Assembly: Hermetically sealed, replaceable-cartridge type with motor and impeller on common shaft and designed for installation with pump and motor shaft horizontal.
  - 2. Minimum Working Pressure: 125 psig.
  - 3. Maximum Continuous Operating Temperature: 220 deg F.
  - 4. Casing: Cast iron, bronze, or stainless steel, with threaded or companion-flange connections.
  - 5. Impeller: Plastic, composite, or stainless steel.
  - 6. Motor: Single speed.

### 2.3 MOTORS

- A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Division 22 Section "Common Motor Requirements for Plumbing Equipment."
  - 1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

## 2.4 CONTROLS

- A. Thermostats: Electric; adjustable for control of hot-water circulation pump.
  - 1. Type: Water-immersion temperature sensor, for installation in piping.
  - 2. Range: 50 to 125 deg F.
  - 3. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X.
  - 4. Operation of Pump: On or off.
  - 5. Transformer: Provide if required.
  - 6. Power Requirement: 24 V ac or 120 V ac.
  - 7. Settings: Start pump at 105 deg F and stop pump at 120 deg F.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for domestic-water-piping system to verify actual locations of piping connections before pump installation.

### 3.2 PUMP INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with HI 1.4.
- B. Mount pumps in orientation complying with manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Install continuous-thread hanger rods and vibration isolation of size required to support pump weight.
  - 1. Comply with requirements for hangers and supports specified in Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- D. Install thermostats in hot-water return piping.

### 3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to inline, domestic-water pumps, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect domestic-water piping to pumps. Install suction and discharge piping equal to or greater than size of pump nozzles.
  - 1. Install flexible connectors adjacent to pumps in suction and discharge piping of the following pumps:

- a. Horizontally mounted, in-line, separately coupled centrifugal pumps.
  - b. Horizontally mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps.
  - c. Vertically mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps.
  - d. Comply with requirements for flexible connectors specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping."
- D. Install shutoff valve and strainer on suction side of each pump, and check, shutoff, and throttling valves on discharge side of each pump. Install valves same size as connected piping. Comply with requirements for strainers specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties." Comply with requirements for valves specified in the following:
  - 1. Division 22 Section "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping."
  - 2. Division 22 Section "Check Valves for Plumbing Piping."
  - 3. Install pressure gauge at suction of each pump and pressure gauge at discharge of each pump. Install at integral pressure-gauge tapings where provided or install pressure-gauge connectors in suction and discharge piping around pumps. Comply with requirements for pressure gauges and snubbers specified in Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."

### 3.4 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control wiring between temperature controllers and devices.

### 3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for identification of pumps.

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  - 2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
  - 3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. Inline, domestic-water pump will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.



### 3.7 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust inline, domestic-water pumps to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Adjust initial temperature set points.
- C. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.

END OF SECTION 221123.21

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 221313 - FACILITY SANITARY SEWERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Pipe and fittings.
  - 2. Nonpressure and pressure couplings.
  - 3. Expansion joints.
  - 4. Cleanouts.
  - 5. Encasement for piping.
  - 6. Manholes.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For expansion joints.
- B. Shop Drawings: For manholes. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and frames and covers.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Show pipe sizes, locations, and elevations. Show other piping in same trench and clearances from sewer system piping. Indicate interface and spatial relationship between manholes, piping, and proximate structures.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of cast-iron soil pipe and fitting, from manufacturer.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. PVC Corrugated Sewer Piping:
  - 1. Pipe: ASTM F 949, PVC corrugated pipe with bell-and-spigot ends for gasketed joints.
  - 2. Fittings: ASTM F 949, PVC molded or fabricated, socket type.
  - 3. Gaskets: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.
- B. PVC Type PSM Sewer Piping:

1. Pipe: ASTM D 3034, SDR 35, PVC Type PSM sewer pipe with bell-and-spigot ends for gasketed joints.
2. Fittings: ASTM D 3034, PVC with bell ends.
3. Gaskets: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.

## 2.2 NONPRESSURE-TYPE TRANSITION COUPLINGS

- A. Comply with ASTM C 1173, elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition coupling, for joining underground nonpressure piping. Include ends of same sizes as piping to be joined and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
- B. Sleeve Materials:
  1. For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.
  2. For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.
- C. Unshielded, Flexible Couplings:
  1. Description: Elastomeric sleeve with corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
- D. Ring-Type, Flexible Couplings: Elastomeric compression seal with dimensions to fit inside bell of larger pipe and for spigot of smaller pipe to fit inside ring.

## 2.3 EXPANSION JOINTS

- A. Ductile-Iron, Flexible Expansion Joints:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. EBAA Iron, Inc.
    - b. Romac Industries, Inc.
    - c. Star Pipe Products.
    - d. .
  3. Description: Compound fitting with combination of flanged and mechanical-joint ends complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Include two gasketed ball-joint sections and one or more gasketed sleeve sections, rated for 250-psig minimum working pressure and for offset and expansion indicated.

## 2.4 CLEANOUTS

- A. Cast-Iron Cleanouts: ASME A112.36.2M, round, gray-iron housing with clamping device and round, secured, scoriated, gray-iron cover. Include gray-iron ferrule with inside calk or spigot connection and countersunk, tapered-thread, brass closure plug.
  - 1. Top-Loading Classification(s): Light Duty Medium Duty Heavy Duty and Extra-Heavy Duty.
  - 2. Sewer Pipe Fitting and Riser to Cleanout: ASTM A 74, Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings.

## 2.5 ENCASEMENT FOR PIPING

- A. Standard: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- B. Material: high-density, cross-laminated polyethylene film of 0.004-inch minimum thickness.
- C. Form: tube.
- D. Color: Black.

## 2.6 MANHOLES

- A. Standard Precast Concrete Manholes:
  - 1. Description: ASTM C 478, precast, reinforced concrete, of depth indicated, with provision for sealant joints.
  - 2. Diameter: 48 inches minimum unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Ballast: Increase thickness of precast concrete sections or add concrete to base section, as required to prevent flotation.
  - 4. Base Section: 6-inch minimum thickness for floor slab and 4-inch minimum thickness for walls and base riser section; with separate base slab or base section with integral floor.
  - 5. Riser Sections: 4-inch minimum thickness, of length to provide depth indicated.
  - 6. Top Section: Eccentric-cone type unless concentric-cone or flat-slab-top type is indicated; with top of cone of size that matches grade rings.
  - 7. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 990, bitumen or butyl rubber.
  - 8. Resilient Pipe Connectors: ASTM C 923, cast or fitted into manhole walls, for each pipe connection.
  - 9. Steps: Individual FRP steps or FRP ladder; wide enough to allow worker to place both feet on one step and designed to prevent lateral slippage off step. Cast or anchor steps into sidewalls at 12- to 16-inch intervals. Omit steps if total depth from floor of manhole to finished grade is less than 60 inches.
  - 10. Adjusting Rings: Interlocking HDPE rings, with level or sloped edge in thickness and diameter matching manhole frame and cover, and with height as required to adjust manhole frame and cover to indicated elevation and slope. Include sealant recommended by ring manufacturer.

11. Grade Rings: Reinforced-concrete rings, 6- to 9-inch total thickness, with diameter matching manhole frame and cover, and with height as required to adjust manhole frame and cover to indicated elevation and slope.

B. Manhole Frames and Covers:

1. Description: Ferrous; 24-inch ID by 7- to 9-inch riser, with 4-inch- minimum-width flange and 26-inch- diameter cover. Include indented top design with lettering cast into cover, using wording equivalent to "SANITARY SEWER."
2. Material: ASTM A 536, Grade 60-40-18 ductile iron unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.7 CONCRETE

A. General: Cast-in-place concrete complying with ACI 318, ACI 350/350R, and the following:

1. Cement: ASTM C 150, Type II.
2. Fine Aggregate: ASTM C 33, sand.
3. Coarse Aggregate: ASTM C 33, crushed gravel.
4. Water: Potable.

B. Portland Cement Design Mix: 4000 psi minimum, with 0.45 maximum water/cementitious materials ratio.

1. Reinforcing Fabric: ASTM A 185/A 185M, steel, welded wire fabric, plain.
2. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (420 MPa) deformed steel.

C. Manhole Channels and Benches: Factory or field formed from concrete. Portland cement design mix, 4000 psi minimum, with 0.45 maximum water/cementitious materials ratio. Include channels and benches in manholes.

1. Channels: Concrete invert, formed to same width as connected piping, with height of vertical sides to three-fourths of pipe diameter. Form curved channels with smooth, uniform radius and slope.
  - a. Invert Slope: 1 percent through manhole.
2. Benches: Concrete, sloped to drain into channel.
  - a. Slope: 4 percent.

D. Ballast and Pipe Supports: Portland cement design mix, 3000 psi minimum, with 0.58 maximum water/cementitious materials ratio.

1. Reinforcing Fabric: ASTM A 185/A 185M, steel, welded wire fabric, plain.
2. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (420 MPa) deformed steel.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EARTHWORK

- A. Excavating, trenching, and backfilling are specified in Section 31 2000 "Earth Moving."

### 3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. General Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans and details indicate general location and arrangement of underground sanitary sewer piping. Location and arrangement of piping layout take into account design considerations. Install piping as indicated, to extent practical. Where specific installation is not indicated, follow piping manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Install piping beginning at low point, true to grades and alignment indicated with unbroken continuity of invert. Place bell ends of piping facing upstream. Install gaskets, seals, sleeves, and couplings according to manufacturer's written instructions for using lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements.
- C. Install manholes for changes in direction unless fittings are indicated. Use fittings for branch connections unless direct tap into existing sewer is indicated.
- D. Install proper size increasers, reducers, and couplings where different sizes or materials of pipes and fittings are connected. Reducing size of piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- E. When installing pipe under streets or other obstructions that cannot be disturbed, use pipe-jacking process of microtunneling.
- F. Install gravity-flow, nonpressure, drainage piping according to the following:
  - 1. Install piping pitched down in direction of flow, at minimum slope of 1 percent unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Install piping NPS 6 and larger with restrained joints at tee fittings and at changes in direction. Use corrosion-resistant rods, pipe or fitting manufacturer's proprietary restraint system, or cast-in-place-concrete supports or anchors.
  - 3. Install piping with 42 inches minimum cover.
  - 4. Install hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook."
  - 5. Install hubless cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook."
  - 6. Install PVC corrugated sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 1668.
  - 7. Install PVC Type PSM sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 1668.
  - 8. Install nonreinforced-concrete sewer piping according to ASTM C 1479 and ACPA's "Concrete Pipe Installation Manual."
  - 9. Install reinforced-concrete sewer piping according to ASTM C 1479 and ACPA's "Concrete Pipe Installation Manual."
- G. Install corrosion-protection piping encasement over the following underground metal piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105:

1. Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe.
  2. Hubless cast-iron soil pipe and fittings.
  3. Expansion joints.
- H. Clear interior of piping and manholes of dirt and superfluous material as work progresses. Maintain swab or drag in piping, and pull past each joint as it is completed. Place plug in end of incomplete piping at end of day and when work stops.

### 3.3 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join gravity-flow, nonpressure, drainage piping according to the following:
1. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with gasket joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for compression joints.
  2. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with calked joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for lead and oakum calked joints.
  3. Join hubless cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-coupling joints.
  4. Join PVC corrugated sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321.
  5. Join PVC Type PSM sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM D 3034 for elastomeric-seal joints or ASTM D 3034 for elastomeric-gasket joints.
  6. Join nonreinforced-concrete sewer piping according to ASTM C 14 and ACPA's "Concrete Pipe Installation Manual" for rubber-gasket joints.
  7. Join reinforced-concrete sewer piping according to ACPA's "Concrete Pipe Installation Manual" for rubber-gasket joints.
  8. Join dissimilar pipe materials with nonpressure-type, flexible couplings.
- B. Pipe couplings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
1. Use nonpressure flexible couplings where required to join gravity-flow, nonpressure sewer piping unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Unshielded flexible couplings for pipes of same or slightly different OD.
    - b. Unshielded, increaser/reducer-pattern, flexible couplings for pipes with different OD.
    - c. Ring-type flexible couplings for piping of different sizes where annular space between smaller piping's OD and larger piping's ID permits installation.

### 3.4 MANHOLE INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install manholes complete with appurtenances and accessories indicated.
- B. Install precast concrete manhole sections with sealants according to ASTM C 891.
- C. Install FRP manholes according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Form continuous concrete channels and benches between inlets and outlet.



- E. Set tops of frames and covers flush with finished surface of manholes that occur in pavements. Set tops 3 inches above finished surface elsewhere unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Install manhole-cover inserts in frame and immediately below cover.

### 3.5 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Place cast-in-place concrete according to ACI 318.

### 3.6 CLEANOUT INSTALLATION

- A. Install cleanouts and riser extensions from sewer pipes to cleanouts at grade. Use cast-iron soil pipe fittings in sewer pipes at branches for cleanouts, and use cast-iron soil pipe for riser extensions to cleanouts. Install piping so cleanouts open in direction of flow in sewer pipe.
  - 1. Use Light-Duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in earth or unpaved foot-traffic areas.
  - 2. Use Medium-Duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in paved foot-traffic areas.
  - 3. Use Heavy-Duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in vehicle-traffic service areas.
  - 4. Use Extra-Heavy-Duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in roads.
- B. Set cleanout frames and covers in earth in cast-in-place-concrete block, 18 by 18 by 12 inches deep. Set with tops 1 inch above surrounding grade.
- C. Set cleanout frames and covers in concrete pavement and roads with tops flush with pavement surface.

### 3.7 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect nonpressure, gravity-flow drainage piping to building's sanitary building drains specified in Section 22 1316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."
- B. Make connections to existing piping and underground manholes.
  - 1. Use commercially manufactured wye fittings for piping branch connections. Remove section of existing pipe, install wye fitting into existing piping, and encase entire wye fitting plus 6-inch overlap with not less than 6 inches of concrete with 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi.
  - 2. Make branch connections from side into existing piping, NPS 4 to NPS 20. Remove section of existing pipe, install wye fitting into existing piping, and encase entire wye with not less than 6 inches of concrete with 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi.
  - 3. Make branch connections from side into existing piping, NPS 21 or larger, or to underground manholes by cutting opening into existing unit large enough to allow 3 inches of concrete to be packed around entering connection. Cut end of connection pipe passing through pipe or structure wall to conform to shape of and be flush with inside wall unless otherwise indicated. On outside of pipe or manhole wall, encase

entering connection in 6 inches of concrete for minimum length of 12 inches to provide additional support of collar from connection to undisturbed ground.

- a. Use concrete that will attain a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. Use epoxy-bonding compound as interface between new and existing concrete and piping materials.
4. Protect existing piping and manholes to prevent concrete or debris from entering while making tap connections. Remove debris or other extraneous material that may accumulate.

### 3.8 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Materials and their installation are specified in Section 31 2000 "Earth Moving." Arrange for installation of green warning tapes directly over piping and at outside edges of underground manholes.
1. Use warning tape or detectable warning tape over ferrous piping.
  2. Use detectable warning tape over nonferrous piping and over edges of underground manholes.

### 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect interior of piping to determine whether line displacement or other damage has occurred. Inspect after approximately 24 inches of backfill is in place, and again at completion of Project.
1. Submit separate report for each system inspection.
  2. Defects requiring correction include the following:
    - a. Alignment: Less than full diameter of inside of pipe is visible between structures.
    - b. Deflection: Flexible piping with deflection that prevents passage of ball or cylinder of size not less than 92.5 percent of piping diameter.
    - c. Damage: Crushed, broken, cracked, or otherwise damaged piping.
    - d. Infiltration: Water leakage into piping.
    - e. Exfiltration: Water leakage from or around piping.
  3. Replace defective piping using new materials, and repeat inspections until defects are within allowances specified.
  4. Reinspect and repeat procedure until results are satisfactory.
- B. Test new piping systems, and parts of existing systems that have been altered, extended, or repaired, for leaks and defects.
1. Do not enclose, cover, or put into service before inspection and approval.
  2. Test completed piping systems according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

3. Schedule tests and inspections by authorities having jurisdiction with at least 24 hours' advance notice.
  4. Submit separate report for each test.
  5. Hydrostatic Tests: Test sanitary sewerage according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction and the following:
    - a. Fill sewer piping with water. Test with pressure of at least 10-foot head of water, and maintain such pressure without leakage for at least 15 minutes.
    - b. Close openings in system and fill with water.
    - c. Purge air and refill with water.
    - d. Disconnect water supply.
    - e. Test and inspect joints for leaks.
  6. Air Tests: Test sanitary sewerage according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, UNI-B-6, and the following:
    - a. Option: Test plastic gravity sewer piping according to ASTM F 1417.
    - b. Option: Test concrete gravity sewer piping according to .
  7. Manholes: Perform hydraulic test according to .
- C. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
- D. Replace leaking piping using new materials, and repeat testing until leakage is within allowances specified.

### 3.10 CLEANING

- A. Clean dirt and superfluous material from interior of piping. Flush with potable water.

END OF SECTION 22 1313

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 221316 - SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Pipe, tube, and fittings.
  - 2. Specialty pipe fittings.
  - 3. Encasement for underground metal piping.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Soil, Waste, and Vent Piping: 10-foot head of water.

#### 2.2 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

## 2.3 HUB-AND-SPIGOT, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 74, Service class.
- B. Gaskets: ASTM C 564, rubber.
- C. Calking Materials: ASTM B 29, pure lead and oakum or hemp fiber.

## 2.4 HUBLESS, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301.
- B. CISPI, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Charlotte Pipe and Foundry Company.
    - b. Josam Company.
    - c. Tyler Pipe; a subsidiary of McWane Inc.
  - 2. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and CISPI 310.
  - 3. Description: Stainless-steel corrugated shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.
- C. Cast-Iron, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Charlotte Pipe and Foundry Company.
    - b. MG Piping Products Company.
  - 2. Standard: ASTM C 1277.
  - 3. Description: Two-piece ASTM A 48/A 48M, cast-iron housing; stainless-steel bolts and nuts; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

## 2.5 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Copper Type DWV Tube: ASTM B 306, drainage tube, drawn temper.
- B. Copper Drainage Fittings: ASME B16.23, cast copper or ASME B16.29, wrought copper, solder-joint fittings.
- C. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L and Type M, water tube, drawn temper.

- D. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L, water tube, annealed temper.
- E. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead free with ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux.

## 2.6 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Systems Components and Related Materials," for plastic piping components. Include marking with "NSF-dwv" for plastic drain, waste, and vent piping and "NSF-sewer" for plastic sewer piping.
- B. Solid-Wall PVC Pipe: ASTM D 2665, drain, waste, and vent.
- C. Cellular-Core PVC Pipe: ASTM F 891, Schedule 40.
- D. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2665, made to ASTM D 3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns and to fit Schedule 40 pipe.
- E. Adhesive Primer: ASTM F 656.
- F. Solvent Cement: ASTM D 2564.

## 2.7 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTINGS

- A. Transition Couplings:
  - 1. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
  - 2. Unshielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
      - 1) Fernco Inc.
      - 2) Mission Rubber Company, LLC; a division of MCP Industries.
    - b. Standard: ASTM C 1173.
    - c. Description: Elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition pattern. Include shear ring and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
    - d. End Connections: Same size as and compatible with pipes to be joined.
    - e. Sleeve Materials:
      - 1) For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C 564, rubber.
      - 2) For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.
      - 3) For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.

3. Shielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:

- a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1) Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
  - 2) Mission Rubber Company, LLC; a division of MCP Industries.
- b. Standard: ASTM C 1460.
- c. Description: Elastomeric or rubber sleeve with full-length, corrosion-resistant outer shield and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
- d. End Connections: Same size as and compatible with pipes to be joined.

B. Dielectric Fittings:

1. Dielectric Unions:

- a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1) WATTS.
  - 2) Wilkins.
  - 3) Zurn Industries, LLC.
- b. Description:
  - 1) Standard: ASSE 1079.
  - 2) Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
  - 3) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

2. Dielectric Nipples:

- a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1) Josam Company.
  - 2) Precision Plumbing Products.
  - 3) Victaulic Company.
- b. Description:
  - 1) Standard: IAPMO PS 66.
  - 2) Electroplated steel nipple.
  - 3) Pressure Rating: 300 psig at 225 deg F.
  - 4) End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.



- 5) Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

## 2.8 ENCASEMENT FOR UNDERGROUND METAL PIPING

- A. Standard: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A 21.5.
- B. Material: Linear low-density polyethylene film of 0.008-inch minimum thickness.
- C. Form: Sheet or tube.
- D. Color: Black or natural.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EARTH MOVING

- A. Comply with requirements for excavating, trenching, and backfilling specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."

### 3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems.
  - 1. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations.
  - 2. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- F. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

- I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- J. Make changes in direction for soil and waste drainage and vent piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends.
  - 1. Sanitary tees and short-sweep 1/4 bends may be used on vertical stacks if change in direction of flow is from horizontal to vertical.
  - 2. Use long-turn, double Y-branch and 1/8-bend fittings if two fixtures are installed back to back or side by side with common drain pipe.
    - a. Straight tees, elbows, and crosses may be used on vent lines.
  - 3. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees.
  - 4. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected.
    - a. Reducing size of waste piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- K. Lay buried building waste piping beginning at low point of each system.
  - 1. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream.
  - 2. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements.
  - 3. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.
- L. Install soil and waste and vent piping at the following minimum slopes unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Building Sanitary Waste: 2 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 3 and smaller; 1 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 4 and larger.
  - 2. Horizontal Sanitary Waste Piping: 2 percent downward in direction of flow.
  - 3. Vent Piping: 1 percent down toward vertical fixture vent or toward vent stack.
- M. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
  - 1. Install encasement on underground piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A 21.5.
- N. Install aboveground copper tubing according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- O. Install aboveground PVC piping according to ASTM D 2665.
- P. Install underground PVC piping according to ASTM D 2321.
- Q. Plumbing Specialties:

1. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building sanitary drains connect to building sanitary sewers in sanitary waste gravity-flow piping.
    - a. Install cleanout fitting with closure plug inside the building in sanitary drainage force-main piping.
    - b. Comply with requirements for cleanouts specified in Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
  2. Install drains in sanitary waste gravity-flow piping.
    - a. Comply with requirements for drains specified in Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
  - R. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - S. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
    1. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Division 22 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
  - T. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs.
    1. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Division 22 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
  - U. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
    1. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Division 22 Section "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."
- 3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION
- A. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with gasket joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for compression joints.
  - B. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with calked joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for lead-and-oakum calked joints.
  - C. Join hubless, cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-piping coupling joints.
  - D. Join copper tube and fittings with soldered joints according to ASTM B 828. Use ASTM B 813, water-flushable, lead-free flux and ASTM B 32, lead-free-alloy solder.
  - E. Plastic, Nonpressure-Piping, Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:

1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
2. ABS Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2235 and ASTM D 2661 appendixes.
3. PVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855 and ASTM D 2665 appendixes.

### 3.4 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTING INSTALLATION

#### A. Transition Couplings:

1. Install transition couplings at joints of piping with small differences in ODs.
2. In Waste Drainage Piping: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

#### B. Dielectric Fittings:

1. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
2. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric nipples.
3. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Use dielectric nipples.

### 3.5 VALVE INSTALLATION

- #### A.
- Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping," Division 22 Section "Check Valves for Plumbing Piping," for general-duty valve installation requirements.

### 3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- #### A.
- Comply with requirements for pipe hanger and support devices and installation specified in Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

1. Install carbon-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in noncorrosive environments.
2. Install carbon-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in noncorrosive environments.
3. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
4. Install individual, straight, horizontal piping runs:
  - a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
  - b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
  - c. Longer Than 100 Feet if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
5. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
6. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.

- #### B.
- Support horizontal piping and tubing within 12 inches of each fitting and coupling.

- #### C.
- Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.

- D. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch minimum rods.
- E. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - 1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 2. NPS 3: 60 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
  - 3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 60 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
  - 4. NPS 6 and NPS 8: 60 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
  - 5. NPS 10 and NPS 12: 60 inches with 7/8-inch rod.
  - 6. Spacing for 10-foot lengths may be increased to 10 feet. Spacing for fittings is limited to 60 inches.
- F. Install supports for vertical cast-iron soil piping every 15 feet.
- G. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - 1. NPS 1-1/4: 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 2. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 3. NPS 2-1/2: 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
  - 4. NPS 3 and NPS 5: 10 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
  - 5. NPS 6: 10 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
  - 6. NPS 8: 10 feet with 3/4-inch rod.
- H. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.
- I. Install hangers for PVC piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - 1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 48 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 2. NPS 3: 48 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
  - 3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 48 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
  - 4. NPS 6 and NPS 8: 48 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
  - 5. NPS 10 and NPS 12: 48 inches with 7/8-inch rod.
- J. Install supports for vertical PVC piping every 48 inches.
- K. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-58 and manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.7 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect soil and waste piping to exterior sanitary sewerage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.

- C. Connect waste and vent piping to the following:
  - 1. Plumbing Fixtures: Connect waste piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
  - 2. Plumbing Fixtures and Equipment: Connect atmospheric vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 3. Plumbing Specialties: Connect waste and vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
  - 4. Install test tees (wall cleanouts) in conductors near floor and floor cleanouts with cover flush with floor.
  - 5. Comply with requirements for cleanouts and drains specified in Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
  - 6. Equipment: Connect waste piping as indicated.
    - a. Provide shutoff valve if indicated and union for each connection.
    - b. Use flanges instead of unions for connections NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- D. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance of equipment.
- E. Make connections according to the following unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
  - 2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.

### 3.8 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify exposed sanitary waste and vent piping.
- B. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

### 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
  - 2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.

- C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Test sanitary waste and vent piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
  - 1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired.
    - a. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
  - 2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced waste and vent piping until it has been tested and approved.
    - a. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
  - 3. Roughing-in Plumbing Test Procedure: Test waste and vent piping except outside leaders on completion of roughing-in.
    - a. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water.
    - b. From 15 minutes before inspection starts to completion of inspection, water level must not drop.
    - c. Inspect joints for leaks.
  - 4. Finished Plumbing Test Procedure: After plumbing fixtures have been set and traps filled with water, test connections and prove they are gastight and watertight.
    - a. Plug vent-stack openings on roof and building drains where they leave building. Introduce air into piping system equal to pressure of 1-inch wg.
    - b. Use U-tube or manometer inserted in trap of water closet to measure this pressure.
    - c. Air pressure must remain constant without introducing additional air throughout period of inspection.
    - d. Inspect plumbing fixture connections for gas and water leaks.
  - 5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
  - 6. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

### 3.10 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.
- B. Protect sanitary waste and vent piping during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.
- C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.

- D. Exposed PVC Piping: Protect plumbing vents exposed to sunlight with two coats of water-based latex paint.
- E. Repair damage to adjacent materials caused by waste and vent piping installation.

### 3.11 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Aboveground, soil and waste piping NPS 4 and smaller shall be any of the following:
  - 1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  - 2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; CISPI hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
  - 3. Copper Type DWV tube, copper drainage fittings, and soldered joints.
  - 4. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
  - 5. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- B. Aboveground, soil and waste piping NPS 5 and larger shall be any of the following:
  - 1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  - 2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; CISPI hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
  - 3. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
  - 4. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- C. Aboveground, vent piping NPS 4 and smaller shall be any of the following:
  - 1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  - 2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; CISPI hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
  - 3. Copper Type DWV tube, copper drainage fittings, and soldered joints.
    - a. Option for Vent Piping, NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3-1/2: Hard copper tube, Type M; copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
  - 4. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
  - 5. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- D. Aboveground, vent piping NPS 5 and larger shall be any of the following:
  - 1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  - 2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; CISPI hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
  - 3. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
  - 4. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- E. Underground, soil, waste, and vent piping NPS 4 and smaller shall be any of the following:
  - 1. Service class, cast-iron soil piping; calking materials; and calked joints.



2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; CISPI cast-iron hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
  3. Solid wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
  4. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- F. Underground, soil and waste piping NPS 5 and larger shall be any of the following:
1. Service class, cast-iron soil piping; calking materials; and calked joints.
  2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; CISPI cast-iron hubless-piping couplings; coupled joints.
  3. Solid-wall PVC pipe; PVC socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
  4. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

END OF SECTION 221316

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 221319 - SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Cleanouts.
  - 2. Air-admittance valves.
  - 3. Roof flashing assemblies.
  - 4. Through-penetration firestop assemblies.
  - 5. Miscellaneous sanitary drainage piping specialties.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Division 22 Section "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties" for roof drains.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and accessories.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For sanitary waste piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTIONS

- A. Sanitary waste piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with NSF 14 for plastic sanitary waste piping specialty components.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing, and marked for intended location and application.

### 2.2 CLEANOUTS

- A. Cast-Iron Exposed Cleanouts:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.
    - b. MIFAB, Inc.
    - c. Zurn Industries, LLC.
  - 2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M.
  - 3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping
  - 4. Body Material: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe T-branch or hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
  - 5. Closure: Countersunk, brass plug.
  - 6. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
- B. Cast-Iron Exposed Floor Cleanouts Insert Drawing designation, if any:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.
    - b. Tyler Pipe; a subsidiary of McWane Inc.
    - c. Zurn Industries, LLC.
  - 2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for cast-iron soil pipe with cast-iron ferrule cleanout.
  - 3. Size: Same as connected branch.
  - 4. Type: Adjustable housing cast-iron soil pipe with cast-iron ferrule.
  - 5. Body or Ferrule: Cast iron.
  - 6. Clamping Device: Not required.
  - 7. Outlet Connection: Inside calk.

8. Closure: Brass plug with straight threads and gasket.
9. Adjustable Housing Material: Cast iron with threads.
10. Frame and Cover Material and Finish: Nickel-bronze, copper alloy.
11. Frame and Cover Shape: Round.
12. Top Loading Classification: Heavy Duty.
13. Riser: ASTM A 74, Service class, cast-iron drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout.

C. Cast-Iron Wall Cleanouts:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.
  - b. MIFAB, Inc.
  - c. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M. Include wall access.
3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
4. Body: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe T-branch or hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
5. Closure Plug:
  - a. Brass.
  - b. Countersunk head.
  - c. Drilled and threaded for cover attachment screw.
  - d. Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
6. Wall Access: Round, flat, chrome-plated brass or stainless-steel cover plate with screw.

D. Plastic Floor Cleanouts:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  - b. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Size: Same as connected branch.
3. Body: PVC.
4. Closure Plug: PVC.
5. Riser: Drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout of same material as drainage piping.

## 2.3 AIR-ADMITTANCE VALVES

A. Fixture Air-Admittance Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Oatey.
  - b. ProSet Systems Inc.
  - c. Studor, Inc.
2. Standard: ASSE 1051, Type A for single fixture or Type B for branch piping.
3. Housing: Plastic.
4. Operation: Mechanical sealing diaphragm.
5. Size: Same as connected fixture or branch vent piping.

## 2.4 ROOF FLASHING ASSEMBLIES

### A. Roof Flashing Assemblies:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Acorn Engineering Company.
  - b. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Description: Manufactured assembly made of 4.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0625-inch- thick, lead flashing collar and skirt extending at least 6 inches from pipe, with galvanized-steel boot reinforcement and counterflashing fitting.
  - a. Open-Top Vent Cap: Without cap.
  - b. Low-Silhouette Vent Cap: With vandal-proof vent cap.
  - c. Extended Vent Cap: With field-installed, vandal-proof vent cap.

## 2.5 THROUGH-PENETRATION FIRESTOP ASSEMBLIES

### A. Through-Penetration Firestop Assemblies:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - a. ProSet Systems Inc.
2. Standard: UL 1479 assembly of sleeve-and-stack fitting with firestopping plug.
3. Size: Same as connected soil, waste, or vent stack.
4. Sleeve: Molded-PVC plastic, of length to match slab thickness and with integral nailing flange on one end for installation in cast-in-place concrete slabs.

5. Stack Fitting: ASTM A 48/A 48M, gray-iron, hubless-pattern wye branch with neoprene O-ring at base and gray-iron plug in thermal-release harness. Include PVC protective cap for plug.
6. Special Coating: Corrosion resistant on interior of fittings.

## 2.6 MISCELLANEOUS SANITARY DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

### A. Open Drains:

1. Description: Shop or field fabricate from ASTM A 74, Service class, hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil-pipe fittings. Include P-trap, hub-and-spigot riser section; and where required, increaser fitting joined with ASTM C 564 rubber gaskets.
2. Size: Same as connected waste piping.

### B. Deep-Seal Traps:

1. Description: Cast-iron or bronze casting, with inlet and outlet matching connected piping and cleanout trap-seal primer valve connection.
2. Size: Same as connected waste piping.
  - a. NPS 2: 4-inch-minimum water seal.
  - b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: 5-inch-minimum water seal.

### C. Floor-Drain, Trap-Seal Primer Fittings:

1. Description: Cast iron, with threaded inlet and threaded or spigot outlet, and trap-seal primer valve connection.
2. Size: Same as floor drain outlet with NPS 1/2 side inlet.

### D. Air-Gap Fittings:

1. Standard: ASME A112.1.2, for fitting designed to ensure fixed, positive air gap between installed inlet and outlet piping.
2. Body: Bronze or cast iron.
3. Inlet: Opening in top of body.
4. Outlet: Larger than inlet.
5. Size: Same as connected waste piping and with inlet large enough for associated indirect waste piping.

### E. Sleeve Flashing Device:

1. Description: Manufactured, cast-iron fitting, with clamping device that forms sleeve for pipe floor penetrations of floor membrane. Include galvanized-steel pipe extension in top of fitting that will extend 1 inch above finished floor and galvanized-steel pipe extension in bottom of fitting that will extend through floor slab.
2. Size: As required for close fit to riser or stack piping.

F. Stack Flashing Fittings:

1. Description: Counterflashing-type, cast-iron fitting, with bottom recess for terminating roof membrane, and with threaded or hub top for extending vent pipe.
2. Size: Same as connected stack vent or vent stack.

G. Vent Caps:

1. Description: Cast-iron body with threaded or hub inlet and vandal-proof design. Include vented hood and setscrews to secure to vent pipe.
2. Size: Same as connected stack vent or vent stack.

H. Frost-Resistant Vent Terminals:

1. Description: Manufactured or shop-fabricated assembly constructed of copper, lead-coated copper, or galvanized steel.
2. Design: To provide 1-inch enclosed air space between outside of pipe and inside of flashing collar extension, with counterflashing.

I. Expansion Joints:

1. Standard: ASME A112.6.4.
2. Body: Cast iron with bronze sleeve, packing, and gland.
3. End Connections: Matching connected piping.
4. Size: Same as connected soil, waste, or vent piping.

## 2.7 MOTORS

A. General requirements for motors are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Motor Requirements for Plumbing Equipment."

1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, motor shall be large enough, so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:

1. Size same as drainage piping up to NPS 4. Use NPS 4 for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
2. Locate at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.
3. Locate at minimum intervals of 50 feet for piping NPS 4 and smaller and 100 feet for larger piping.



- 4. Locate at base of each vertical soil and waste stack.
- B. For floor cleanouts for piping below floors, install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor.
- C. For cleanouts located in concealed piping, install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall.
- D. Install fixture air-admittance valves on fixture drain piping.
- E. Install flashing fittings on sanitary stack vents and vent stacks that extend through roof. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
- F. Install through-penetration firestop assemblies in plastic conductors and stacks at floor penetrations.
  - 1. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."
- G. Assemble open drain fittings and install with top of hub 1 inch above floor.
- H. Install deep-seal traps on floor drains and other waste outlets, if indicated.
- I. Install floor-drain, trap-seal primer fittings on inlet to floor drains that require trap-seal primer connection.
  - 1. Exception: Fitting may be omitted if trap has trap-seal primer connection.
  - 2. Size: Same as floor drain inlet.
- J. Install air-gap fittings on draining-type backflow preventers and on indirect-waste piping discharge into sanitary drainage system.
- K. Install sleeve and sleeve seals with each riser and stack passing through floors with waterproof membrane.
- L. Install vent caps on each vent pipe passing through roof.
- M. Install frost-resistant vent terminals on each vent pipe passing through roof. Maintain 1-inch clearance between vent pipe and roof substrate.
- N. Install expansion joints on vertical stacks and conductors. Position expansion joints for easy access and maintenance.
- O. Install wood-blocking reinforcement for wall-mounting-type specialties.
- P. Install traps on plumbing specialty drain outlets. Omit traps on indirect wastes unless trap is indicated.

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping" for piping installation requirements. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- D. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

### 3.3 FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
- B. Fabricate flashing from single piece unless large pans, sumps, or other drainage shapes are required.
- C. Install sheet flashing on pipes, sleeves, and specialties passing through or embedded in floors and roofs with waterproof membrane.
  - 1. Pipe Flashing: Sleeve type, matching pipe size, with minimum length of 10 inches, and skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around pipe.
  - 2. Sleeve Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around sleeve.
  - 3. Embedded Specialty Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around specialty.
- D. Set flashing on floors and roofs in solid coating of bituminous cement.
- E. Secure flashing into sleeve and specialty clamping ring or device.
- F. Install flashing for piping passing through roofs with counterflashing or commercially made flashing fittings, according to Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
- G. Extend flashing up vent pipe passing through roofs and turn down into pipe, or secure flashing into cast-iron sleeve having calking recess.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections, and prepare test reports.
- B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

### 3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.
- B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 221319

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 221319.13 - SANITARY DRAINS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Floor drains.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. HDPE: High-density polyethylene.
- B. PE: Polyethylene.
- C. PP: Polypropylene.
- D. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 DRAIN ASSEMBLIES

- A. Sanitary drains shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with NSF 14 for plastic sanitary piping specialty components.

#### 2.2 FLOOR DRAINS

- A. Cast-Iron Floor Drains:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.
  - b. MIFAB, Inc.
  - c. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Standard: ASME A112.6.3.
3. Pattern: Floor drain.
4. Body Material: Gray iron.
5. Seepage Flange: Required.
6. Anchor Flange: Not required.
7. Clamping Device: Not required.
8. Outlet: Bottom.
9. Coating on Interior and Exposed Exterior Surfaces: Not required.
10. Sediment Bucket: Not required.
11. Top or Strainer Material: Nickel bronze.
12. Top of Body and Strainer Finish: Nickel bronze.
13. Top Shape: Round.
14. Top Loading Classification: Heavy Duty.
15. Funnel: Not required.
16. Trap Material: Cast iron.
17. Trap Pattern: Standard P-trap.
18. Trap Features: Trap-seal primer valve drain connection.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install floor drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Position floor drains for easy access and maintenance.
  2. Set floor drains below elevation of surrounding finished floor to allow floor drainage.
  3. Set with grates depressed according to the following drainage area radii:
    - a. Radius, 30 Inches or Less: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not less than 1/4-inch total depression.
    - b. Radius, 30 to 60 Inches: Equivalent to 1 percent slope.
    - c. Radius, 60 Inches or Larger: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not greater than 1-inch total depression.
  4. Install floor-drain flashing collar or flange, so no leakage occurs between drain and adjoining flooring.

- a. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
- 5. Install individual traps for floor drains connected to sanitary building drain, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Install open drain fittings with top of hub 1 inch above floor.

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping" for piping installation requirements. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties" for air admittance devices and miscellaneous sanitary drainage piping specialties.
- C. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.
- D. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- E. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

### 3.3 PROTECTION

- A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.
- B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 221319.13

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK



## SECTION 221413 - FACILITY STORM DRAINAGE PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Pipe, tube, and fittings.
  - 2. Specialty pipe fittings.
  - 3. Encasement for underground metal piping.

#### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Storm Drainage Piping: 10-foot head of water.
- B. Seismic Performance: Storm drainage piping and support and installation shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with NSF/ANSI 14, "Plastics Piping System Components and Related Materials," for plastic piping components. Include marking with "NSF-drain" for plastic drain piping and "NSF-sewer" for plastic sewer piping.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

### 2.2 HUB-AND-SPIGOT, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 74, Service classes.
- B. Gaskets: ASTM C 564, rubber.
- C. Calking Materials: ASTM B 29, pure lead and oakum or hemp fiber.

### 2.3 HUBLESS, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301.
- B. CISPI, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Fernco Inc.
    - b. Mission Rubber Company, LLC; a division of MCP Industries.
    - c. Tyler Pipe; a subsidiary of McWane Inc.
  - 2. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and CISPI 310.
  - 3. Description: Stainless-steel corrugated shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.
- C. Cast-Iron, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Charlotte Pipe and Foundry Company.
    - b. MG Piping Products Company.
  - 2. Standard: ASTM C 1277.
  - 3. Description: Two-piece ASTM A 48/A 48M, cast-iron housing; stainless-steel bolts and nuts; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

## 2.4 DUCTILE-IRON PIPE AND FITTINGS

### A. Ductile-Iron, Mechanical-Joint Piping:

1. Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151/A21.51, with mechanical-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
2. Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110/A21.10, mechanical-joint ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153/A21.53, ductile-iron compact pattern.
3. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.

### B. Ductile-Iron, Push-On-Joint Piping:

1. Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151/A21.51, with push-on-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
2. Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110/A21.10, push-on-joint ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153/A21.53, ductile-iron compact pattern.
3. Gaskets: AWWA C111/A21.11, rubber.

## 2.5 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

### A. Solid-Wall PVC Pipe: ASTM D 2665, drain, waste, and vent.

### B. Cellular-Core PVC Pipe: ASTM F 891, Schedule 40.

### C. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2665, made to ASTM D 3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns and to fit Schedule 40 pipe.

### D. Adhesive Primer: ASTM F 656.

### E. Solvent Cement: ASTM D 2564.

## 2.6 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTINGS

### A. Transition Couplings:

1. General Requirements: Fitting or device for joining piping with small differences in ODs or of different materials. Include end connections same size as and compatible with pipes to be joined.
2. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified-piping-system fitting.
3. Unshielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
  - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

- 1) Fernco Inc.
  - 2) Mission Rubber Company, LLC; a division of MCP Industries.
- b. Standard: ASTM C 1173.
  - c. Description: Elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition pattern. Include shear ring and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
  - d. Sleeve Materials:
    - 1) For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C 564, rubber.
    - 2) For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.
    - 3) For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.
4. Shielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
- a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - 1) Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
    - 2) Mission Rubber Company, LLC; a division of MCP Industries.
  - b. Standard: ASTM C 1460.
  - c. Description: Elastomeric or rubber sleeve with full-length, corrosion-resistant outer shield and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.

## 2.7 ENCASEMENT FOR UNDERGROUND METAL PIPING

- A. Standard: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- B. Material: High-density, crosslaminated PE film of 0.004-inch or LLDPE film of 0.008-inch minimum thickness.
- C. Form: Sheet or tube.
- D. Color: Black or natural.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EARTH MOVING

- A. Comply with requirements for excavating, trenching, and backfilling specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."

### 3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations from layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- F. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- J. Make changes in direction for storm drainage piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected. Reducing size of drainage piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- K. Lay buried building storm drainage piping beginning at low point of each system. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.
- L. Install storm drainage piping at the following minimum slopes unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Building Storm Drain: 2 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 3 and smaller; 1 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 4 and larger.
  - 2. Horizontal Storm-Drainage Piping: 2 percent downward in direction of flow.
- M. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
  - 1. Install encasement on underground piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- N. Install aboveground PVC piping according to ASTM D 2665.

- O. Install underground PVC piping according to ASTM D 2321.
- P. Plumbing Specialties:
  - 1. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building storm drains connect to building storm sewers in storm drainage gravity-flow piping. Install cleanout fitting with closure plug inside the building in storm drainage force-main piping. Comply with requirements for cleanouts specified in Division 22 Section "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties."
  - 2. Install drains in storm drainage gravity-flow piping. Comply with requirements for drains specified in Division 22 Section "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties."
- Q. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
- R. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Division 22 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- S. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Division 22 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- T. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Division 22 Section "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

### 3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Hub-and-Spigot, Cast-Iron Soil Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for compression joints.
- B. Hub-and-Spigot, Cast-Iron Soil Piping Calked Joints: Join according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for lead-and-oakum calked joints.
- C. Hubless, Cast-Iron Soil Piping Coupled Joints: Join according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-piping coupling joints.
- D. Plastic, Nonpressure-Piping, Solvent-Cemented Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
  - 1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
  - 2. PVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855 and ASTM D 2665 Appendices.

### 3.4 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Transition Couplings:

1. Install transition couplings at joints of piping with small differences in ODs.
2. In Drainage Piping: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

### 3.5 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. General valve installation requirements are specified in Division 22 Section "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping" and Division 22 Section "Check Valves for Plumbing Piping."

### 3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger and support devices and installation specified in Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
  1. Install carbon-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in noncorrosive environments.
  2. Install carbon-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in noncorrosive environments.
  3. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
  4. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:
    - a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
    - b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
    - c. Longer Than 100 Feet if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
  5. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
  6. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- B. Support horizontal piping and tubing within 12 inches of each fitting and coupling.
- C. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- D. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch minimum rods.
- E. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  2. NPS 3: 60 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
  3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 60 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
  4. NPS 6 and NPS 8: 60 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
  5. NPS 10 and NPS 12: 60 inches with 7/8-inch rod.
  6. Spacing for 10-foot pipe lengths may be increased to 10 feet. Spacing for fittings is limited to 60 inches.
- F. Install supports for vertical cast-iron soil piping every 15 feet.

- G. Install hangers for PVC piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - 1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 48 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 2. NPS 3: 48 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
  - 3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 48 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
  - 4. NPS 6 and NPS 8: 48 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
  - 5. NPS 10 and NPS 12: 48 inches with 7/8-inch rod.
- H. Install supports for vertical PVC piping every 48 inches.
- I. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.7 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect interior storm drainage piping to exterior storm drainage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- C. Connect storm drainage piping to roof drains and storm drainage specialties.
  - 1. Install test tees (wall cleanouts) in conductors near floor, and floor cleanouts with cover flush with floor.
  - 2. Comply with requirements for cleanouts and drains specified in Division 22 Section "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties."
- D. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance of equipment.
- E. Make connections according to the following unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
  - 2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.

### 3.8 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify exposed storm drainage piping. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."



### 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in.
  - 2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
- C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Test storm drainage piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
  - 1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
  - 2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced storm drainage piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
  - 3. Test Procedure: Test storm drainage piping on completion of roughing-in. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water. From 15 minutes before inspection starts until completion of inspection, water level must not drop. Inspect joints for leaks.
  - 4. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
  - 5. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

### 3.10 CLEANING

- A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.
- B. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.
- C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.

### 3.11 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Flanges and unions may be used on aboveground pressure piping unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Aboveground storm drainage piping NPS 6 and smaller shall be any of the following:

1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; CISPI, hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
  3. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
- C. Underground storm drainage piping NPS 6 and smaller shall be any of the following:
1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; calking materials; and calked joints.
  2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; CISPI, cast-iron, hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
  3. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.

END OF SECTION 221413

## SECTION 221423 - STORM DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Roof drains.
  - 2. Miscellaneous storm drainage piping specialties.
  - 3. Cleanouts.
  - 4. Through-penetration firestop assemblies.
  - 5. Flashing materials.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Drainage piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 METAL ROOF DRAINS

- A. Cast-Iron, Medium-Sump, General-Purpose Roof Drains:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.
    - b. MIFAB, Inc.
    - c. Zurn Industries, LLC.
  - 2. Standard: ASME A112.6.4, for general-purpose roof drains.

3. Body Material: Cast iron.
4. Dimension of Body: 8- to 12-inch diameter.
5. Combination Flashing Ring and Gravel Stop: Required.
6. Flow-Control Weirs: Not required.
7. Outlet: Bottom.
8. Extension Collars: Not required.
9. Underdeck Clamp: Required.
10. Expansion Joint: Not required.
11. Sump Receiver Plate: Required.
12. Dome Material: Cast iron.
13. Wire Mesh: Not required.
14. Perforated Gravel Guard: Not required.
15. Vandal-Proof Dome: Not required.
16. Water Dam: Not required.

## 2.2 MISCELLANEOUS STORM DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

### A. Conductor Nozzles:

1. Description: Bronze body with threaded inlet and bronze wall flange with mounting holes.
2. Size: Same as connected conductor.

## 2.3 CLEANOUTS

### A. Floor Cleanouts:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.
  - b. Tyler Pipe; a subsidiary of McWane Inc.
  - c. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M, for adjustable housing cleanouts.
3. Size: Same as connected branch.
4. Type: Adjustable housing.
5. Body or Ferrule Material: Cast iron.
6. Clamping Device: Not required.
7. Outlet Connection: Inside calk.
8. Closure: Brass plug with straight threads and gasket.
9. Adjustable Housing Material: Cast iron with threads.
10. Frame and Cover Material and Finish: Nickel-bronze, copper alloy.
11. Frame and Cover Shape: Round.
12. Top-Loading Classification: Medium Duty.

13. Riser: ASTM A 74, Service class, cast-iron drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout.

B. Wall Cleanouts:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.
  - b. MIFAB, Inc.
  - c. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M, for cleanouts. Include wall access.
3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
4. Body Material: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil-pipe T-branch or hubless, cast-iron soil-pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
5. Closure: Countersunk, brass plug.
6. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
7. Wall Access: Round, flat, chrome-plated brass or stainless-steel cover plate with screw.

C. Plastic Floor Cleanouts:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  - b. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Size: Same as connected branch.
3. Body Material: PVC.
4. Closure Plug: PVC.
5. Riser: Drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout of same material as drainage piping.

## 2.4 THROUGH-PENETRATION FIRESTOP ASSEMBLIES

A. Through-Penetration Firestop Assemblies:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. ProSet Systems Inc.
2. Standard: ASTM E 814, for through-penetration firestop assemblies.
3. Size: Same as connected pipe.
4. Sleeve: Molded PVC plastic, of length to match slab thickness and with integral nailing flange on one end for installation in cast-in-place concrete slabs.

5. Stack Fitting: ASTM A 48/A 48M, gray-iron, hubless-pattern, wye branch with neoprene O-ring at base and gray-iron plug in thermal-release harness. Include PVC protective cap for plug.
6. Special Coating: Corrosion resistant on interior of fittings.

## 2.5 FLASHING MATERIALS

- A. Copper Sheet: ASTM B 152/B 152M, 12 oz./sq. ft.
- B. Zinc-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, with 0.20 percent copper content and 0.04-inch minimum thickness unless otherwise indicated. Include G90 hot-dip galvanized, mill-phosphatized finish for painting if indicated.
- C. Elastic Membrane Sheet: ASTM D 4068, flexible, chlorinated polyethylene, 40-mil minimum thickness.
- D. Fasteners: Metal compatible with material and substrate being fastened.
- E. Metal Accessories: Sheet metal strips, clamps, anchoring devices, and similar accessory units required for installation; matching or compatible with material being installed.
- F. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloy.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install roof drains at low points of roof areas according to roof membrane manufacturer's written installation instructions.
  1. Install flashing collar or flange of roof drain to prevent leakage between drain and adjoining roofing. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
  2. Install expansion joints, if indicated, in roof drain outlets.
  3. Position roof drains for easy access and maintenance.
- B. Install downspout boots at grade with top 12 inches above grade. Secure to building wall.
- C. Install conductor nozzles at exposed bottom of conductors where they spill onto grade.
- D. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following instructions unless otherwise indicated:
  1. Use cleanouts the same size as drainage piping up to NPS 4. Use NPS 4 for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
  2. Locate cleanouts at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.

3. Locate cleanouts at minimum intervals of 50 feet for piping NPS 4 and smaller and 100 feet for larger piping.
  4. Locate cleanouts at base of each vertical soil and waste stack.
- E. For floor cleanouts for piping below floors, install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor.
  - F. For cleanouts located in concealed piping, install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall.
  - G. Install wall cleanouts in vertical conductors. Install access door in wall if indicated.
  - H. Install through-penetration firestop assemblies in plastic conductors at concrete floor penetrations.
  - I. Install sleeve flashing device with each conductor passing through floors with waterproof membrane.

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Division 22 Section "Facility Storm Drainage Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

### 3.3 FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Fabricate flashing from single piece of metal unless large pans, sumps, or other drainage shapes are required. Join flashing according to the following if required:
  1. Lead Sheets: Burn joints of 6.0-lb/sq. ft. lead sheets, 0.0938-inch thickness or thicker. Solder joints of 4.0-lb/sq. ft. lead sheets, 0.0625-inch thickness or thinner.
  2. Copper Sheets: Solder joints of copper sheets.
- B. Install sheet flashing on pipes, sleeves, and specialties passing through or embedded in floors and roofs with waterproof membrane.
  1. Pipe Flashing: Sleeve type, matching the pipe size, with a minimum length of 10 inches and with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around pipe.
  2. Sleeve Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around sleeve.
  3. Embedded Specialty Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around specialty.
- C. Set flashing on floors and roofs in solid coating of bituminous cement.
- D. Secure flashing into sleeve and specialty clamping ring or device.
- E. Fabricate and install flashing and pans, sumps, and other drainage shapes.

### 3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.
- B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 221423



## SECTION 223400 - FUEL-FIRED, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Commercial, power-burner, gas-fired, storage, domestic-water heaters.
  - 2. Commercial, power-vent, gas-fired, storage, domestic-water heaters.
  - 3. Commercial, gas-fired, high-efficiency, storage, domestic-water heaters.
  - 4. Domestic-water heater accessories.

#### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Commercial domestic-water heaters shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
  - 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type and size of domestic-water heater indicated.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of commercial, gas-fired, domestic-water heater, from manufacturer.
- B. Domestic-Water Heater Labeling: Certified and labeled by testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Source quality-control reports.
- D. Field quality-control reports.
- E. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fuel-fired, domestic-water heaters to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Fabricate and label fuel-fired, domestic-water heaters to comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
- C. NSF Compliance: Fabricate and label equipment components that will be in contact with potable water to comply with NSF 61 Annex G, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects."

## 1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

## 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of fuel-fired, domestic-water heaters that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Structural failures including storage tank and supports.
    - b. Faulty operation of controls.
    - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal use.
  - 2. Warranty Periods: From date of Substantial Completion.
    - a. Commercial, Gas-Fired, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters:
      - 1) Storage Tank: Minimum five years.
      - 2) Controls and Other Components: One year(s).

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 COMMERCIAL, GAS-FIRED, STORAGE, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS

- A. Commercial, Power-Vent, Gas-Fired, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. A. O. Smith Corporation.
  - b. Bradford White Corporation.
  - c. Rheem Manufacturing Company.
  - d. State Industries.
2. Standard: ANSI Z21.10.3/CSA 4.3.
3. Storage-Tank Construction: Non-ASME-code steel with 150-psig working-pressure rating.
  - a. Tappings: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with tank. Attach tappings to tank before testing.
    - 1) NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1.
    - 2) NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged ends according to ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless-steel flanges and according to ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.
  - b. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 Annex G barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
4. Factory-Installed Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
  - a. Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
  - b. Dip Tube: Required unless cold-water inlet is near bottom of tank.
  - c. Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal complying with ASSE 1005.
  - d. Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1. Surround entire storage tank except connections and controls.
  - e. Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
  - f. Burner: For use with power-vent, gas-fired, domestic-water heaters and LP-gas fuel.
  - g. Automatic Ignition: ANSI Z21.20/CSA C22.2 No. 199, electric, automatic, gas-ignition system.
  - h. Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
  - i. Safety Controls: Automatic, high-temperature-limit and low-water cutoff devices or systems.
  - j. Combination Temperature-and-Pressure Relief Valves: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4-M. Include one or more relief valves with total relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than domestic-water heater working-pressure rating. Select one relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
5. Special Requirements: NSF 5 construction.
6. Power-Vent System: Exhaust fan, interlocked with burner.

## 2.2 DOMESTIC-WATER HEATER ACCESSORIES

### A. Domestic-Water Compression Tanks:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. AMTROL, Inc.
  - b. TACO Comfort Solutions, Inc.
2. Description: Steel, pressure-rated tank constructed with welded joints and factory-installed butyl-rubber diaphragm. Include air precharge to minimum system-operating pressure at tank.
3. Construction:
  - a. Tappings: Factory-fabricated steel, welded to tank before testing and labeling. Include ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
  - b. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 Annex G barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
  - c. Air-Charging Valve: Factory installed.

### B. Drain Pans: Corrosion-resistant metal with raised edge. Comply with ANSI/CSA LC 3. Include dimensions not less than base of domestic-water heater, and include drain outlet not less than NPS 3/4 with ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads or with ASME B1.20.7 garden-hose threads.

### C. Heat-Trap Fittings: ASHRAE 90.2.

### D. Manifold Kits: Domestic-water heater manufacturer's factory-fabricated inlet and outlet piping for field installation, for multiple domestic-water heater installation. Include ball-, butterfly-, or gate-type shutoff valves to isolate each domestic-water heater and calibrated balancing valves to provide balanced flow through each domestic-water heater.

### E. Comply with requirements for ball-, butterfly-, or gate-type shutoff valves specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping," Section 220523.13 "Butterfly Valves for Plumbing Piping," and Section 220523.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping."

1. Comply with requirements for balancing valves specified in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."

### F. Gas Shutoff Valves: ANSI Z21.15/CSA 9.1-M, manually operated. Furnish for installation in piping.

### G. Gas Pressure Regulators: ANSI Z21.18/CSA 6.3, appliance type. Include 1/2-psig pressure rating as required to match gas supply.

### H. Automatic Gas Valves: ANSI Z21.21/CSA 6.5, appliance, electrically operated, on-off automatic valve.

- I. Combination Temperature-and-Pressure Relief Valves: Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than domestic-water heater working-pressure rating. Select relief valves with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
  - 1. Gas-Fired, Domestic-Water Heaters: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4-M.
- J. Vacuum Relief Valves: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4-M.

## 2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Hydrostatically test domestic-water heaters to minimum of one and one-half times pressure rating before shipment.
- B. Domestic-water heaters will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections. Comply with requirements in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for retesting and reinspecting requirements and Section 017300 "Execution" for requirements for correcting the Work.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 DOMESTIC-WATER HEATER INSTALLATION

- A. Commercial, Domestic-Water Heater Mounting: Install commercial domestic-water heaters on concrete base. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
  - 1. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances.
  - 2. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible.
  - 3. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
  - 4. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
  - 5. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - 6. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
  - 7. Anchor domestic-water heaters to substrate.
- B. Install domestic-water heaters level and plumb, according to layout drawings, original design, and referenced standards. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices needing service are accessible.

1. Install shutoff valves on domestic-water-supply piping to domestic-water heaters and on domestic-hot-water outlet piping. Comply with requirements for shutoff valves specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping," Section 220523.13 "Butterfly Valves for Plumbing Piping," and Section 220523.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- C. Install gas-fired, domestic-water heaters according to NFPA 54.
1. Install gas shutoff valves on gas supply piping to gas-fired, domestic-water heaters without shutoff valves.
  2. Install gas pressure regulators on gas supplies to gas-fired, domestic-water heaters without gas pressure regulators if gas pressure regulators are required to reduce gas pressure at burner.
  3. Install automatic gas valves on gas supplies to gas-fired, domestic-water heaters if required for operation of safety control.
  4. Comply with requirements for gas shutoff valves, gas pressure regulators, and automatic gas valves specified in Division 23 Section "Facility Liquefied-Petroleum Gas Piping."
- D. Install commercial domestic-water heaters with seismic-restraint devices.
- E. Install combination temperature-and-pressure relief valves in top portion of storage tanks. Use relief valves with sensing elements that extend into tanks. Extend commercial-water-heater relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic-water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.
- F. Install water-heater drain piping as indirect waste to spill by positive air gap into open drains or over floor drains. Install hose-end drain valves at low points in water piping for domestic-water heaters that do not have tank drains. Comply with requirements for hose-end drain valves specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- G. Install thermometer on outlet piping of domestic-water heaters. Comply with requirements for thermometers specified in Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- H. Assemble and install inlet and outlet piping manifold kits for multiple domestic-water heaters. Fabricate, modify, or arrange manifolds for balanced water flow through each domestic-water heater. Include shutoff valve and thermometer in each domestic-water heater inlet and outlet, and throttling valve in each domestic-water heater outlet. Comply with requirements for valves specified in Division 22 Section "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping," and comply with requirements for thermometers specified in Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- I. Install piping-type heat traps on inlet and outlet piping of domestic-water heater storage tanks without integral or fitting-type heat traps.
- J. Fill domestic-water heaters with water.
- K. Charge domestic-water compression tanks with air.

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for domestic-water piping specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping."
- B. Comply with requirements for gas piping specified in Division 23 Section "Facility Liquefied-Petroleum Gas Piping."
- C. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- D. Where installing piping adjacent to fuel-fired, domestic-water heaters, allow space for service and maintenance of water heaters. Arrange piping for easy removal of domestic-water heaters.

### 3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
  - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  - 2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper operation.
  - 3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- B. Domestic-water heaters will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections. Comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Quality Requirements" for retesting and reinspecting requirements and Division 01 Section "Execution" for requirements for correcting the Work.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain commercial, gas-fired, storage, domestic-water heaters.

END OF SECTION 223400

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK



## SECTION 230513 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on ac power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

#### 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
  - 1. Motor controllers.
  - 2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
  - 3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
  - 4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Comply with IEEE 841 for severe-duty motors.

#### 2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet above sea level.
- B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

## 2.3 POLYPHASE MOTORS

- A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.
- B. Efficiency: Energy efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.
- C. Service Factor: 1.15.
- D. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque.
  - 1. For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.
  - 2. For motors with other than 2:1 speed ratio, separate winding for each speed.
- E. Multispeed Motors: Separate winding for each speed.
- F. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.
- G. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- H. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.
- I. Insulation: Class F.
- J. Code Letter Designation:
  - 1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
  - 2. Motors Smaller than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.
- K. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.

## 2.4 POLYPHASE MOTORS WITH ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.
- B. Motors Used with Variable Frequency Controllers:
  - 1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width modulated inverters.
  - 2. Energy- and Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.
  - 3. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
  - 4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.
- C. Severe-Duty Motors: Comply with IEEE 841, with 1.15 minimum service factor.

## 2.5 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

- A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:
  - 1. Permanent-split capacitor.
  - 2. Split phase.
  - 3. Capacitor start, inductor run.
  - 4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.
- B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.
- C. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.
- E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 230513

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 230517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR HVAC PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Sleeves.
  - 2. Stack-sleeve fittings.
  - 3. Sleeve-seal systems.
  - 4. Sleeve-seal fittings.
  - 5. Grout.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Cast-Iron Wall Pipes: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Galvanized-Steel Wall Pipes: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, with plain ends and welded steel collar; zinc coated.
- C. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, with plain ends.
- D. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- E. Galvanized-Steel-Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- F. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

- G. Molded-PVC Sleeves: With nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

## 2.2 STACK-SLEEVE FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.
  - 2. Zurn Industries, LLC.
- B. Description: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring, bolts, and nuts for membrane flashing.
  - 1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with setscrews.

## 2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Metraflex Company (The).
  - 2. Proco Products, Inc.
- B. Description: Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.
  - 1. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
  - 2. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel.
  - 3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

## 2.4 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Metraflex Company (The).
  - 2. Proco Products, Inc.
- B. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for imbedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit has plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

## 2.5 GROUT

- A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
  - 1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
  - 1. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP sleeves.
  - 2. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
    - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.
  - 3. Using grout, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
  - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
  - 2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
  - 3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements for sealants specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
- E. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.2 STACK-SLEEVE-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install stack-sleeve fittings in new slabs as slabs are constructed.
  - 1. Install fittings that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
  - 2. Secure flashing between clamping flanges for pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Comply with requirements for flashing specified in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
  - 3. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches above finished floor level.
  - 4. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
  - 5. Using grout, seal the space around outside of stack-sleeve fittings.
- B. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.
- B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

### 3.4 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- D. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

### 3.5 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
  - 1. Exterior Concrete Walls above Grade:



- a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Cast-iron wall sleeves.
  - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Cast-iron wall sleeves.
- 2. Exterior Concrete Walls below Grade:
  - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
    - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
  - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
    - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
- 3. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:
  - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
    - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
  - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
    - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
- 4. Concrete Slabs above Grade:
  - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.
  - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.
- 5. Interior Partitions:
  - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.
  - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel-sheet sleeves.

END OF SECTION 230517

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 230518 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR HVAC PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Escutcheons.
  - 2. Floor plates.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- C. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- D. Split-Casting Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and with concealed hinge and setscrew.
- E. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish, concealed hinge, and spring-clip fasteners.

#### 2.2 FLOOR PLATES

- A. One-Piece Floor Plates: Cast-iron flange.
- B. Split-Casting Floor Plates: Cast brass with concealed hinge.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
- B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
  - 1. Escutcheons for New Piping:
    - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
    - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
    - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - e. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
    - f. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - g. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
    - h. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - i. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
    - j. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - k. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
  - 2. Escutcheons for Existing Piping:
    - a. Chrome-Plated Piping: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - b. Insulated Piping: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
    - c. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
    - e. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - f. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
    - g. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - h. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.

- i. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
  - j. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
- C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.
- D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
  - 1. New Piping: One-piece, floor-plate type.
  - 2. Existing Piping: Split-casting, floor-plate type.

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates using new materials.

END OF SECTION 230518

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 230529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
3. Metal framing systems.
4. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
5. Fastener systems.
6. Pipe stands.
7. Equipment supports.

- B. Related Sections:

1. Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for structural-steel shapes and plates for trapeze hangers for pipe and equipment supports.
2. Division 23 Section "Vibration Controls for HVAC" for vibration isolation devices.
3. Division 23 Section "Metal Ducts" for duct hangers and supports.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.

#### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for HVAC piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
  1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
  2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.

## 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

## 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Structural Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
  - 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
  - 2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.
  - 3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
  - 4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
  - 5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
- B. Copper Pipe Hangers:
  - 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components.
  - 2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of stainless steel.

## 2.2 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

- A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

## 2.3 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

- A. MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:



1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. B-line, an Eaton business.
  - b. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.
  - c. Unistrut; Part of Atkore International.
2. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
3. Standard: MFMA-4.
4. Channels: Continuous slotted steel channel with inturned lips.
5. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped steel nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
6. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
7. Metallic Coating: Electroplated zinc.
8. Paint Coating: Vinyl.
9. Plastic Coating: PVC.

B. Non-MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Anvil International.
  - b. Empire Industries, Inc.
2. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made of steel channels, accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
3. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4.
4. Channels: Continuous slotted steel channel with inturned lips.
5. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped steel nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
6. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
7. Coating: Zinc.

## 2.4 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. Buckaroos, Inc.
  2. National Pipe Hanger Corporation.
  3. Pipe Shields Inc.

- B. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig minimum compressive strength and vapor barrier.
- C. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: Water-repellent treated, ASTM C 533, Type I calcium silicate with 100-psig minimum compressive strength.
- D. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.
- E. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
- F. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

## 2.5 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated steel anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

## 2.6 PIPE STANDS

- A. General Requirements for Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated assemblies made of manufactured corrosion-resistant components to support roof-mounted piping.
- B. Compact Pipe Stand: One-piece plastic unit with integral-rod roller, pipe clamps, or V-shaped cradle to support pipe, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
- C. Low-Type, Single-Pipe Stand: One-piece plastic base unit with plastic roller, for roof installation without membrane penetration.

## 2.7 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

## 2.8 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.

- B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
  - 1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
  - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.
- B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
  - 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
  - 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled metal framing systems.
- D. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
- E. Fastener System Installation:
  - 1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
  - 2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Pipe Stand Installation:
  - 1. Pipe Stand Types except Curb-Mounted Type: Assemble components and mount on smooth roof surface. Do not penetrate roof membrane.
- G. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- H. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.

- I. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- J. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- K. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- L. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- M. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- N. Insulated Piping:
  - 1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
    - a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
    - b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
    - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
  - 2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
    - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
  - 3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
    - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
  - 4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
    - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
    - b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
    - c. NPS 5 and NPS 6: 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
    - d. NPS 8 to NPS 14: 24 inches long and 0.075 inch thick.
    - e. NPS 16 to NPS 24: 24 inches long and 0.105 inch thick.

5. Pipes NPS 8 and Larger: Include wood or reinforced calcium-silicate-insulation inserts of length at least as long as protective shield.
6. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

### 3.2 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

### 3.3 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
  1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

### 3.5 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.

1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

### 3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper or stainless-steel attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- G. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- H. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.
- I. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
  2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of up to 1050 deg F, pipes NPS 4 to NPS 24, requiring up to 4 inches of insulation.
  3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 36, requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches of insulation.
  4. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 if little or no insulation is required.
  5. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 4, to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
  6. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 8.
  7. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
  8. Adjustable Band Hangers (MSS Type 9): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.

9. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
  10. Split Pipe Ring with or without Turnbuckle Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 8.
  11. Extension Hinged or Two-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 3.
  12. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
  13. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
  14. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
  15. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
  16. Adjustable Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36 if vertical adjustment is required, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
  17. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 1 to NPS 30, from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
  18. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 24, from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
  19. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 42 if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.
  20. Pipe Roll and Plate Units (MSS Type 45): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 24 if small horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur and vertical adjustment is not necessary.
  21. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 30 if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation might be required in addition to expansion and contraction.
- J. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.
  2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- K. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
  2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
  3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11, split pipe rings.
  4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.

5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
- L. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
  2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
  3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
  4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
  5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
  6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
  7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
  8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
  9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
  10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
  11. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
  12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
    - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
    - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
    - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.
  13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
  14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
  15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.
- M. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
  2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
  3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- N. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:



1. Restraint-Control Devices (MSS Type 47): Where indicated to control piping movement.
  2. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches.
  3. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41, roll hanger with springs.
  4. Spring Sway Braces (MSS Type 50): To retard sway, shock, vibration, or thermal expansion in piping systems.
  5. Variable-Spring Hangers (MSS Type 51): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from hanger.
  6. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
  7. Variable-Spring Trapeze Hangers (MSS Type 53): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from trapeze support.
  8. Constant Supports: For critical piping stress and if necessary to avoid transfer of stress from one support to another support, critical terminal, or connected equipment. Include auxiliary stops for erection, hydrostatic test, and load-adjustment capability. These supports include the following types:
    - a. Horizontal (MSS Type 54): Mounted horizontally.
    - b. Vertical (MSS Type 55): Mounted vertically.
    - c. Trapeze (MSS Type 56): Two vertical-type supports and one trapeze member.
- O. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- P. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- Q. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

END OF SECTION 230529

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 230548.13 - VIBRATION CONTROLS FOR HVAC

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Elastomeric isolation pads.
  - 2. Elastomeric isolation mounts.
  - 3. Restrained elastomeric isolation mounts.
  - 4. Open-spring isolators.
  - 5. Housed-spring isolators.
  - 6. Restrained-spring isolators.
  - 7. Housed-restrained-spring isolators.
  - 8. Pipe-riser resilient supports.
  - 9. Resilient pipe guides.
  - 10. Elastomeric hangers.
  - 11. Spring hangers.
  - 12. Vibration isolation equipment bases.
  - 13. Restrained isolation roof-curb rails.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include rated load, rated deflection, and overload capacity for each vibration isolation device.
  - 2. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of vibration isolation device type required.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- B. Welding certificates.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION PADS

#### A. Elastomeric Isolation Pads:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
  - b. Mason Industries, Inc.
  - c. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
2. Fabrication: Single or multiple layers of sufficient durometer stiffness for uniform loading over pad area.
3. Size: Factory or field cut to match requirements of supported equipment.
4. Pad Material: Oil and water resistant with elastomeric properties.
5. Surface Pattern: Waffle pattern.
6. Infused nonwoven cotton or synthetic fibers.
7. Load-bearing metal plates adhered to pads.
8. Sandwich-Core Material: Resilient and elastomeric.
  - a. Surface Pattern: Ribbed pattern.
  - b. Infused nonwoven cotton or synthetic fibers.

### 2.2 ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION MOUNTS

#### A. Double-Deflection, Elastomeric Isolation Mounts: .

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
  - b. Mason Industries, Inc.
  - c. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
2. Mounting Plates:

- a. Top Plate: Encapsulated steel load transfer top plates, factory drilled and threaded with threaded studs or bolts.
  - b. Baseplate: Encapsulated steel bottom plates with holes provided for anchoring to support structure.
3. Elastomeric Material: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material.

## 2.3 RESTRAINED ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION MOUNTS

### A. Restrained Elastomeric Isolation Mounts: .

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
  - b. Mason Industries, Inc.
  - c. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
2. Description: All-directional isolator with restraints containing two separate and opposing elastomeric elements that prevent central threaded element and attachment hardware from contacting the housing during normal operation.
  - a. Housing: Cast-ductile iron or welded steel.
  - b. Elastomeric Material: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material.

## 2.4 OPEN-SPRING ISOLATORS

### A. Freestanding, Laterally Stable, Open-Spring Isolators: .

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
  - b. Mason Industries, Inc.
  - c. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.

6. Baseplates: Factory-drilled steel plate for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Baseplates shall limit floor load to 500 psig.
7. Top Plate and Adjustment Bolt: Threaded top plate with adjustment bolt and cap screw to fasten and level equipment.

## 2.5 HOUSED-SPRING ISOLATORS

### A. Freestanding, Laterally Stable, Open-Spring Isolators in Two-Part Telescoping Housing: .

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
  - b. Mason Industries, Inc.
  - c. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
6. Two-Part Telescoping Housing: A steel top and bottom frame separated by an elastomeric material and enclosing the spring isolators.
  - a. Drilled base housing for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Bases shall limit floor load to 500 psig.
  - b. Top housing with attachment and leveling bolt.

## 2.6 RESTRAINED-SPRING ISOLATORS

### A. Freestanding, Laterally Stable, Open-Spring Isolators with Vertical-Limit Stop Restraint:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
  - b. Mason Industries, Inc.
  - c. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
2. Housing: Steel housing with vertical-limit stops to prevent spring extension due to weight being removed.
  - a. Base with holes for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Bases shall limit floor load to 500 psig.

- b. Top plate with threaded mounting holes.
  - c. Internal leveling bolt that acts as blocking during installation.
- 3. Restraint: Limit stop as required for equipment and authorities having jurisdiction.
- 4. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
- 5. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
- 6. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
- 7. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.

## 2.7 HOUSED-RESTRAINED-SPRING ISOLATORS

- A. Freestanding, Steel, Open-Spring Isolators with Vertical-Limit Stop Restraint in Two-Part Telescoping Housing: .
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
    - b. Mason Industries, Inc.
    - c. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
  - 2. Two-Part Telescoping Housing: A steel top and bottom frame separated by an elastomeric material and enclosing the spring isolators. Housings are equipped with adjustable snubbers to limit vertical movement.
    - a. Drilled base housing for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Bases shall limit floor load to 500 psig.
    - b. Threaded top housing with adjustment bolt and cap screw to fasten and level equipment.
  - 3. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
  - 4. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
  - 5. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
  - 6. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.

## 2.8 PIPE-RISER RESILIENT SUPPORT

- A. Description: All-directional, acoustical pipe anchor consisting of two steel tubes separated by a minimum 1/2-inch-thick neoprene.
  - 1. Vertical-Limit Stops: Steel and neoprene vertical-limit stops arranged to prevent vertical travel in both directions.

2. Maximum Load Per Support: 500 psigon isolation material providing equal isolation in all directions.

## 2.9 RESILIENT PIPE GUIDES

- A. Description: Telescopic arrangement of two steel tubes or post and sleeve arrangement separated by a minimum 1/2-inch-thick neoprene.
  1. Factory-Set Height Guide with Shear Pin: Shear pin shall be removable and reinsertable to allow for selection of pipe movement. Guides shall be capable of motion to meet location requirements.

## 2.10 ELASTOMERIC HANGERS

- A. Elastomeric Mount in a Steel Frame with Upper and Lower Steel Hanger Rods: .
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
    - b. Mason Industries, Inc.
    - c. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
  2. Frame: Steel, fabricated with a connection for an upper threaded hanger rod and an opening on the underside to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular lower hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
  3. Dampening Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material with a projecting bushing for the underside opening preventing steel to steel contact.

## 2.11 SPRING HANGERS

- A. Combination Coil-Spring and Elastomeric-Insert Hanger with Spring and Insert in Compression:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
    - b. Mason Industries, Inc.
    - c. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
  2. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.



3. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
4. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
5. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
6. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
7. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene. Steel-washer-reinforced cup to support spring and bushing projecting through bottom of frame.
8. Adjustable Vertical Stop: Steel washer with neoprene washer "up-stop" on lower threaded rod.
9. Self-centering hanger rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support spring coil.

## 2.12 VIBRATION ISOLATION EQUIPMENT BASES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  1. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
  2. Mason Industries, Inc.
  3. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
- B. Steel Rails: Factory-fabricated, welded, structural-steel rails.
  1. Design Requirements: Lowest possible mounting height with not less than 1-inch clearance above the floor. Include equipment anchor bolts and auxiliary motor slide rails.
    - a. Include supports for suction and discharge elbows for pumps.
  2. Structural Steel: Steel shapes, plates, and bars complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M. Rails shall have shape to accommodate supported equipment.
  3. Support Brackets: Factory-welded steel brackets on frame for outrigger isolation mountings and to provide for anchor bolts and equipment support.
- C. Steel Bases: Factory-fabricated, welded, structural-steel bases and rails.
  1. Design Requirements: Lowest possible mounting height with not less than 1-inch clearance above the floor. Include equipment anchor bolts and auxiliary motor slide bases or rails.
    - a. Include supports for suction and discharge elbows for pumps.
  2. Structural Steel: Steel shapes, plates, and bars complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M. Bases shall have shape to accommodate supported equipment.
  3. Support Brackets: Factory-welded steel brackets on frame for outrigger isolation mountings and to provide for anchor bolts and equipment support.

- D. Concrete Inertia Base: Factory-fabricated or field-fabricated, welded, structural-steel bases and rails ready for placement of cast-in-place concrete.
  - 1. Design Requirements: Lowest possible mounting height with not less than 1-inch clearance above the floor. Include equipment anchor bolts and auxiliary motor slide bases or rails.
    - a. Include supports for suction and discharge elbows for pumps.
  - 2. Structural Steel: Steel shapes, plates, and bars complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M. Bases shall have shape to accommodate supported equipment.
  - 3. Support Brackets: Factory-welded steel brackets on frame for outrigger isolation mountings and to provide for anchor bolts and equipment support.
  - 4. Fabrication: Fabricate steel templates to hold equipment anchor-bolt sleeves and anchors in place during placement of concrete. Obtain anchor-bolt templates from supported equipment manufacturer.

## 2.13 RESTRAINED ISOLATION ROOF-CURB RAILS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
  - 2. Mason Industries, Inc.
  - 3. Thybar Corporation.
- B. Description: Factory-assembled, fully enclosed, insulated, air- and watertight curb rail designed to resiliently support equipment.
- C. Upper Frame: Upper frame shall provide continuous and captive support for equipment.
- D. Lower Support Assembly: The lower support assembly shall be formed sheet metal section containing adjustable and removable steel springs that support upper frame. The lower support assembly shall have a means for attaching to building structure and a wood nailer for attaching roof materials and shall be insulated with a minimum of 2 inches of rigid glass-fiber insulation on inside of assembly. Adjustable, restrained-spring isolators shall be mounted on elastomeric vibration isolation pads and shall have access ports, for level adjustment, with removable waterproof covers at all isolator locations. Isolators shall be located so they are accessible for adjustment at any time during the life of the installation without interfering with the integrity of the roof.
- E. Snubber Bushings: All-directional, elastomeric snubber bushings at least 1/4 inch thick.
- F. Water Seal: Galvanized sheet metal with EPDM seals at corners, attached to upper support frame, extending down past wood nailer of lower support assembly, and counterflashed over roof materials.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 VIBRATION CONTROL DEVICE INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate the location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment attachment and mounting points and with requirements for concrete reinforcement and formwork specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- B. Installation of vibration isolators must not cause any change of position of equipment, piping, or ductwork resulting in stresses or misalignment.

### 3.3 VIBRATION ISOLATION EQUIPMENT BASES INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate the location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment attachment and mounting points and with requirements for concrete reinforcement and formwork specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

END OF SECTION 230548.13

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 230553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Equipment labels.
  - 2. Warning signs and labels.
  - 3. Pipe labels.
  - 4. Duct labels.
  - 5. Stencils.
  - 6. Valve tags.
  - 7. Warning tags.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Valve Schedules: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

- A. Metal Labels for Equipment:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Brady Corporation.
    - b. Craftmark Pipe Markers.
    - c. Seton Identification Products.
  - 2. Material and Thickness: Brass, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.

3. Letter Color: Black.
4. Background Color: White.
5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets.
8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

B. Plastic Labels for Equipment:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Brady Corporation.
  - b. Craftmark Pipe Markers.
  - c. Seton Identification Products.
2. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16-inch-thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
3. Letter Color: Black.
4. Background Color: White.
5. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
6. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
7. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
8. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets.
9. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

C. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.

D. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules) and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

## 2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Brady Corporation.
  - 2. Craftmark Pipe Markers.
  - 3. Seton Identification Products.
- B. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16-inch-thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- C. Letter Color: White.
- D. Background Color: Red.
- E. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- F. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- G. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
- H. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets.
- I. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- J. Label Content: Include caution and warning information plus emergency notification instructions.

## 2.3 PIPE LABELS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Brady Corporation.
  - 2. Craftmark Pipe Markers.
  - 3. Seton Identification Products.
- B. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction according to ASME A13.1.
- C. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to partially cover circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.

- D. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- E. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings; also include pipe size and an arrow indicating flow direction.
  - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
  - 2. Lettering Size: Size letters according to ASME A13.1 for piping.

## 2.4 DUCT LABELS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Brady Corporation.
  - 2. Craftmark Pipe Markers.
  - 3. Seton Identification Products.
- B. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16-inch-thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- C. Letter Color: Black.
- D. Background Color: White.
- E. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- F. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- G. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
- H. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets.
- I. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- J. Duct Label Contents: Include identification of duct service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings; also include duct size and an arrow indicating flow direction.
  - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with duct system service lettering to accommodate both directions or as separate unit on each duct label to indicate flow direction.



## 2.5 STENCILS

### A. Stencils for Piping:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Craftmark Pipe Markers.
  - b. Marking Seivics Inc.
2. Lettering Size: Size letters according to ASME A13.1 for piping.
3. Stencil Material: Fiberboard or metal.
4. Stencil Paint: Exterior, gloss, alkyd enamel in colors complying with recommendations in ASME A13.1 unless otherwise indicated. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
5. Identification Paint: Exterior, alkyd enamel in colors according to ASME A13.1 unless otherwise indicated. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.

### B. Stencils for Ducts:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Craftmark Pipe Markers.
  - b. Marking Seivics Inc.
2. Lettering Size: Minimum letter height of 1-1/4 inches for viewing distances up to 15 feet and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances.
3. Stencil Material: Fiberboard or metal.
4. Stencil Paint: Exterior, gloss, alkyd enamel. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
5. Identification Paint: Exterior, alkyd enamel. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.

### C. Stencils for Access Panels and Door Labels, Equipment Labels, and Similar Operational Instructions:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Craftmark Pipe Markers.
  - b. Marking Seivics Inc.
2. Lettering Size: Minimum letter height of 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances.
3. Stencil Material: Fiberboard or metal.
4. Stencil Paint: Exterior, gloss, alkyd enamel. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
5. Identification Paint: Exterior, alkyd enamel. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.

## 2.6 VALVE TAGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Brady Corporation.
  - 2. Craftmark Pipe Markers.
  - 3. Seton Identification Products.
- B. Description: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers.
  - 1. Tag Material: Brass, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
  - 2. Fasteners: Brass wire-link chain.
- C. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.
  - 1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

## 2.7 WARNING TAGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Brady Corporation.
  - 2. Craftmark Pipe Markers.
  - 3. Seton Identification Products.
- B. Description: Preprinted or partially preprinted accident-prevention tags of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.
  - 1. Size: 3 by 5-1/4 inches minimum.
  - 2. Fasteners: Brass grommet and wire.
  - 3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
  - 4. Color: Safety-yellow background with black lettering.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

### 3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

### 3.3 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

### 3.4 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Piping Color Coding: Painting of piping is specified in Division 09 Section "Interior Painting."
- B. Stenciled Pipe Label Option: Stenciled labels may be provided instead of manufactured pipe labels, at Installer's option. Install stenciled pipe labels, complying with ASME A13.1, on each piping system.
  - 1. Identification Paint: Use for contrasting background.
  - 2. Stencil Paint: Use for pipe marking.
- C. Pipe Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
  - 1. Near each valve and control device.
  - 2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
  - 3. Near penetrations and on both sides of through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
  - 4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.

5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
  6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
  7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.
- D. Directional Flow Arrows: Arrows shall be used to indicate direction of flow in pipes, including pipes where flow is allowed in both directions.
- E. Pipe Label Color Schedule:
1. Condenser-Water Piping: White letters on a safety-green background.
  2. Refrigerant Piping: Black letters on a safety-orange background.

### 3.5 DUCT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install plastic-laminated duct labels with permanent adhesive on air ducts in the following color codes:
1. Blue: For cold-air supply ducts.
  2. Yellow: For hot-air supply ducts.
  3. Green: For exhaust-, outside-, relief-, return-, and mixed-air ducts.
- B. Stenciled Duct Label Option: Stenciled labels showing service and flow direction may be provided instead of plastic-laminated duct labels, at Installer's option.
- C. Locate labels near points where ducts enter into and exit from concealed spaces and at maximum intervals of 50 feet in each space where ducts are exposed or concealed by removable ceiling system.

### 3.6 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves, valves within factory-fabricated equipment units, shutoff valves, faucets, convenience and lawn-watering hose connections, and HVAC terminal devices and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.
- B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in the following subparagraphs:
1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:
    - a. Condenser Water: 1-1/2 inches, round.
    - b. Refrigerant: 1-1/2 inches, round.
    - c. Gas: 1-1/2 inches, round.
  2. Valve-Tag Colors:

- a. Toxic and Corrosive Fluids: Black letters on a safety-orange background.
- b. Flammable Fluids: Black letters on a safety-yellow background.
- c. Combustible Fluids: White letters on a safety-brown background.
- d. Potable and Other Water: White letters on a safety-green background.
- e. Compressed Air: White letters on a safety-blue background.
- f. Defined by User: White letters on a safety-purple background, black letters on a safety-white background, white letters on a safety-gray background, and white letters on a safety-black background

### 3.7 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

END OF SECTION 230553

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 230593 - TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Balancing Air Systems:
    - a. Constant-volume air systems.
  - 2. Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Equipment:
    - a. Motors.
    - b. Condensing units.
    - c. Heat-transfer coils.
  - 3. Control system verification.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council.
- B. BAS: Building automation systems.
- C. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau.
- D. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- E. TABB: Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Bureau.
- F. TAB Specialist: An independent entity meeting qualifications to perform TAB work.
- G. TDH: Total dynamic head.

#### 1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. TAB Conference: If requested by the Owner, conduct a TAB conference at Project site after approval of the TAB strategies and procedures plan to develop a mutual understanding of the details. Provide a minimum of 14 days' advance notice of scheduled meeting time and location.
  - 1. Minimum Agenda Items:
    - a. The Contract Documents examination report.
    - b. The TAB plan.
    - c. Needs for coordination and cooperation of trades and subcontractors.
    - d. Proposed procedures for documentation and communication flow.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit documentation that the TAB specialist and this Project's TAB team members meet the qualifications specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- B. Contract Documents Examination Report: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit the Contract Documents review report as specified in Part 3.
- C. Strategies and Procedures Plan: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit TAB strategies and step-by-step procedures as specified in "Preparation" Article.
- D. System Readiness Checklists: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit system readiness checklists as specified in "Preparation" Article.
- E. Examination Report: Submit a summary report of the examination review required in "Examination" Article.
- F. Certified TAB reports.
- G. Sample report forms.
- H. Instrument calibration reports, to include the following:
  - 1. Instrument type and make.
  - 2. Serial number.
  - 3. Application.
  - 4. Dates of use.
  - 5. Dates of calibration.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. TAB Specialists Qualifications: Certified by AABC, NEBB, or TABB.



1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC, NEBB, or TABB.
  2. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC, NEBB, or TABB as a TAB technician.
- B. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, Accuracy, and Calibration: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 111, Section 4, "Instrumentation."
- C. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 7.2.2 - "Air Balancing."
- D. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6.7.2.3 - "System Balancing."

#### 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Full Owner Occupancy: Owner will occupy the site and existing building during entire TAB period. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.
- B. Partial Owner Occupancy: Owner may occupy completed areas of building before Substantial Completion. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

#### PART 3 - EXECUTION

##### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.
- B. Examine installed systems for balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers. Verify that locations of these balancing devices are applicable for intended purpose and are accessible.
- C. Examine the approved submittals for HVAC systems and equipment.
- D. Examine design data including HVAC system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about HVAC system and equipment controls.

- E. Examine ceiling plenums and underfloor air plenums used for supply, return, or relief air to verify that they are properly separated from adjacent areas. Verify that penetrations in plenum walls are sealed and fire-stopped if required.
- F. Examine equipment performance data including fan and pump curves.
  - 1. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.
  - 2. Calculate system-effect factors to reduce performance ratings of HVAC equipment when installed under conditions different from the conditions used to rate equipment performance. To calculate system effects for air systems, use tables and charts found in AMCA 201, "Fans and Systems," or in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Duct Design." Compare results with the design data and installed conditions.
- G. Examine system and equipment installations and verify that field quality-control testing, cleaning, and adjusting specified in individual Sections have been performed.
- H. Examine test reports specified in individual system and equipment Sections.
- I. Examine HVAC equipment and verify that bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, filters are clean, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.
- J. Examine terminal units, such as variable-air-volume boxes, and verify that they are accessible and their controls are connected and functioning.
- K. Examine strainers. Verify that startup screens have been replaced by permanent screens with indicated perforations.
- L. Examine control valves for proper installation for their intended function of throttling, diverting, or mixing fluid flows.
- M. Examine heat-transfer coils for correct piping connections and for clean and straight fins.
- N. Examine system pumps to ensure absence of entrained air in the suction piping.
- O. Examine operating safety interlocks and controls on HVAC equipment.
- P. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare a TAB plan that includes the following:
  - 1. Equipment and systems to be tested.
  - 2. Strategies and step-by-step procedures for balancing the systems.

3. Instrumentation to be used.
  4. Sample forms with specific identification for all equipment.
- B. Perform system-readiness checks of HVAC systems and equipment to verify system readiness for TAB work. Include, at a minimum, the following:
1. Airside:
    - a. Verify that leakage and pressure tests on air distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.
    - b. Duct systems are complete with terminals installed.
    - c. Volume, smoke, and fire dampers are open and functional.
    - d. Clean filters are installed.
    - e. Fans are operating, free of vibration, and rotating in correct direction.
    - f. Variable-frequency controllers' startup is complete and safeties are verified.
    - g. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.
    - h. Ceilings are installed.
    - i. Windows and doors are installed.
    - j. Suitable access to balancing devices and equipment is provided.

### 3.3 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

- A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system according to the procedures contained in ASHRAE 111 and in this Section.
- B. Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment cabinets for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary for TAB procedures.
  1. After testing and balancing, patch probe holes in ducts with same material and thickness as used to construct ducts.
  2. After testing and balancing, install test ports and duct access doors that comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories."
  3. Install and join new insulation that matches removed materials. Restore insulation, coverings, vapor barrier, and finish according to Division 23 Section "Duct Insulation," Division 23 Section "HVAC Equipment Insulation," and Division 23 Section "HVAC Piping Insulation."
- C. Mark equipment and balancing devices, including damper-control positions, valve position indicators, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material to show final settings.
- D. Take and report testing and balancing measurements in inch-pound (IP) units.

### 3.4 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR BALANCING AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Cross-check the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.
- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" duct layouts.
- C. For variable-air-volume systems, develop a plan to simulate diversity.
- D. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct-airflow measurements.
- E. Check airflow patterns from the outdoor-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-air dampers through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.
- F. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.
- G. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
- H. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.
- I. Check for airflow blockages.
- J. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.
- K. Check for proper sealing of air-handling-unit components.
- L. Verify that air duct system is sealed as specified in Division 23 Section "Metal Ducts."

### 3.5 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
  - 1. Measure total airflow.
    - a. Set outside-air, return-air, and relief-air dampers for proper position that simulates minimum outdoor-air conditions.
    - b. Where duct conditions allow, measure airflow by Pitot-tube traverse. If necessary, perform multiple Pitot-tube traverses to obtain total airflow.
    - c. Where duct conditions are not suitable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, a coil traverse may be acceptable.
    - d. If a reliable Pitot-tube traverse or coil traverse is not possible, measure airflow at terminals and calculate the total airflow.
  - 2. Measure fan static pressures as follows:

- a. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
    - b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan inlet or through the flexible connection.
    - c. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up the air-handling system.
    - d. Report artificial loading of filters at the time static pressures are measured.
  3. Review Record Documents to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Calculate actual system-effect factors. Recommend adjustments to accommodate actual conditions.
  4. Obtain approval from Owner for adjustment of fan speed higher or lower than indicated speed. Comply with requirements in HVAC Sections for air-handling units for adjustment of fans, belts, and pulley sizes to achieve indicated air-handling-unit performance.
  5. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload occurs. Measure amperage in full-cooling, full-heating, economizer, and any other operating mode to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.
- B. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows.
1. Measure airflow of submain and branch ducts.
  2. Adjust submain and branch duct volume dampers for specified airflow.
  3. Re-measure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted.
- C. Adjust air inlets and outlets for each space to indicated airflows.
1. Set airflow patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.
  2. Measure inlets and outlets airflow.
  3. Adjust each inlet and outlet for specified airflow.
  4. Re-measure each inlet and outlet after they have been adjusted.
- D. Verify final system conditions.
1. Re-measure and confirm that minimum outdoor, return, and relief airflows are within design. Readjust to design if necessary.
  2. Re-measure and confirm that total airflow is within design.
  3. Re-measure all final fan operating data, rpms, volts, amps, and static profile.
  4. Mark all final settings.
  5. Test system in economizer mode. Verify proper operation and adjust if necessary.
  6. Measure and record all operating data.
  7. Record final fan-performance data.

### 3.6 PROCEDURES FOR CONDENSING UNITS

- A. Verify proper rotation of fans.
- B. Measure entering- and leaving-air temperatures.
- C. Record fan and motor operating data.

### 3.7 PROCEDURES FOR HEAT-TRANSFER COILS

- A. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each refrigerant coil:
  - 1. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
  - 2. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
  - 3. Airflow.

### 3.8 CONTROLS VERIFICATION

- A. In conjunction with system balancing, perform the following:
  - 1. Verify temperature control system is operating within the design limitations.
  - 2. Confirm that the sequences of operation are in compliance with Contract Documents.
  - 3. Verify that controllers are calibrated and function as intended.
  - 4. Verify that controller set points are as indicated.
  - 5. Verify the operation of lockout or interlock systems.
  - 6. Verify the operation of valve and damper actuators.
  - 7. Verify that controlled devices are properly installed and connected to correct controller.
  - 8. Verify that controlled devices travel freely and are in position indicated by controller: open, closed, or modulating.
  - 9. Verify location and installation of sensors to ensure that they sense only intended temperature, humidity, or pressure.
- B. Reporting: Include a summary of verifications performed, remaining deficiencies, and variations from indicated conditions.

### 3.9 PROCEDURES FOR TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING EXISTING SYSTEMS

- A. Perform a preconstruction inspection of existing equipment that is to remain and be reused.
  - 1. Measure and record the operating speed, airflow, and static pressure of each fan.
  - 2. Measure motor voltage and amperage. Compare the values to motor nameplate information.
  - 3. Check the refrigerant charge.
  - 4. Check the condition of filters.
  - 5. Check the condition of coils.
  - 6. Check the operation of the drain pan and condensate-drain trap.

7. Check bearings and other lubricated parts for proper lubrication.
8. Report on the operating condition of the equipment and the results of the measurements taken. Report deficiencies.

### 3.10 TOLERANCES

- A. Set HVAC system's airflow rates and water flow rates within the following tolerances:
  1. Supply, Return, and Exhaust Fans and Equipment with Fans: Plus or minus 10 percent.
  2. Air Outlets and Inlets: Plus or minus 10 percent.
- B. Maintaining pressure relationships as designed shall have priority over the tolerances specified above.

### 3.11 PROGRESS REPORTING

- A. Initial Construction-Phase Report: Based on examination of the Contract Documents as specified in "Examination" Article, prepare a report on the adequacy of design for systems balancing devices. Recommend changes and additions to systems balancing devices to facilitate proper performance measuring and balancing. Recommend changes and additions to HVAC systems and general construction to allow access for performance measuring and balancing devices.

### 3.12 FINAL REPORT

- A. General: Prepare a certified written report; tabulate and divide the report into separate sections for tested systems and balanced systems.
  1. Include a certification sheet at the front of the report's binder, signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
  2. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.
  3. Certify validity and accuracy of field data.
- B. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field-report data, include the following:
  1. Pump curves.
  2. Fan curves.
  3. Manufacturers' test data.
  4. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
  5. Other information relative to equipment performance; do not include Shop Drawings and Product Data.
- C. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data:
  1. Title page.
  2. Name and address of the TAB specialist.

3. Project name.
  4. Project location.
  5. Architect's name and address.
  6. Engineer's name and address.
  7. Contractor's name and address.
  8. Report date.
  9. Signature of TAB supervisor who certifies the report.
  10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
  11. Summary of contents including the following:
    - a. Indicated versus final performance.
    - b. Notable characteristics of systems.
    - c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.
  12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
  13. Data for terminal units, including manufacturer's name, type, size, and fittings.
  14. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from indicated values.
  15. Test conditions for fans and pump performance forms including the following:
    - a. Settings for outdoor-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
    - b. Conditions of filters.
    - c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
    - d. Fan drive settings including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
    - e. Settings for supply-air, static-pressure controller.
    - f. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.
- D. System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of air and hydronic distribution systems. Present each system with single-line diagram and include the following:
1. Quantities of outdoor, supply, return, and exhaust airflows.
  2. Water and steam flow rates.
  3. Duct, outlet, and inlet sizes.
  4. Pipe and valve sizes and locations.
  5. Terminal units.
  6. Balancing stations.
  7. Position of balancing devices.
- E. Air-Handling-Unit Test Reports: For air-handling units with coils, include the following:
1. Unit Data:
    - a. Unit identification.
    - b. Location.
    - c. Make and type.
    - d. Model number and unit size.
    - e. Manufacturer's serial number.



- f. Unit arrangement and class.
- g. Discharge arrangement.
- h. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
- i. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
- j. Number, make, and size of belts.
- k. Number, type, and size of filters.

2. Motor Data:

- a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
- b. Horsepower and rpm.
- c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
- d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
- e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
- f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.

3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
- b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
- c. Fan rpm.
- d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
- e. Filter static-pressure differential in inches wg.
- f. Preheat-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
- g. Cooling-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
- h. Heating-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
- i. Outdoor airflow in cfm.
- j. Return airflow in cfm.
- k. Outdoor-air damper position.
- l. Return-air damper position.
- m. Vortex damper position.

F. Apparatus-Coil Test Reports:

1. Coil Data:

- a. System identification.
- b. Location.
- c. Coil type.
- d. Number of rows.
- e. Fin spacing in fins per inch o.c.
- f. Make and model number.
- g. Face area in sq. ft..
- h. Tube size in NPS.
- i. Tube and fin materials.
- j. Circuiting arrangement.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Airflow rate in cfm.
- b. Average face velocity in fpm.
- c. Air pressure drop in inches wg.
- d. Outdoor-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
- e. Return-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
- f. Entering-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
- g. Leaving-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
- h. Water flow rate in gpm.
- i. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig.
- j. Entering-water temperature in deg F.
- k. Leaving-water temperature in deg F.
- l. Refrigerant expansion valve and refrigerant types.
- m. Refrigerant suction pressure in psig.
- n. Refrigerant suction temperature in deg F.
- o. Inlet steam pressure in psig.

G. Gas-Fired Heat Apparatus Test Reports: In addition to manufacturer's factory startup equipment reports, include the following:

1. Unit Data:

- a. System identification.
- b. Location.
- c. Make and type.
- d. Model number and unit size.
- e. Manufacturer's serial number.
- f. Fuel type in input data.
- g. Output capacity in Btu/h.
- h. Ignition type.
- i. Burner-control types.
- j. Motor horsepower and rpm.
- k. Motor volts, phase, and hertz.
- l. Motor full-load amperage and service factor.
- m. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
- n. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
- b. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
- c. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.
- d. Air temperature differential in deg F.
- e. Entering-air static pressure in inches wg.
- f. Leaving-air static pressure in inches wg.
- g. Air static-pressure differential in inches wg.
- h. Low-fire fuel input in Btu/h.
- i. High-fire fuel input in Btu/h.
- j. Manifold pressure in psig.

- k. High-temperature-limit setting in deg F.
  - l. Operating set point in Btu/h.
  - m. Motor voltage at each connection.
  - n. Motor amperage for each phase.
  - o. Heating value of fuel in Btu/h.
- H. Fan Test Reports: For supply, return, and exhaust fans, include the following:
  - 1. Fan Data:
    - a. System identification.
    - b. Location.
    - c. Make and type.
    - d. Model number and size.
    - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
    - f. Arrangement and class.
    - g. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
    - h. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
  - 2. Motor Data:
    - a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
    - b. Horsepower and rpm.
    - c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
    - d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
    - e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
    - f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.
    - g. Number, make, and size of belts.
  - 3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
    - a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
    - b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
    - c. Fan rpm.
    - d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
    - e. Suction static pressure in inches wg.
- I. Round, Flat-Oval, and Rectangular Duct Traverse Reports: Include a diagram with a grid representing the duct cross-section and record the following:
  - 1. Report Data:
    - a. System and air-handling-unit number.
    - b. Location and zone.
    - c. Traverse air temperature in deg F.
    - d. Duct static pressure in inches wg.
    - e. Duct size in inches.
    - f. Duct area in sq. ft..

- g. Indicated airflow rate in cfm.
- h. Indicated velocity in fpm.
- i. Actual airflow rate in cfm.
- j. Actual average velocity in fpm.
- k. Barometric pressure in psig.

J. Air-Terminal-Device Reports:

1. Unit Data:

- a. System and air-handling unit identification.
- b. Location and zone.
- c. Apparatus used for test.
- d. Area served.
- e. Make.
- f. Number from system diagram.
- g. Type and model number.
- h. Size.
- i. Effective area in sq. ft..

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Airflow rate in cfm.
- b. Air velocity in fpm.
- c. Preliminary airflow rate as needed in cfm.
- d. Preliminary velocity as needed in fpm.
- e. Final airflow rate in cfm.
- f. Final velocity in fpm.
- g. Space temperature in deg F.

K. System-Coil Reports: For reheat coils and water coils of terminal units, include the following:

1. Unit Data:

- a. System and air-handling-unit identification.
- b. Location and zone.
- c. Room or riser served.
- d. Coil make and size.
- e. Flowmeter type.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Airflow rate in cfm.
- b. Entering-water temperature in deg F.
- c. Leaving-water temperature in deg F.
- d. Water pressure drop in feet of head or psig.
- e. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
- f. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.

L. Instrument Calibration Reports:

1. Report Data:

- a. Instrument type and make.
- b. Serial number.
- c. Application.
- d. Dates of use.
- e. Dates of calibration.

3.13 VERIFICATION OF TAB REPORT

- A. The TAB specialist's test and balance engineer shall conduct the inspection in the presence of Owner.
- B. Owner shall randomly select measurements, documented in the final report, to be rechecked. Rechecking shall be limited to either 10 percent of the total measurements recorded or the extent of measurements that can be accomplished in a normal 8-hour business day.
- C. If rechecks yield measurements that differ from the measurements documented in the final report by more than the tolerances allowed, the measurements shall be noted as "FAILED."
- D. If the number of "FAILED" measurements is greater than 10 percent of the total measurements checked during the final inspection, the testing and balancing shall be considered incomplete and shall be rejected.
- E. If TAB work fails, proceed as follows:
  1. TAB specialists shall recheck all measurements and make adjustments. Revise the final report and balancing device settings to include all changes; resubmit the final report and request a second final inspection.
  2. If the second final inspection also fails, Owner may contract the services of another TAB specialist to complete TAB work according to the Contract Documents and deduct the cost of the services from the original TAB specialist's final payment.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.14 ADDITIONAL TESTS

- A. Within 90 days of completing TAB, perform additional TAB to verify that balanced conditions are being maintained throughout and to correct unusual conditions.
- B. Seasonal Periods: If initial TAB procedures were not performed during near-peak summer and winter conditions, perform additional TAB during near-peak summer and winter conditions.

END OF SECTION 230593

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 230713 - DUCT INSULATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following duct services:
  - 1. Indoor, concealed supply, return, and outdoor air.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied if any).

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

## 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Division 23 Section "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with duct Installer for duct insulation application. Before preparing ductwork Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

## 1.8 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Duct Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule," and "Aboveground, Outdoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type III with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.



1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. CertainTeed Corporation.
  - b. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
  - c. Knauf Insulation.
  - d. Owens Corning.
- G. Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IA or Type IB. For duct and plenum applications, provide insulation with factory-applied ASJ. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corporation.
    - b. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
    - c. Knauf Insulation.
    - d. Owens Corning.

## 2.2 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
- C. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.

## 2.3 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
  2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
  3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
  4. FSP Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with polyethylene backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
  5. Vinyl Jacket: White vinyl with a permeance of 1.3 perms when tested according to ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure A, and complying with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.

## 2.4 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company.
    - b. Venture Tape.
  2. Width: 3 inches.
  3. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
  4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
  5. Elongation: 2 percent.
  6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
  7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company.
    - b. Venture Tape.
  2. Width: 3 inches.
  3. Thickness: 6.5 mils.

4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 2 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
7. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.

## 2.5 SECUREMENTS

### A. Bands:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. ITW Insulation Systems; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
  - b. RPR Products, Inc.
2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304; 0.015 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing seal.
3. Aluminum: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing seal.
4. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.

### B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:

1. Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
  - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - 1) Gemco.
    - 2) Hardcast, Inc.
2. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.
  - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - 1) Gemco.
    - 2) Hardcast, Inc.
3. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely

in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:

- a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - 1) Gemco.
    - 2) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.
  - b. Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
  - c. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
  - d. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
4. Nonmetal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate fastened to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
- a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - 1) Gemco.
    - 2) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.
  - b. Baseplate: Perforated, nylon sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
  - c. Spindle: Nylon, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated, up to 2-1/2 inches.
  - d. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
5. Self-Sticking-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
- a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - 1) Gemco.
    - 2) Hardcast, Inc.
    - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.

- b. Baseplate: Galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030-inch-thick by 2 inches square.
  - c. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
  - d. Adhesive-backed base with a peel-off protective cover.
- 6. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick, galvanized-steel sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
  - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - 1) Gemco.
    - 2) Hardcast, Inc.
    - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.
  - b. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.
- 7. Nonmetal Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick nylon sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
  - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - 1) Gemco.
    - 2) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.
- C. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch-wide, stainless steel or Monel.
- D. Wire: 0.080-inch nickel-copper alloy.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. C & F Wire.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.

1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
  2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

### 3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of ducts and fittings.
- B. Install insulation materials, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of duct system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- G. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- H. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- I. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
  2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
  3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- J. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.

- K. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
  2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch-wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
  3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches o.c.
    - a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
  4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
  5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to duct flanges and fittings.
- L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- M. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- N. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

### 3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
  4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation,

- install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
  4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- D. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations. Externally insulate damper sleeves to match adjacent insulation and overlap duct insulation at least 2 inches.
1. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."
- E. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
1. Duct: For penetrations through fire-rated assemblies, terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves and externally insulate damper sleeve beyond floor to match adjacent duct insulation. Overlap damper sleeve and duct insulation at least 2 inches.
  2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

- A. Blanket Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.
1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
  2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
  3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
    - a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
    - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, place pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
    - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
    - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
    - e. Impale insulation over pins and attach speed washers.



- f. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
  - 4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
    - a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
    - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches.
  - 5. Overlap unfaced blankets a minimum of 2 inches on longitudinal seams and end joints. At end joints, secure with steel bands spaced a maximum of 18 inches o.c.
  - 6. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
  - 7. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch-wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.
- B. Board Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.
- 1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
  - 2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
  - 3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
    - a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
    - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, space pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
    - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
    - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.

- e. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
- 4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
  - a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
  - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches.
- 5. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Groove and score insulation to fit as closely as possible to outside and inside radius of elbows. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
- 6. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch-wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.

### 3.6 DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Plenums and Ducts Requiring Insulation:
  - 1. Indoor, concealed supply, return, and outdoor air.
  - 2. Indoor, concealed exhaust within 10' of building exterior.
- B. Items Not Insulated:
  - 1. Factory-insulated flexible ducts.
  - 2. Factory-insulated plenums and casings.
  - 3. Flexible connectors.
  - 4. Vibration-control devices.
  - 5. Factory-insulated access panels and doors.

### 3.7 INDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Concealed, rectangular, supply-, return-, outdoor-, and exhaust-duct insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

END OF SECTION 230713

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 230719 - HVAC PIPING INSULATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following HVAC piping systems:
  - 1. Condensate drain piping, indoors.
  - 2. Refrigerant suction and hot-gas piping, indoors and outdoors.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 23 Section "Duct Insulation."

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied if any).

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

#### 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Division 23 Section "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

#### 1.8 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule," and "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule," articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.

- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.
    - b. Armacell LLC.
    - c. K-Flex USA.
- G. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
    - b. Knauf Insulation.
    - c. Owens Corning.
  - 2. Type I, 850 deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ-SSL. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
  - 3. Type II, 1200 deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type II, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ-SSL. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- H. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe Insulation Wicking System: Preformed pipe insulation complying with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, with absorbent cloth factory-applied to the entire inside surface of preformed pipe insulation and extended through the longitudinal joint to outside surface of insulation under insulation jacket. Factory apply a white, polymer, vapor-retarder jacket with self-sealing adhesive tape seam and evaporation holes running continuously along the longitudinal seam, exposing the absorbent cloth.

## 2.2 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

- a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.
- b. Armacell LLC.
- c. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
- d. K-Flex USA.

C. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
  - b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.

D. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
  - b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.

## 2.3 SEALANTS

A. ASJ Flashing Sealants:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
- 2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
- 3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
- 4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
- 5. Color: White.

## 2.4 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
- 1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
  - 2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.



## 2.5 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Proto Corporation.
    - b. Speedline Corporation.
  - 2. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
  - 3. Color: White.
  - 4. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.
    - a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.

## 2.6 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division.
    - b. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company.
  - 2. Width: 3 inches.
  - 3. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
  - 4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
  - 5. Elongation: 2 percent.
  - 6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
  - 7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

- a. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company.
2. Width: 2 inches.
3. Thickness: 6 mils.
4. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 500 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch in width.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
  1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
  2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
  3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

### 3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.

- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
  - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
  - 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
  - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
  - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch-wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
  - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches o.c.
    - a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
  - 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
  - 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.
- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:

1. Vibration-control devices.
2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
3. Nameplates and data plates.
4. Manholes.
5. Handholes.
6. Cleanouts.

### 3.4 PENETRATIONS

A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.

D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.

E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.

1. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.

F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:

1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

3.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.

B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:

1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
5. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
6. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
7. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union." Match size and color of pipe labels.

C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.

D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:

1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

### 3.6 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

- A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
  1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
  2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
  3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
  4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
  1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
  2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
  1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.

2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

### 3.7 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

#### A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

#### B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

#### C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

#### D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.

3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

### 3.8 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

- A. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
  1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.

### 3.9 FINISHES

- A. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
- B. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
- C. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

### 3.10 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:
  1. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces.
  2. Underground piping.
  3. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

### 3.11 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Condensate and Equipment Drain Water below 60 Deg F:
  1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
    - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 3/4 inch thick.
    - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1/2 inch thick.
- B. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Piping:



1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
  - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
  - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.

C. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Flexible Tubing:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
  - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.

3.12 OUTDOOR, ABOVEGROUND PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Piping:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
  - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inches thick.
  - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 2 inches thick.

3.13 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Piping, Exposed:
  1. PVC: 20 mils thick.

END OF SECTION 230719

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 230923 - DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL (DDC) SYSTEM FOR HVAC

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. DDC system for monitoring and controlling of HVAC systems.
  - 2. Delivery of selected control devices to equipment and systems manufacturers for factory installation and to HVAC systems installers for field installation.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Algorithm: A logical procedure for solving a recurrent mathematical problem. A prescribed set of well-defined rules or processes for solving a problem in a finite number of steps.
- B. Analog: A continuously varying signal value, such as current, flow, pressure, or temperature.
- C. BACnet Specific Definitions:
  - 1. BACnet: Building Automation Control Network Protocol, ASHRAE 135. A communications protocol allowing devices to communicate data over and services over a network.
  - 2. BACnet Interoperability Building Blocks (BIBBs): BIBB defines a small portion of BACnet functionality that is needed to perform a particular task. BIBBs are combined to build the BACnet functional requirements for a device.
  - 3. BACnet/IP: Defines and allows using a reserved UDP socket to transmit BACnet messages over IP networks. A BACnet/IP network is a collection of one or more IP subnetworks that share the same BACnet network number.
  - 4. BACnet Testing Laboratories (BTL): Organization responsible for testing products for compliance with ASHRAE 135, operated under direction of BACnet International.
  - 5. PICS (Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement): Written document that identifies the particular options specified by BACnet that are implemented in a device.
- D. Binary: Two-state signal where a high signal level represents "ON" or "OPEN" condition and a low signal level represents "OFF" or "CLOSED" condition. "Digital" is sometimes used interchangeably with "Binary" to indicate a two-state signal.

- E. Controller: Generic term for any standalone, microprocessor-based, digital controller residing on a network, used for local or global control. Three types of controllers are indicated: Network Controller, Programmable Application Controller, and Application-Specific Controller.
- F. Control System Integrator: An entity that assists in expansion of existing enterprise system and support of additional operator interfaces to I/O being added to existing enterprise system.
- G. COV: Changes of value.
- H. DDC System Provider: Authorized representative of, and trained by, DDC system manufacturer and responsible for execution of DDC system Work indicated.
- I. Distributed Control: Processing of system data is decentralized and control decisions are made at subsystem level. System operational programs and information are provided to remote subsystems and status is reported back. On loss of communication, subsystems shall be capable of operating in a standalone mode using the last best available data.
- J. DOCSIS: Data-Over Cable Service Interface Specifications.
- K. E/P: Voltage to pneumatic.
- L. Gateway: Bidirectional protocol translator that connects control systems that use different communication protocols.
- M. HLC: Heavy load conditions.
- N. I/O: System through which information is received and transmitted. I/O refers to analog input (AI), binary input (BI), analog output (AO) and binary output (BO). Analog signals are continuous and represent control influences such as flow, level, moisture, pressure, and temperature. Binary signals convert electronic signals to digital pulses (values) and generally represent two-position operating and alarm status. "Digital," (DI and (DO), is sometimes used interchangeably with "Binary," (BI and (BO), respectively.
- O. I/P: Current to pneumatic.
- P. LAN: Local area network.
- Q. LNS: LonWorks Network Services.
- R. LON Specific Definitions:
  - 1. FTT-10: Echelon Transmitter-Free Topology Transceiver.
  - 2. LonMark: Association comprising suppliers and installers of LonTalk products. Association provides guidelines for implementing LonTalk protocol to ensure interoperability through a standard or consistent implementation.
  - 3. LonTalk: An open standard protocol developed by the Echelon Corporation that uses a "Neuron Chip" for communication. LonTalk is a register trademark of Echelon.
  - 4. LonWorks: Network technology developed by Echelon.

5. Node: Device that communicates using CEA-709.1-C protocol and that is connected to a CEA-709.1-C network.
  6. Node Address: The logical address of a node on the network, consisting of a Domain number, Subnet number, and Node number. "Node number" portion of an address is a number assigned to device during installation, is unique within a subnet, and is not a factory-set unique Node ID.
  7. Node ID: A unique 48-bit identifier assigned at factory to each CEA-709.1-C device. Sometimes called a "Neuron ID."
  8. Program ID: An identifier (number) stored in a device (usually EEPROM) that identifies node manufacturer, functionality of device (application and sequence), transceiver used, and intended device usage.
  9. Standard Configuration Property Type (SCPT): Pronounced "skip-it." A standard format type maintained by LonMark International for configuration properties.
  10. Standard Network Variable Type (SNVT): Pronounced "snivet." A standard format type maintained by LonMark used to define data information transmitted and received by individual nodes. "SNVT" is used in two ways. It is an acronym for "Standard Network Variable Type" and is often used to indicate a network variable itself (i.e., it can mean "a network variable of a standard network variable type").
  11. Subnet: Consists of a logical grouping of up to 127 nodes, where logical grouping is defined by node addressing. Each subnet is assigned a number, which is unique within a Domain. See "Node Address."
  12. TP/FT-10: Free Topology Twisted Pair network defined by CEA-709.3 and is most common media type for a CEA-709.1-C control network.
  13. TP/XF-1250: High-speed, 1.25-Mbps, twisted-pair, doubly terminated bus network defined by "LonMark Interoperability Guidelines" typically used only to connect multiple TP/FT-10 networks.
  14. User-Defined Configuration Property Type (UCPT): Pronounced "U-Keep-It." A Configuration Property format type that is defined by device manufacturer.
  15. User-Defined Network Variable Type (UNVT): Network variable format defined by device manufacturer. UNVTs create non-standard communications that other vendors' devices may not correctly interpret and may negatively impact system operation. UNVTs are not allowed.
- S. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling power-limited circuits.
- T. Modbus TCP/IP: An open protocol for exchange of process data.
- U. MS/TP: Master-slave/token-passing, IEE 8802-3. Datalink protocol LAN option that uses twisted-pair wire for low-speed communication.
- V. MTBF: Mean time between failures.
- W. Network Controller: Digital controller, which supports a family of programmable application controllers and application-specific controllers, that communicates on peer-to-peer network for transmission of global data.

- X. Network Repeater: Device that receives data packet from one network and rebroadcasts it to another network. No routing information is added to protocol.
- Y. PDA: Personal digital assistant.
- Z. Peer to Peer: Networking architecture that treats all network stations as equal partners.
- AA. POT: Portable operator's terminal.
- BB. PUE: Performance usage effectiveness.
- CC. RAM: Random access memory.
- DD. RF: Radio frequency.
- EE. Router: Device connecting two or more networks at network layer.
- FF. Server: Computer used to maintain system configuration, historical and programming database.
- GG. TCP/IP: Transport control protocol/Internet protocol incorporated into Microsoft Windows.
- HH. UPS: Uninterruptible power supply.
- II. USB: Universal Serial Bus.
- JJ. User Datagram Protocol (UDP): This protocol assumes that the IP is used as the underlying protocol.
- KK. VAV: Variable air volume.
- LL. WLED: White light emitting diode.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product include the following:
  - 1. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
  - 2. Operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished accessories indicating process operating range, accuracy over range, control signal over range, default control signal with loss of power, calibration data specific to each unique application, electrical power requirements, and limitations of ambient operating environment, including temperature and humidity.
  - 3. Product description with complete technical data, performance curves, and product specification sheets.
  - 4. Installation, operation and maintenance instructions including factors effecting performance.

5. Bill of materials of indicating quantity, manufacturer, and extended model number for each unique product.
  - a. Operator workstations.
  - b. Servers.
  - c. Printers.
  - d. Gateways.
  - e. Routers.
  - f. Protocol analyzers.
  - g. DDC controllers.
  - h. Enclosures.
  - i. Electrical power devices.
  - j. UPS units.
  - k. Accessories.
  - l. Instruments.
  - m. Control dampers and actuators.
  - n. Control valves and actuators.
6. When manufacturer's product datasheets apply to a product series rather than a specific product model, clearly indicate and highlight only applicable information.
7. Each submitted piece of product literature shall clearly cross reference specification and drawings that submittal is to cover.

B. Software Submittal:

1. Cross-referenced listing of software to be loaded on each operator workstation, server, gateway, and DDC controller.
2. Description and technical data of all software provided and cross-referenced to products in which software will be installed.
3. Operating system software, operator interface and programming software, color graphic software, DDC controller software, maintenance management software, and third-party software.
4. Include a flow diagram and an outline of each subroutine that indicates each program variable name and units of measure.
5. Listing and description of each engineering equation used with reference source.
6. Listing and description of each constant used in engineering equations and a reference source to prove origin of each constant.
7. Description of operator interface to alphanumeric and graphic programming.
8. Description of each network communication protocol.
9. Description of system database, including all data included in database, database capacity and limitations to expand database.
10. Description of each application program and device drivers to be generated, including specific information on data acquisition and control strategies showing their relationship to system timing, speed, processing burden and system throughput.
11. Controlled Systems: Instrumentation list with element name, type of device, manufacturer, model number, and product data. Include written description of sequence of operation including schematic diagram.

C. Shop Drawings:

1. General Requirements:

- a. Include cover drawing with Project name, location, Owner, Architect, Contractor and issue date with each Shop Drawings submission.
- b. Include a drawing index sheet listing each drawing number and title that matches information in each title block.
- c. Prepare Drawings using CAD.

2. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details where applicable.

3. Include details of product assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.

4. Detail means of vibration isolation and show attachments to rotating equipment.

5. Plan Drawings indicating the following:

- a. Screened backgrounds of walls, structural grid lines, HVAC equipment, ductwork and piping.
- b. Room names and numbers with coordinated placement to avoid interference with control products indicated.
- c. Each desktop operator workstation, server, gateway, router, DDC controller, control panel instrument connecting to DDC controller, and damper and valve connecting to DDC controller, if included in Project.
- d. Exact placement of products in rooms, ducts, and piping to reflect proposed installed condition.
- e. Network communication cable and raceway routing.
- f. Proposed routing of wiring, cabling, conduit, and tubing, coordinated with building services for review before installation.

6. Schematic drawings for each controlled HVAC system indicating the following:

- a. I/O points labeled with point names shown. Indicate instrument range, normal operating set points, and alarm set points. Indicate fail position of each damper and valve, if included in Project.
- b. I/O listed in table format showing point name, type of device, manufacturer, model number, and cross-reference to product data sheet number.
- c. A graphic showing location of control I/O in proper relationship to HVAC system.
- d. Wiring diagram with each I/O point having a unique identification and indicating labels for all wiring terminals.
- e. Unique identification of each I/O that shall be consistently used between different drawings showing same point.
- f. Elementary wiring diagrams of controls for HVAC equipment motor circuits including interlocks, switches, relays and interface to DDC controllers.
- g. Narrative sequence of operation.
- h. Graphic sequence of operation, showing all inputs and output logical blocks.

7. Control panel drawings indicating the following:



- a. Panel dimensions, materials, size, and location of field cable, raceways, and tubing connections.
  - b. Interior subpanel layout, drawn to scale and showing all internal components, cabling and wiring raceways, nameplates and allocated spare space.
  - c. Front, rear, and side elevations and nameplate legend.
  - d. Unique drawing for each panel.
- 8. DDC system network riser diagram indicating the following:
  - a. Each device connected to network with unique identification for each.
  - b. Interconnection of each different network in DDC system.
  - c. For each network, indicate communication protocol, speed and physical means of interconnecting network devices, such as copper cable type, or fiber-optic cable type. Indicate raceway type and size for each.
  - d. Each network port for connection of an operator workstation or other type of operator interface with unique identification for each.
- 9. DDC system electrical power riser diagram indicating the following:
  - a. Each point of connection to field power with requirements (volts/phase//hertz/amperes/connection type) listed for each.
  - b. Each control power supply including, as applicable, transformers, power-line conditioners, transient voltage suppression and high filter noise units, DC power supplies, and UPS units with unique identification for each.
  - c. Each product requiring power with requirements (volts/phase//hertz/amperes/connection type) listed for each.
  - d. Power wiring type and size, race type, and size for each.
- 10. Monitoring and control signal diagrams indicating the following:
  - a. Control signal cable and wiring between controllers and I/O.
  - b. Point-to-point schematic wiring diagrams for each product.
- 11. Color graphics indicating the following:
  - a. Itemized list of color graphic displays to be provided.
  - b. For each display screen to be provided, a true color copy showing layout of pictures, graphics and data displayed.
  - c. Intended operator access between related hierarchical display screens.

D. System Description:

- 1. Full description of DDC system architecture, network configuration, operator interfaces and peripherals, servers, controller types and applications, gateways, routers and other network devices, and power supplies.
- 2. Complete listing and description of each report, log and trend for format and timing and events which initiate generation.

3. System and product operation under each potential failure condition including, but not limited to, the following:
  - a. Loss of power.
  - b. Loss of network communication signal.
  - c. Loss of controller signals to inputs and outpoints.
  - d. Operator workstation failure.
  - e. Server failure.
  - f. Gateway failure.
  - g. Network failure
  - h. Controller failure.
  - i. Instrument failure.
  - j. Control damper and valve actuator failure.
4. Complete bibliography of documentation and media to be delivered to Owner.
5. Description of testing plans and procedures.
6. Description of Owner training.

E. Samples:

1. For each of the following exposed product, installed in finished space for approval of selection of aesthetic characteristics:
  - a. Temperature instruments specified in Division 23 Section "Temperature Instruments."

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Product Certificates:

1. Data Communications Protocol Certificates: Certifying that each proposed DDC system component complies with ASHRAE 135.

B. Field quality-control reports.

C. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's warranty.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For DDC system to include in emergency, operation and maintenance manuals.

1. In addition to items specified in Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
  - a. Project Record Drawings of as-built versions of submittal Shop Drawings provided in electronic PDF format.

- b. Testing and commissioning reports and checklists of completed final versions of reports, checklists, and trend logs.
- c. As-built versions of submittal Product Data.
- d. Names, addresses, e-mail addresses and 24-hour telephone numbers of Installer and service representatives for DDC system and products.
- e. Operator's manual with procedures for operating control systems including logging on and off, handling alarms, producing point reports, trending data, overriding computer control and changing set points and variables.
- f. Programming manuals with description of programming language and syntax, of statements for algorithms and calculations used, of point database creation and modification, of program creation and modification, and of editor use.
- g. Engineering, installation, and maintenance manuals that explain how to:
  - 1) Design and install new points, panels, and other hardware.
  - 2) Perform preventive maintenance and calibration.
  - 3) Debug hardware problems.
  - 4) Repair or replace hardware.
- h. Documentation of all programs created using custom programming language including set points, tuning parameters, and object database.
- i. Backup copy of graphic files, programs, and database on electronic media such as DVDs.
- j. List of recommended spare parts with part numbers and suppliers.
- k. Complete original-issue documentation, installation, and maintenance information for furnished third-party hardware including computer equipment and sensors.
- l. Complete original-issue copies of furnished software, including operating systems, custom programming language, operator workstation software, and graphics software.
- m. Licenses, guarantees, and warranty documents.
- n. Recommended preventive maintenance procedures for system components, including schedule of tasks such as inspection, cleaning, and calibration; time between tasks; and task descriptions.
- o. Owner training materials.

#### 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials and parts that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
- B. Include product manufacturers' recommended parts lists for proper product operation over four-year period following warranty period. Parts list shall be indicated for each year.
- C. Furnish parts, as indicated by manufacturer's recommended parts list, for product operation during one-year period following warranty period.

## 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace products that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures shall be adjusted, repaired, or replaced at no additional cost or reduction in service to Owner.
  - 2. Include updates or upgrades to software and firmware if necessary to resolve deficiencies.
    - a. Install updates only after receiving Owner's written authorization.
  - 3. Warranty service shall occur during normal business hours and commence within 24 hours of Owner's warranty service request.
  - 4. Warranty Period: Two year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
    - a. For Gateway: Two-year parts and labor warranty for each.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Alerton Inc.
  - 2. Honeywell International Inc.
  - 3. Johnson Controls, Inc.
  - 4. Siemens Industry, Inc., Building Technologies Division.

### 2.2 DDC SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Microprocessor-based monitoring and control including analog/digital conversion and program logic. A control loop or subsystem in which digital and analog information is received and processed by a microprocessor, and digital control signals are generated based on control algorithms and transmitted to field devices to achieve a set of predefined conditions.
  - 1. DDC system shall consist of a peer-to-peer network of distributed DDC controllers, operator interfaces, and software.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

### 2.3 WEB ACCESS

- A. DDC system shall be Web based or Web compatible.

1. Web-Based Access to DDC System:

- a. DDC system software shall be based on server thin-client architecture, designed around open standards of Web technology. DDC system server shall be accessed using a Web browser over DDC system network, using Owner's LAN, and remotely over Internet through Owner's LAN.
- b. Intent of thin-client architecture is to provide operators complete access to DDC system via a Web browser. No special software other than a Web browser shall be required to access graphics, point displays, and trends; to configure trends, points, and controllers; and to edit programming.
- c. Web access shall be password protected.

2. Web-Compatible Access to DDC System:

- a. Operator workstation and or server shall perform overall system supervision and configuration, graphical user interface, management report generation, and alarm annunciation.
- b. DDC system shall support Web browser access to building data. Operator using a standard Web browser shall be able to access control graphics and change adjustable set points.
- c. Web access shall be password protected.

2.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Products installed in ducts, equipment, and return-air paths shall comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

- 1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
- 2. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.

B. DDC System Speed:

1. Response Time of Connected I/O:

- a. AI point values connected to DDC system shall be updated at least every five seconds for use by DDC controllers. Points used globally shall also comply with this requirement.
- b. BI point values connected to DDC system shall be updated at least every five seconds for use by DDC controllers. Points used globally shall also comply with this requirement.
- c. AO points connected to DDC system shall begin to respond to controller output commands within two second(s). Global commands shall also comply with this requirement.
- d. BO point values connected to DDC system shall respond to controller output commands within two second(s). Global commands shall also comply with this requirement.

2. Display of Connected I/O:
  - a. Analog point COV connected to DDC system shall be updated and displayed at least every 10 seconds for use by operator.
  - b. Binary point COV connected to DDC system shall be updated and displayed at least every 10 seconds for use by operator.
  - c. Alarms of analog and digital points connected to DDC system shall be displayed within 30 seconds of activation or change of state.
  - d. Graphic display refresh shall update within eight seconds.
  - e. Point change of values and alarms displayed from workstation to workstation when multiple operators are viewing from multiple workstations shall not exceed graphic refresh rate indicated.
- C. Network Bandwidth: Design each network of DDC system to include at least 30 percent available spare bandwidth with DDC system operating under normal and heavy load conditions indicated. Calculate bandwidth usage, and apply a safety factor to ensure that requirement is satisfied when subjected to testing under worst case conditions.
- D. DDC System Data Storage:
  1. Include server(s) with disk drive data storage to archive not less than 24 consecutive months of historical data for all I/O points connected to system, including alarms, event histories, transaction logs, trends and other information indicated.
  2. When logged onto a server, operator shall be able to also interact with any DDC controller connected to DDC system as required for functional operation of DDC system.
  3. Server(s) shall be used for application configuration; for archiving, reporting and trending of data; for operator transaction archiving and reporting; for network information management; for alarm annunciation; and for operator interface tasks and controls application management.
  4. Server(s) shall use IT industry-standard database platforms such as Microsoft SQL Server and Microsoft Data Engine (MSDE).
- E. Future Expandability:
  1. DDC system size shall be expandable to an ultimate capacity of at least two times total I/O points indicated.
  2. Additional DDC controllers, I/O and associated wiring shall be all that is needed to achieve ultimate capacity. Initial network infrastructure shall be designed and installed to support ultimate capacity.
  3. Operator interfaces installed initially shall not require hardware and software additions and revisions for ultimate capacity.
- F. Environmental Conditions for Controllers, Gateways, and Routers:
  1. Products shall operate without performance degradation under ambient environmental temperature, pressure and humidity conditions encountered for installed location.
- G. Environmental Conditions for Instruments and Actuators:

1. Instruments and actuators shall operate without performance degradation under the ambient environmental temperature, pressure, humidity, and vibration conditions specified and encountered for installed location.

H. DDC System Reliability:

1. Design, install and configure DDC controllers to yield a MTBF of at least 40,000 hours, based on a confidence level of at least 90 percent. MTBF value shall include any failure for any reason to any part of products indicated.
2. If required to comply with MTBF indicated, include DDC system and product redundancy to maintain DCC system, and associated systems and equipment that are being controlled, operational and under automatic control.
3. Critical systems and equipment that require a higher degree of DDC system redundancy than MTBF indicated shall be indicated on Drawings.

I. Electric Power Quality:

1. Power-Line Surges:

- a. Protect DDC system products connected to ac power circuits from power-line surges to comply with requirements of IEEE C62.41.
- b. Do not use fuses for surge protection.
- c. Test protection in the normal mode and in the common mode, using the following two waveforms:
  - 1) 10-by-1000-mic.sec. waveform with a peak voltage of 1500 V and a peak current of 60 A.
  - 2) 8-by-20-mic.sec. waveform with a peak voltage of 1000 V and a peak current of 500 A.

2. Power Conditioning:

- a. Protect DDC system products connected to ac power circuits from irregularities and noise rejection. Characteristics of power-line conditioner shall be as follows:
  - 1) At 85 percent load, output voltage shall not deviate by more than plus or minus 1 percent of nominal when input voltage fluctuates between minus 20 percent to plus 10 percent of nominal.
  - 2) During load changes from zero to full load, output voltage shall not deviate by more than plus or minus 3 percent of nominal.
  - 3) Accomplish full correction of load switching disturbances within five cycles, and 95 percent correction within two cycles of onset of disturbance.
  - 4) Total harmonic distortion shall not exceed 3-1/2 percent at full load.
3. Ground Fault: Protect products from ground fault by providing suitable grounding. Products shall not fail due to ground fault condition.

J. Continuity of Operation after Electric Power Interruption:

1. Equipment and associated factory-installed controls, field-installed controls, electrical equipment, and power supply connected to building normal and backup power systems shall automatically return equipment and associated controls to operating state occurring immediately before loss of normal power, without need for manual intervention by operator when power is restored either through backup power source or through normal power if restored before backup power is brought online.

## 2.5 SYSTEM ARCHITECTURE

- A. System architecture shall consist of no more than three levels of LANs.
  1. Level one LAN shall connect network controllers and operator workstations.
  2. Level one or Level two LAN shall connect programmable application controllers to other programmable application controllers, and to network controllers.
  3. Level two or Level three LAN shall connect application-specific controllers to programmable application controllers and network controllers.
  4. Level two or Level three LAN shall connect application-specific controllers to application-specific controllers.
- B. Minimum Data Transfer and Communication Speed:
  1. LAN Connecting Operator Workstations and Network Controllers: 100 Mbps.
  2. LAN Connecting Programmable Application Controllers: 1000 kbps.
  3. LAN Connecting Application-Specific Controllers: 115,000 bps.
- C. DDC system shall consist of dedicated LANs that are not shared with other building systems and tenant data and communication networks.
- D. System architecture shall be modular and have inherent ability to expand to not less than two times system size indicated with no impact to performance indicated.
- E. System architecture shall perform modifications without having to remove and replace existing network equipment.
- F. Number of LANs and associated communication shall be transparent to operator. All I/O points residing on any LAN shall be capable of global sharing between all system LANs.
- G. System design shall eliminate dependence on any single device for system alarm reporting and control execution. Each controller shall operate independently by performing its' own control, alarm management and historical data collection.

## 2.6 DDC SYSTEM OPERATOR INTERFACES

- A. Operator Means of System Access: Operator shall be able to access entire DDC system through any of multiple means, including, but not limited to, the following:



1. Desktop and portable operator workstation with hardwired connection through LAN port.
  2. Portable operator terminal with hardwired connection through LAN port.
  3. Portable operator workstation with wireless connection through LAN router.
  4. PDA with wireless connection through LAN router.
  5. Remote connection using outside of system personal computer or PDA through Web access.
- B. Access to system, regardless of operator means used, shall be transparent to operator.
- C. Network Ports: For hardwired connection of desktop or portable operator workstation. Network port shall be easily accessible, properly protected, clearly labeled, and installed at the following locations:
1. Each mechanical equipment room.
  2. Each different roof level with roof-mounted air-handling units or rooftop units.
  3. Security system command center.
  4. Fire-alarm system command center.
- D. Desktop Workstations:
1. Connect to DDC system Level one LAN through a communications port directly on LAN or through a communications port on a DDC controller.
  2. Able to communicate with any device located on any DDC system LAN.
  3. Able to communicate, with modems, remotely with any device connected to any DDC system LAN.
  4. Communication via a modem shall not interfere with LAN activity and LAN activity shall not prevent workstation from handling incoming calls.
- E. Portable Workstations:
1. Connect to DDC system Level one LAN through a communications port directly on LAN or through a communications port on a DDC controller.
  2. Able to communicate with any device located on any DDC system LAN.
  3. Connect to DDC system Level two LAN through a communications port on an application-specific controller, or a room temperature sensor connected to an application-specific controller.
  4. Connect to system through a wireless router connected to Level one LAN.
  5. Portable workstation shall be able to communicate with any device connected to any system LAN regardless of point of physical connection to system.
  6. Monitor, program, schedule, adjust set points, and report capabilities of I/O connected anywhere in system.
  7. Have dynamic graphic displays that are identical to desktop workstations.
- F. POT:
1. Connect DDC controller through a communications port local to controller.
  2. Able to communicate with any DDC system controller that is directly connected.

G. Personal Digital Assistant:

1. Connect to system through a wireless router connected to LAN.
2. Able to communicate with any DDC controller connected to DDC system.

H. Critical Alarm Reporting:

1. Operator-selected critical alarms shall be sent by DDC system to notify operator of critical alarms that require immediate attention.
2. DDC system shall send alarm notification to multiple recipients that are assigned for each alarm.
3. DDC system shall notify recipients by any or all means, including e-mail, text message and prerecorded phone message to mobile and landline phone numbers.

I. Simultaneous Operator Use: Capable of accommodating up to five simultaneous operators that are accessing DDC system through any one of operator interfaces indicated.

## 2.7 NETWORK COMMUNICATION PROTOCOL

A. Network communication protocol(s) used throughout entire DDC system shall be open to public and available to other companies for use in making future modifications to DDC system.

B. ASHRAE 135 Protocol:

1. ASHRAE 135 communication protocol shall be sole and native protocol used throughout entire DDC system.
2. DDC system shall not require use of gateways except to integrate HVAC equipment and other building systems and equipment, not required to use ASHRAE 135 communication protocol.
3. If used, gateways shall connect to DDC system using ASHRAE 135 communication protocol and Project object properties and read/write services indicated by interoperability schedule.
4. Operator workstations, controllers and other network devices shall be tested and listed by BACnet Testing Laboratories.

## 2.8 SYSTEM SOFTWARE

A. System Software Minimum Requirements:

1. Real-time multitasking and multiuser 32- or 64-bit operating system that allows concurrent multiple operator workstations operating and concurrent execution of multiple real-time programs and custom program development.
2. Operating system shall be capable of operating DOS and Microsoft Windows applications.
3. Database management software shall manage all data on an integrated and non-redundant basis. Additions and deletions to database shall be without detriment to

existing data. Include cross linkages so no data required by a program can be deleted by an operator until that data have been deleted from respective programs.

4. Network communications software shall manage and control multiple network communications to provide exchange of global information and execution of global programs.
5. Operator interface software shall include day-to-day operator transaction processing, alarm and report handling, operator privilege level and data segregation control, custom programming, and online data modification capability.
6. Scheduling software shall schedule centrally based time and event, temporary, and exception day programs.

B. Operator Interface Software:

1. Minimize operator training through use of English language prorating and English language point identification.
2. Minimize use of a typewriter-style keyboard through use of a pointing device similar to a mouse.
3. Operator sign-off shall be a manual operation or, if no keyboard or mouse activity takes place, an automatic sign-off.
4. Automatic sign-off period shall be programmable from one to 60 minutes in one-minute increments on a per operator basis.
5. Operator sign-on and sign-off activity shall be recorded and sent to printer.
6. Security Access:
  - a. Operator access to DDC system shall be under password control.
  - b. An alphanumeric password shall be field assignable to each operator.
  - c. Operators shall be able to access DDC system by entry of proper password.
  - d. Operator password shall be same regardless of which computer or other interface means is used.
  - e. Additions or changes made to passwords shall be updated automatically.
  - f. Each operator shall be assigned an access level to restrict access to data and functions the operator is cable of performing.
  - g. Software shall have at least five access levels.
  - h. Each menu item shall be assigned an access level so that a one-for-one correspondence between operator assigned access level(s) and menu item access level(s) is required to gain access to menu item.
  - i. Display menu items to operator with those capable of access highlighted. Menu and operator access level assignments shall be online programmable and under password control.
7. Data Segregation:
  - a. Include data segregation for control of specific data routed to a workstation, to an operator or to a specific output device, such as a printer.
  - b. Include at least 32 segregation groups.
  - c. Segregation groups shall be selectable such as "fire points," "fire points on second floor," "space temperature points," "HVAC points," and so on.

- d. Points shall be assignable to multiple segregation groups. Display and output of data to printer or monitor shall occur where there is a match of operator or peripheral segregation group assignment and point segregations.
  - e. Alarms shall be displayed and printed at each peripheral to which segregation allows, but only those operators assigned to peripheral and having proper authorization level will be allowed to acknowledge alarms.
  - f. Operators and peripherals shall be assignable to multiple segregation groups and all assignments are to be online programmable and under password control.
8. Operators shall be able to perform commands including, but not limited to, the following:
- a. Start or stop selected equipment.
  - b. Adjust set points.
  - c. Add, modify, and delete time programming.
  - d. Enable and disable process execution.
  - e. Lock and unlock alarm reporting for each point.
  - f. Enable and disable totalization for each point.
  - g. Enable and disable trending for each point.
  - h. Override control loop set points.
  - i. Enter temporary override schedules.
  - j. Define holiday schedules.
  - k. Change time and date.
  - l. Enter and modify analog alarm limits.
  - m. Enter and modify analog warning limits.
  - n. View limits.
  - o. Enable and disable demand limiting.
  - p. Enable and disable duty cycle.
  - q. Display logic programming for each control sequence.
9. Reporting:
- a. Generated automatically and manually.
  - b. Sent to displays, printers and disk files.
  - c. Types of Reporting:
    - 1) General listing of points.
    - 2) List points currently in alarm.
    - 3) List of off-line points.
    - 4) List points currently in override status.
    - 5) List of disabled points.
    - 6) List points currently locked out.
    - 7) List of items defined in a "Follow-Up" file.
    - 8) List weekly schedules.
    - 9) List holiday programming.
    - 10) List of limits and deadbands.

10. Summaries: For specific points, for a logical point group, for an operator selected group(s), or for entire system without restriction due to hardware configuration.

C. Graphic Interface Software:

1. Include a full interactive graphical selection means of accessing and displaying system data to operator. Include at least five levels with the penetration path operator assignable (for example, site, building, floor, air-handling unit, and supply temperature loop). Native language descriptors assigned to menu items are to be operator defined and modifiable under password control.
2. Include a hierarchical-linked dynamic graphic operator interface for accessing and displaying system data and commanding and modifying equipment operation. Interface shall use a pointing device with pull-down or penetrating menus, color and animation to facilitate operator understanding of system.
3. Include at least 10 levels of graphic penetration with the hierarchy operator assignable.
4. Descriptors for graphics, points, alarms and such shall be modified through operator's workstation under password control.
5. Graphic displays shall be online user definable and modifiable using the hardware and software provided.
6. Data to be displayed within a graphic shall be assignable regardless of physical hardware address, communication or point type.
7. Graphics are to be online programmable and under password control.
8. Points may be assignable to multiple graphics where necessary to facilitate operator understanding of system operation.
9. Graphics shall also contain software points.
10. Penetration within a graphic hierarchy shall display each graphic name as graphics are selected to facilitate operator understanding.
11. Back-trace feature shall permit operator to move upward in the hierarchy using a pointing device. Back trace shall show all previous penetration levels. Include operator with option of showing each graphic full screen size with back trace as horizontal header or by showing a "stack" of graphics, each with a back trace.
12. Display operator accessed data on the monitor.
13. Operator shall select further penetration using pointing device to click on a site, building, floor, area, equipment, and so on. Defined and linked graphic below that selection shall then be displayed.
14. Include operator with means to directly access graphics without going through penetration path.
15. Dynamic data shall be assignable to graphics.
16. Display points (physical and software) with dynamic data provided by DDC system with appropriate text descriptors, status or value, and engineering unit.
17. Use color, rotation, or other highly visible means, to denote status and alarm states. Color shall be variable for each class of points, as chosen by operator.
18. Points shall be dynamic with operator adjustable update rates on a per point basis from one second to over a minute.
19. For operators with appropriate privilege, points shall be commanded directly from display using pointing device.

- a. For an analog command point such as set point, current conditions and limits shall be displayed and operator can position new set point using pointing device.
  - b. For a digital command point such as valve position, valve shall show its current state such as open or closed and operator could select alternative position using pointing device.
  - c. Keyboard equivalent shall be available for those operators with that preference.
- 20. Operator shall be able to split or resize viewing screen into quadrants to show one graphic on one quadrant of screen and other graphics or spreadsheet, bar chart, word processing, curve plot and other information on other quadrants on screen. This feature shall allow real-time monitoring of one part of system while displaying other parts of system or data to better facilitate overall system operation.
- 21. Help Features:
  - a. On-line context-sensitive help utility to facilitate operator training and understanding.
  - b. Bridge to further explanation of selected keywords. Document shall contain text and graphics to clarify system operation.
    - 1) If help feature does not have ability to bridge on keywords for more information, a complete set of user manuals shall be provided in an indexed word-processing program, which shall run concurrently with operating system software.
  - c. Available for Every Menu Item:
    - 1) Index items for each system menu item.
- 22. Graphic generation software shall allow operator to add, modify, or delete system graphic displays.
  - a. Include libraries of symbols depicting HVAC symbols such as fans, coils, filters, dampers, valves pumps, and electrical symbols.
  - b. Graphic development package shall use a pointing device in conjunction with a drawing program to allow operator to perform the following:
    - 1) Define background screens.
    - 2) Define connecting lines and curves.
    - 3) Locate, orient and size descriptive text.
    - 4) Define and display colors for all elements.
    - 5) Establish correlation between symbols or text and associated system points or other displays.

D. Project-Specific Graphics: Graphics documentation including, but not limited to, the following:

- 1. Site plan showing each building, and additional site elements, which are being controlled or monitored by DDC system.

2. Plan for each building floor, including interstitial floors, and each roof level of each building, showing the following:
  - a. Room layouts with room identification and name.
  - b. Locations and identification of all monitored and controlled HVAC equipment and other equipment being monitored and controlled by DDC system.
  - c. Location and identification of each hardware point being controlled or monitored by DDC system.
3. Graphic display for each piece of equipment connected to DDC system through a data communications link. Include dynamic indication of all points associated with equipment.
4. DDC system network riser diagram that shows schematic layout for entire system including all networks and all controllers.

E. Customizing Software:

1. Software to modify and tailor DDC system to specific and unique requirements of equipment installed, to programs implemented and to staffing and operational practices planned.
2. Online modification of DDC system configuration, program parameters, and database using menu selection and keyboard entry of data into preformatted display templates.
3. As a minimum, include the following modification capability:
  - a. Operator assignment shall include designation of operator passwords, access levels, point segregation and auto sign-off.
  - b. Peripheral assignment capability shall include assignment of segregation groups and operators to consoles and printers, designation of backup workstations and printers, designation of workstation header points and enabling and disabling of print-out of operator changes.
  - c. System configuration and diagnostic capability shall include communications and peripheral port assignments, DDC controller assignments to network, DDC controller enable and disable, assignment of command trace to points and application programs and initiation of diagnostics.
  - d. System text addition and change capability shall include English or native language descriptors for points, segregation groups and access levels and action messages for alarms, run time and trouble condition.
  - e. Time and schedule change capability shall include time and date set, time and occupancy schedules, exception and holiday schedules and daylight savings time schedules.
  - f. Point related change capability shall include the following:
    - 1) System and point enable and disable.
    - 2) Run-time enable and disable.
    - 3) Assignment of points to segregation groups, calibration tables, lockout, and run time and to a fixed I/O value.
    - 4) Assignment of alarm and warning limits.
  - g. Application program change capability shall include the following:

- 1) Enable and disable of software programs.
  - 2) Programming changes.
  - 3) Assignment of comfort limits, global points, time and event initiators, time and event schedules and enable and disable time and event programs.
4. Software shall allow operator to add points, or groups of points, to DDC system and to link them to energy optimization and management programs. Additions and modifications shall be online programmable using operator workstation, downloaded to other network devices and entered into their databases. After verification of point additions and associated program operation, database shall be uploaded and recorded on hard drive and disk for archived record.
  5. Include high-level language programming software capability for implementation of custom DDC programs. Software shall include a compiler, linker, and up- and down-load capability.
  6. Include a library of DDC algorithms, intrinsic control operators, arithmetic, logic and relational operators for implementation of control sequences. Also include, as a minimum, the following:
    - a. Proportional control (P).
    - b. Proportional plus integral (PI).
    - c. Proportional plus integral plus derivative (PID).
    - d. Adaptive and intelligent self-learning control.
      - 1) Algorithm shall monitor loop response to output corrections and adjust loop response characteristics according to time constant changes imposed.
      - 2) Algorithm shall operate in a continuous self-learning manner and shall retain in memory a stored record of system dynamics so that on system shut down and restart, learning process starts from where it left off.
  7. Fully implemented intrinsic control operators including sequence, reversing, ratio, time delay, time of day, highest select AO, lowest select AO, analog controlled digital output, analog control AO, and digitally controlled AO.
  8. Logic operators such as "And," "Or," "Not," and others that are part of a standard set available with a high-level language.
  9. Arithmetic operators such as "Add," "Subtract," "Multiply," "Divide," and others that are part of a standard set available with a high-level language.
  10. Relational operators such as "Equal To," "Not Equal To," "Less Than," "Greater Than," and others that are part of a standard set available with a high-level language.

F. Alarm Handling Software:

1. Include alarm handling software to report all alarm conditions monitored and transmitted through DDC controllers.
2. Include first in, first out handling of alarms according to alarm priority ranking, with most critical alarms first, and with buffer storage in case of simultaneous and multiple alarms.
3. Alarm handling shall be active at all times to ensure that alarms are processed even if an operator is not currently signed on to DDC system.



4. Alarms display shall include the following:
  - a. Indication of alarm condition such as "Abnormal Off," "Hi Alarm," and "Low Alarm."
  - b. "Analog Value" or "Status" group and point identification with native language point descriptor such as "Space Temperature, Building 110, 2nd Floor, Room 212."
  - c. Discrete per point alarm action message, such as "Call Maintenance Dept. Ext-5561."
  - d. Include extended message capability to allow assignment and printing of extended action messages. Capability shall be operator programmable and assignable on a per point basis.
5. Alarms shall be directed to appropriate operator workstations, printers, and individual operators by privilege level and segregation assignments.

G. Reports and Logs:

1. Include reporting software package that allows operator to select, modify, or create reports using DDC system I/O point data available.
2. Each report shall be definable as to data content, format, interval and date.
3. Report data shall be sampled and stored on DDC controller, within storage limits of DDC controller, and then uploaded to archive on workstation server for historical reporting.
4. Operator shall be able to obtain real-time logs of all I/O points by type or status, such as alarm, point lockout, or normal.
5. Reports and logs shall be stored on server hard drives in a format that is readily accessible by other standard software applications, including spreadsheets and word processing.
6. Reports and logs shall be readily printed and set to be printed either on operator command or at a specific time each day.

H. Standard Reports: Standard DDC system reports shall be provided and operator shall be able to customize reports later.

1. All I/O: With current status and values.
2. Alarm: All current alarms, except those in alarm lockout.
3. Disabled I/O: All I/O points that are disabled.
4. Alarm Lockout I/O: All I/O points in alarm lockout, whether manual or automatic.
5. Alarm Lockout I/O in Alarm: All I/O in alarm lockout that are currently in alarm.
6. Logs:
  - a. Alarm history.
  - b. System messages.
  - c. System events.
  - d. Trends.

- I. Custom Reports: Operator shall be able to easily define any system data into a daily, weekly, monthly, or annual report. Reports shall be time and date stamped and shall contain a report title.
- J. Standard Trends:
  - 1. Trend all I/O point present values, set points, and other parameters indicated for trending.
  - 2. Trends shall be associated into groups, and a trend report shall be set up for each group.
  - 3. Trends shall be stored within DDC controller and uploaded to hard drives automatically on reaching 75 of DDC controller buffer limit, or by operator request, or by archiving time schedule.
  - 4. Preset trend intervals for each I/O point after review with Owner.
  - 5. Trend intervals shall be operator selectable from 10 seconds up to 60 minutes. Minimum number of consecutive trend values stored at one time shall be 100 per variable.
  - 6. When drive storage memory is full, most recent data shall overwrite oldest data.
  - 7. Archived and real-time trend data shall be available for viewing numerically and graphically by operators.
- K. Custom Trends: Operator shall be able to define a custom trend log for any I/O point in DDC system.
  - 1. Each trend shall include interval, start time, and stop time.
  - 2. Data shall be sampled and stored on DDC controller, within storage limits of DDC controller, and then uploaded to archive on server hard drives.
  - 3. Data shall be retrievable for use in spreadsheets and standard database programs.
- L. Programming Software:
  - 1. Include programming software to execute sequences of operation indicated.
  - 2. Include programming routines in simple and easy to follow logic with detailed text comments describing what the logic does and how it corresponds to sequence of operation.
  - 3. Programming software shall be any of the following:
    - a. Graphic Based: Programming shall use a library of function blocks made from preprogrammed code designed for DDC control systems.
      - 1) Function blocks shall be assembled with interconnection lines that represent to control sequence in a flowchart.
      - 2) Programming tools shall be viewable in real time to show present values and logical results of each function block.
    - b. Menu Based: Programming shall be done by entering parameters, definitions, conditions, requirements and constraints.

- c. Line by Line and Text Based: Programming shall declare variable types such as local, global, real, integer, and so on, at the beginning of the program. Use descriptive comments frequently to describe programming code.
- 4. Include means for detecting programming errors and testing software control strategies with a simulation tool before implementing in actual control. Simulation tool may be inherent with programming software or as a separate product.

## 2.9 NETWORK CONTROLLERS

### A. General Network Controller Requirements:

- 1. Include adequate number of controllers to achieve performance indicated.
- 2. System shall consist of one or more independent, standalone, microprocessor-based network controllers to manage global strategies indicated.
- 3. Controller shall have enough memory to support its operating system, database, and programming requirements.
- 4. Data shall be shared between networked controllers and other network devices.
- 5. Operating system of controller shall manage input and output communication signals to allow distributed controllers to share real and virtual object information and allow for central monitoring and alarms.
- 6. Controllers shall have a real-time clock.
- 7. Controller shall continually check status of its processor and memory circuits. If an abnormal operation is detected, controller shall assume a predetermined failure mode and generate an alarm notification.
- 8. Controllers shall be fully programmable.

### B. Communication:

- 1. Network controllers shall communicate with other devices on DDC system Level one network.
- 2. Network controller also shall perform routing if connected to a network of programmable application and application-specific controllers.

### C. Operator Interface:

- 1. Controller shall be equipped with a service communications port for connection to a portable operator's workstation.
- 2. Local Keypad and Display:
  - a. Equip controller with local keypad and digital display for interrogating and editing data.
  - b. Use of keypad and display shall require security password.

### D. Serviceability:

1. Controller shall be equipped with diagnostic LEDs or other form of local visual indication of power, communication, and processor.
2. Wiring and cable connections shall be made to field-removable, modular terminal strips or to a termination card connected by a ribbon cable.
3. Controller shall maintain BIOS and programming information in event of a power loss for at least 72 hours.

## 2.10 PROGRAMMABLE APPLICATION CONTROLLERS

### A. General Programmable Application Controller Requirements:

1. Include adequate number of controllers to achieve performance indicated.
2. Controller shall have enough memory to support its operating system, database, and programming requirements.
3. Data shall be shared between networked controllers and other network devices.
4. Operating system of controller shall manage input and output communication signals to allow distributed controllers to share real and virtual object information and allow for central monitoring and alarms.
5. Controllers shall have a real-time clock.
6. Controller shall continually check status of its processor and memory circuits. If an abnormal operation is detected, controller shall assume a predetermined failure mode and generate an alarm notification.
7. Controllers shall be fully programmable.

### B. Communication:

1. Programmable application controllers shall communicate with other devices on network.

### C. Operator Interface:

1. Controller shall be equipped with a service communications port for connection to a portable operator's workstation.
2. Local Keypad and Display:
  - a. Equip controller with local keypad and digital display for interrogating and editing data.
  - b. Use of keypad and display shall require security password.

### D. Serviceability:

1. Controller shall be equipped with diagnostic LEDs or other form of local visual indication of power, communication, and processor.
2. Wiring and cable connections shall be made to field-removable, modular terminal strips or to a termination card connected by a ribbon cable.
3. Controller shall maintain BIOS and programming information in event of a power loss for at least 72 hours.

## 2.11 APPLICATION-SPECIFIC CONTROLLERS

- A. Description: Microprocessor-based controllers, which through hardware or firmware design are dedicated to control a specific piece of equipment. Controllers are not fully user-programmable but are configurable and customizable for operation of equipment they are designed to control.
  - 1. Capable of standalone operation and shall continue to include control functions without being connected to network.
  - 2. Data shall be shared between networked controllers and other network devices.
- B. Communication: Application-specific controllers shall communicate with other application-specific controller and devices on network, and to programmable application and network controllers.
- C. Operator Interface: Controller shall be equipped with a service communications port for connection to a portable operator's workstation.
- D. Serviceability:
  - 1. Controller shall be equipped with diagnostic LEDs or other form of local visual indication of power, communication, and processor.
  - 2. Wiring and cable connections shall be made to field-removable, modular terminal strips or to a termination card connected by a ribbon cable.
  - 3. Controller shall use nonvolatile memory and maintain all BIOS and programming information in event of power loss.

## 2.12 CONTROLLER SOFTWARE

- A. General Controller Software Requirements:
  - 1. Software applications shall reside and operate in controllers. Editing of applications shall occur at operator workstations.
  - 2. I/O points shall be identified by up to 30-character point name and up to 16-character point descriptor. Same names shall be used at operator workstations.
  - 3. Control functions shall be executed within controllers using DDC algorithms.
  - 4. Controllers shall be configured to use stored default values to ensure fail-safe operation. Default values shall be used when there is a failure of a connected input instrument or loss of communication of a global point value.
- B. Security:
  - 1. Operator access shall be secured using individual security passwords and user names.
  - 2. Passwords shall restrict operator to points, applications, and system functions as assigned by system manager.
  - 3. Operator log-on and log-off attempts shall be recorded.

4. System shall protect itself from unauthorized use by automatically logging off after last keystroke. The delay time shall be operator-definable.
- C. Scheduling: Include capability to schedule each point or group of points in system. Each schedule shall consist of the following:
1. Weekly Schedule:
    - a. Include separate schedules for each day of week.
    - b. Each schedule should include the capability for start, stop, optimal start, optimal stop, and night economizer.
    - c. Each schedule may consist of up to 10 events.
    - d. When a group of objects are scheduled together, include capability to adjust start and stop times for each member.
  2. Exception Schedules:
    - a. Include ability for operator to designate any day of the year as an exception schedule.
    - b. Exception schedules may be defined up to a year in advance. Once an exception schedule is executed, it will be discarded and replaced by regular schedule for that day of week.
  3. Holiday Schedules:
    - a. Include capability for operator to define up to 99 special or holiday schedules.
    - b. Schedules may be placed on scheduling calendar and will be repeated each year.
    - c. Operator shall be able to define length of each holiday period.
- D. System Coordination:
1. Include standard application for proper coordination of equipment.
  2. Application shall include operator with a method of grouping together equipment based on function and location.
  3. Group may then be used for scheduling and other applications.
- E. Binary Alarms:
1. Each binary point shall be set to alarm based on operator-specified state.
  2. Include capability to automatically and manually disable alarming.
- F. Analog Alarms:
1. Each analog object shall have both high and low alarm limits.
  2. Alarming shall be able to be automatically and manually disabled.
- G. Alarm Reporting:
1. Operator shall be able to determine action to be taken in event of an alarm.

2. Alarms shall be routed to appropriate operator workstations based on time and other conditions.
3. Alarm shall be able to start programs, print, be logged in event log, generate custom messages, and display graphics.

H. Remote Communication:

1. System shall have ability to dial out in the event of an alarm.

I. Staggered Start: Application shall prevent all controlled equipment from simultaneously restarting after a power outage. Order which equipment (or groups of equipment) is started, along with the time delay between starts, shall be operator-selectable.

## 2.13 CONTROL WIRE AND CABLE

A. Wire: Single conductor control wiring above 24 V.

1. Wire size shall be at least No. 18 AWG.
2. Conductor shall be 7/24 soft annealed copper strand with 2- to 2.5-inch lay.
3. Conductor insulation shall be 600 V, Type THWN or Type THHN, and 90 deg C according to UL 83.
4. Conductor colors shall be black (hot), white (neutral), and green (ground).
5. Furnish wire on spools.

B. Single Twisted Shielded Instrumentation Cable above 24 V:

1. Wire size shall be a minimum No. 18 AWG.
2. Conductors shall be a twisted, 7/24 soft annealed copper strand with a 2- to 2.5-inch lay.
3. Conductor insulation shall have a Type THHN/THWN or Type TFN rating.
4. Shielding shall be 100 percent type, 0.35/0.5-mil aluminum/Mylar tape, helically applied with 25 percent overlap, and aluminum side in with tinned copper drain wire.
5. Outer jacket insulation shall have a 600-V, 90-deg C rating and shall be Type TC cable.
6. For twisted pair, conductor colors shall be black and white. For twisted triad, conductor colors shall be black, red and white.
7. Furnish wire on spools.

C. Single Twisted Shielded Instrumentation Cable 24 V and Less:

1. Wire size shall be a minimum No. 18 AWG.
2. Conductors shall be a twisted, 7/24 soft annealed copper stranding with a 2- to 2.5-inch lay.
3. Conductor insulation shall have a nominal 15-mil thickness, constructed from flame-retardant PVC.
4. Shielding shall be 100 percent type, 1.35-mil aluminum/polymer tape, helically applied with 25 percent overlap, and aluminum side in with tinned copper drain wire.

5. Outer jacket insulation shall have a 300-V, 105-deg C rating and shall be Type PLTC cable.
  6. For twisted pair, conductor colors shall be black and white. For twisted triad, conductor colors shall be black, red and white.
  7. Furnish wire on spools.
- D. LAN and Communication Cable: Comply with DDC system manufacturer requirements for network being installed.
1. Cable shall be plenum rated.
  2. Cable shall comply with NFPA 70.
  3. Cable shall have a unique color that is different from other cables used on Project.
  4. Copper Cable for Ethernet Network:
    - a. 100BASE-TX.
    - b. TIA/EIA 586, Category 6.
    - c. Minimum No. 24 AWG solid.
    - d. Shielded Twisted Pair (STP).
    - e. Thermoplastic insulated conductors, enclosed in a thermoplastic outer jacket, Class CMP as plenum rated.

#### 2.14 CONTROL POWER WIRING AND RACEWAYS

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" electrical power conductors and cables.
- B. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for electrical power raceways and boxes.

#### 2.15 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Product(s) and material(s) will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  1. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates.



- B. Examine roughing-in for products to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
  - 1. Examine roughing-in for instruments installed in piping to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
  - 2. Examine roughing-in for instruments installed in duct systems to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
- C. Examine walls, floors, roofs, and ceilings for suitable conditions where product will be installed.
- D. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install products to satisfy more stringent of all requirements indicated.
- B. Install products level, plumb, parallel, and perpendicular with building construction.
- C. Support products, tubing, piping wiring and raceways. Brace products to prevent lateral movement and sway or a break in attachment when subjected to force.
- D. If codes and referenced standards are more stringent than requirements indicated, comply with requirements in codes and referenced standards.
- E. Fabricate openings and install sleeves in ceilings, floors, roof, and walls required by installation of products. Before proceeding with drilling, punching, and cutting, check for concealed work to avoid damage. Patch, flash, grout, seal, and refinish openings to match adjacent condition.
- F. Firestop penetrations made in fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."
- G. Seal penetrations made in acoustically rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
- H. Welding Requirements:
  - 1. Restrict welding and burning to supports and bracing.
  - 2. No equipment shall be cut or welded without approval. Welding or cutting will not be approved if there is risk of damage to adjacent Work.
  - 3. Welding, where approved, shall be by inert-gas electric arc process and shall be performed by qualified welders according to applicable welding codes.
  - 4. If requested on-site, show satisfactory evidence of welder certificates indicating ability to perform welding work intended.
- I. Fastening Hardware:

1. Stillson wrenches, pliers, and other tools that damage surfaces of rods, nuts, and other parts are prohibited for work of assembling and tightening fasteners.
  2. Tighten bolts and nuts firmly and uniformly. Do not overstress threads by excessive force or by oversized wrenches.
  3. Lubricate threads of bolts, nuts and screws with graphite and oil before assembly.
- J. If product locations are not indicated, install products in locations that are accessible and that will permit service and maintenance from floor, equipment platforms, or catwalks without removal of permanently installed furniture and equipment.
- K. Corrosive Environments:
1. Avoid or limit use of materials in corrosive airstreams and environments, including, but not limited to, the following:
    - a. Laboratory exhaust-air streams.
    - b. Process exhaust-air streams.
  2. When conduit is in contact with a corrosive airstream and environment, use Type 316 stainless-steel conduit and fittings or conduit and fittings that are coated with a corrosive-resistant coating that is suitable for environment. Comply with requirements for installation of raceways and boxes specified in Division 26 Section "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
  3. Where instruments are located in a corrosive airstream and are not corrosive resistant from manufacturer, field install products in NEMA 250, Type 4X enclosure constructed of Type 316L stainless steel.

### 3.3 CONTROLLER INSTALLATION

- A. Install controllers in enclosures to comply with indicated requirements.
- B. Connect controllers to field power supply.
- C. Install controller with latest version of applicable software and configure to execute requirements indicated.
- D. Test and adjust controllers to verify operation of connected I/O to achieve performance indicated requirements while executing sequences of operation.
- E. Installation of Network Controllers:
1. Quantity and location of network controllers shall be determined by DDC system manufacturer to satisfy requirements indicated.
  2. Install controllers in a protected location that is easily accessible by operators.
  3. Top of controller shall be within 72 inches of finished floor.
- F. Installation of Programmable Application Controllers:

1. Quantity and location of programmable application controllers shall be determined by DDC system manufacturer to satisfy requirements indicated.
2. Install controllers in a protected location that is easily accessible by operators.
3. Top of controller shall be within 72 inches of finished floor.

G. Application-Specific Controllers:

1. Quantity and location of application-specific controllers shall be determined by DDC system manufacturer to satisfy requirements indicated.
2. For controllers not mounted directly on equipment being controlled, install controllers in a protected location that is easily accessible by operators.

### 3.4 ELECTRIC POWER CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect electrical power to DDC system products requiring electrical power connections.
- B. Design of electrical power to products not indicated with electric power is delegated to DDC system provider and installing trade. Work shall comply with NFPA 70 and other requirements indicated.
- C. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers" for electrical power circuit breakers.
- D. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for electrical power conductors and cables.
- E. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for electrical power raceways and boxes.

### 3.5 CONTROL WIRE, CABLE AND RACEWAYS INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Comply with TIA 568-C.1.
- C. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways and cable trays except in accessible ceiling spaces and in gypsum board partitions where unenclosed wiring method may be used. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.
  1. Install plenum cable in environmental air spaces, including plenum ceilings.
  2. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Division 26 Section "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
- D. Wiring Method: Conceal conductors and cables in accessible ceilings, walls, and floors where possible.

- E. Field Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
- F. Conduit Installation:
1. Install conduit expansion joints where conduit runs exceed 200 feet, and conduit crosses building expansion joints.
  2. Coordinate conduit routing with other trades to avoid conflicts with ducts, pipes and equipment and service clearance.
  3. Maintain at least 3-inch separation where conduits run axially above or below ducts and pipes.
  4. Limit above-grade conduit runs to 100 feet without pull or junction box.
  5. Do not install raceways or electrical items on any "explosion-relief" walls, or rotating equipment.
  6. Do not fasten conduits onto the bottom side of a metal deck roof.
  7. Flexible conduit is permitted only where flexibility and vibration control is required.
  8. Limit flexible conduit to 3 feet long.
  9. Conduit shall be continuous from outlet to outlet, from outlet to enclosures, pull and junction boxes, and shall be secured to boxes in such manner that each system shall be electrically continuous throughout.
  10. Direct bury conduits underground or install in concrete-encased duct bank where indicated.
    - a. Use rigid, nonmetallic, Schedule 80 PVC.
    - b. Provide a burial depth according to NFPA 70, but not less than 24 inches.
  11. Secure threaded conduit entering an instrument enclosure, cabinet, box, and trough, with a locknut on outside and inside, such that conduit system is electrically continuous throughout. Provide a metal bushing on inside with insulated throats. Locknuts shall be the type designed to bite into the metal or, on inside of enclosure, shall have a grounding wedge lug under locknut.
  12. Conduit box-type connectors for conduit entering enclosures shall have an insulated throat.
  13. Connect conduit entering enclosures in wet locations with box-type connectors or with watertight sealing locknuts or other fittings.
  14. Offset conduits where entering surface-mounted equipment.
  15. Seal conduit runs used by sealing fittings to prevent the circulation of air for the following:
    - a. Conduit extending from interior to exterior of building.
    - b. Conduit extending into pressurized duct and equipment.
    - c. Conduit extending into pressurized zones that are automatically controlled to maintain different pressure set points.
- G. Wire and Cable Installation:

1. Cables serving a common system may be grouped in a common raceway. Install control wiring and cable in separate raceway from power wiring. Do not group conductors from different systems or different voltages.
2. Install cables with protective sheathing that is waterproof and capable of withstanding continuous temperatures of 90 deg C with no measurable effect on physical and electrical properties of cable.
  - a. Provide shielding to prevent interference and distortion from adjacent cables and equipment.
3. Install lacing bars to restrain cables, to prevent straining connections, and to prevent bending cables to smaller radii than minimums recommended by manufacturer.
4. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI ITSIMM, "Cabling Termination Practices" Chapter. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
5. UTP Cable Installation:
  - a. Comply with TIA 568-C.2.
  - b. Do not untwist UTP cables more than 1/2 inch from the point of termination, to maintain cable geometry.
6. Identify each wire on each end and at each terminal with a number-coded identification tag. Each wire shall have a unique tag.
7. Provide strain relief.
8. Terminate wiring in a junction box.
  - a. Clamp cable over jacket in junction box.
  - b. Individual conductors in the stripped section of the cable shall be slack between the clamping point and terminal block.
9. Terminate field wiring and cable not directly connected to instruments and control devices having integral wiring terminals using terminal blocks.
10. Install signal transmission components according to IEEE C2, REA Form 511a, NFPA 70, and as indicated.
11. Keep runs short. Allow extra length for connecting to terminal boards. Do not bend flexible coaxial cables in a radius less than 10 times the cable OD. Use sleeves or grommets to protect cables from vibration at points where they pass around sharp corners and through penetrations.
12. Ground wire shall be copper and grounding methods shall comply with IEEE C2. Demonstrate ground resistance.
13. Wire and cable shall be continuous from terminal to terminal without splices.
14. Use insulated spade lugs for wire and cable connection to screw terminals.
15. Use shielded cable to transmitters.
16. Use shielded cable to temperature sensors.
17. Perform continuity and meager testing on wire and cable after installation.
18. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded wire and cable. Remove and discard wire and cable if damaged during installation, and replace it with new cable.

19. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Heat lamps shall not be used for heating.
20. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI ITSIM, Ch. 4, "Pulling Cable." Monitor cable pull tensions.
21. Protection from Electro-Magnetic Interference (EMI): Provide installation free of (EMI). As a minimum, comply with the following requirements:
  - a. Comply with BICSI TDMM and TIA 569-C for separating unshielded cable from potential EMI sources, including electrical power lines and equipment.
  - b. Separation between open cables or cables in nonmetallic raceways and unshielded power conductors and electrical equipment shall be as follows:
    - 1) Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 5 inches.
    - 2) Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches.
    - 3) Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 24 inches.
  - c. Separation between cables in grounded metallic raceways and unshielded power lines or electrical equipment shall be as follows:
    - 1) Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 2-1/2 inches.
    - 2) Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches.
    - 3) Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches.
  - d. Separation between cables in grounded metallic raceways and power lines and electrical equipment located in grounded metallic conduits or enclosures shall be as follows:
    - 1) Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: No requirement.
    - 2) Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 3 inches.
    - 3) Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches.
  - e. Separation between Cables and Electrical Motors and Transformers, 5 kVA or 5 HP and Larger: A minimum of 48 inches.
  - f. Separation between Cables and Fluorescent Fixtures: A minimum of 5 inches.

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

#### A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

#### B. Testing:

1. Perform preinstallation, in-progress, and final tests, supplemented by additional tests, as necessary.

2. Preinstallation Cable Verification: Verify integrity and serviceability for new cable lengths before installation. This assurance may be provided by using vendor verification documents, testing, or other methods. As a minimum, furnish evidence of verification for cable attenuation and bandwidth parameters.
3. In-Progress Testing: Perform standard tests for correct pair identification and termination during installation to ensure proper installation and cable placement. Perform tests in addition to those specified if there is any reason to question condition of material furnished and installed. Testing accomplished is to be documented by agency conducting tests. Submit test results for Project record.
4. Final Testing: Perform final test of installed system to demonstrate acceptability as installed. Testing shall be performed according to a test plan supplied by DDC system manufacturer. Defective Work or material shall be corrected and retested. As a minimum, final testing for cable system, including spare cable, shall verify conformance of attenuation, length, and bandwidth parameters with performance indicated.
5. Test Equipment: Use a fiber-optic time domain reflectometer for testing of length and optical connectivity.
6. Test Results: Record test results and submit copy of test results for Project record.

### 3.7 DDC SYSTEM I/O CHECKOUT PROCEDURES

- A. Check installed products before continuity tests, leak tests and calibration.
- B. Check instruments for proper location and accessibility.
- C. Check instruments for proper installation on direction of flow, elevation, orientation, insertion depth, or other applicable considerations that will impact performance.
- D. Instrument Checkout:
  1. Verify that instrument is correctly installed for location, orientation, direction and operating clearances.
  2. Verify that attachment is properly secured and sealed.
  3. Verify that conduit connections are properly secured and sealed.
  4. Verify that wiring is properly labeled with unique identification, correct type and size and is securely attached to proper terminals.
  5. Inspect instrument tag against approved submittal.
  6. For instruments with tubing connections, verify that tubing attachment is secure and isolation valves have been provided.
  7. For flow instruments, verify that recommended upstream and downstream distances have been maintained.
  8. For temperature instruments:
    - a. Verify sensing element type and proper material.
    - b. Verify length and insertion.

### 3.8 DDC SYSTEM I/O ADJUSTMENT, CALIBRATION AND TESTING:

- A. Calibrate each instrument installed that is not factory calibrated and provided with calibration documentation.
- B. Provide a written description of proposed field procedures and equipment for calibrating each type of instrument. Submit procedures before calibration and adjustment.
- C. For each analog instrument, make a three-point test of calibration for both linearity and accuracy.
- D. Equipment and procedures used for calibration shall comply with instrument manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Provide diagnostic and test equipment for calibration and adjustment.
- F. Field instruments and equipment used to test and calibrate installed instruments shall have accuracy at least twice the instrument accuracy being calibrated. An installed instrument with an accuracy of 1 percent shall be checked by an instrument with an accuracy of 0.5 percent.
- G. Calibrate each instrument according to instrument instruction manual supplied by manufacturer.
- H. If after calibration indicated performance cannot be achieved, replace out-of-tolerance instruments.
- I. Comply with field testing requirements and procedures indicated by ASHRAE's Guideline 11, "Field Testing of HVAC Control Components," in the absence of specific requirements, and to supplement requirements indicated.
- J. Analog Signals:
  - 1. Check analog voltage signals using a precision voltage meter at zero, 50, and 100 percent.
  - 2. Check analog current signals using a precision current meter at zero, 50, and 100 percent.
  - 3. Check resistance signals for temperature sensors at zero, 50, and 100 percent of operating span using a precision-resistant source.
- K. Digital Signals:
  - 1. Check digital signals using a jumper wire.
  - 2. Check digital signals using an ohmmeter to test for contact making or breaking.
- L. Control Dampers:
  - 1. Stroke and adjust control dampers following manufacturer's recommended procedure, from 100 percent open to 100 percent closed and back to 100 percent open.



2. Stroke control dampers with pilot positioners. Adjust damper and positioner following manufacturer's recommended procedure, so damper is 100 percent closed, 50 percent closed and 100 percent open at proper air pressure.
3. Check and document open and close cycle times for applications with a cycle time less than 30 seconds.
4. For control dampers equipped with positive position indication, check feedback signal at multiple positions to confirm proper position indication.

M. Control Valves:

1. Stroke and adjust control valves following manufacturer's recommended procedure, from 100 percent open to 100 percent closed and back to 100 percent open.
2. Stroke control valves with pilot positioners. Adjust valve and positioner following manufacturer's recommended procedure, so valve is 100 percent closed, 50 percent closed and 100 percent open at proper air pressures.
3. Check and document open and close cycle times for applications with a cycle time less than 30 seconds.
4. For control valves equipped with positive position indication, check feedback signal at multiple positions to confirm proper position indication.

N. Meters: Check sensors at zero, 50, and 100 percent of Project design values.

O. Sensors: Check sensors at zero, 50, and 100 percent of Project design values.

P. Switches: Calibrate switches to make or break contact at set points indicated.

Q. Transmitters:

1. Check and calibrate transmitters at zero, 50, and 100 percent of Project design values.
2. Calibrate resistance temperature transmitters at zero, 50, and 100 percent of span using a precision-resistant source.

### 3.9 DDC SYSTEM CONTROLLER CHECKOUT

A. Verify power supply.

1. Verify voltage, phase and hertz.
2. Verify that protection from power surges is installed and functioning.
3. Verify that ground fault protection is installed.
4. If applicable, verify if connected to UPS unit.
5. If applicable, verify if connected to a backup power source.
6. If applicable, verify that power conditioning units, transient voltage suppression and high-frequency noise filter units are installed.

B. Verify that wire and cabling is properly secured to terminals and labeled with unique identification.

C. Verify that spare I/O capacity is provided.

### 3.10 DDC CONTROLLER I/O CONTROL LOOP TESTS

#### A. Testing:

1. Test every I/O point connected to DDC controller to verify that safety and operating control set points are as indicated and as required to operate controlled system safely and at optimum performance.
2. Test every I/O point throughout its full operating range.
3. Test every control loop to verify operation is stable and accurate.
4. Adjust control loop proportional, integral and derivative settings to achieve optimum performance while complying with performance requirements indicated. Document testing of each control loop's precision and stability via trend logs.
5. Test and adjust every control loop for proper operation according to sequence of operation.
6. Test software and hardware interlocks for proper operation. Correct deficiencies.
7. Operate each analog point at the following:
  - a. Upper quarter of range.
  - b. Lower quarter of range.
  - c. At midpoint of range.
8. Exercise each binary point.
9. For every I/O point in DDC system, read and record each value at operator workstation, at DDC controller and at field instrument simultaneously. Value displayed at operator workstation, at DDC controller and at field instrument shall match.
10. Prepare and submit a report documenting results for each I/O point in DDC system and include in each I/O point a description of corrective measures and adjustments made to achieve desired results.

### 3.11 DDC SYSTEM VALIDATION TESTS

- A. Perform validation tests before requesting final review of system. Before beginning testing, first submit Pretest Checklist and Test Plan.
- B. After approval of Test Plan, execute all tests and procedures indicated in plan.
- C. After testing is complete, submit completed test checklist.
- D. Pretest Checklist: Submit the following list with items checked off once verified:
  1. Detailed explanation for any items that are not completed or verified.
  2. Required mechanical installation work is successfully completed and HVAC equipment is working correctly.
  3. HVAC equipment motors operate below full-load amperage ratings.
  4. Required DDC system components, wiring, and accessories are installed.
  5. Installed DDC system architecture matches approved Drawings.
  6. Control electric power circuits operate at proper voltage and are free from faults.

7. Required surge protection is installed.
8. DDC system network communications function properly, including uploading and downloading programming changes.
9. Using BACnet protocol analyzer, verify that communications are error free.
10. Each controller's programming is backed up.
11. Equipment, products, tubing, wiring cable and conduits are properly labeled.
12. All I/O points are programmed into controllers.
13. Testing, adjusting and balancing work affecting controls is complete.
14. Dampers and actuators zero and span adjustments are set properly.
15. Each control damper and actuator goes to failed position on loss of power.
16. Valves and actuators zero and span adjustments are set properly.
17. Each control valve and actuator goes to failed position on loss of power.
18. Meter, sensor and transmitter readings are accurate and calibrated.
19. Control loops are tuned for smooth and stable operation.
20. View trend data where applicable.
21. Each controller works properly in standalone mode.
22. Safety controls and devices function properly.
23. Interfaces with fire-alarm system function properly.
24. Electrical interlocks function properly.
25. Operator workstations and other interfaces are delivered, all system and database software is installed, and graphic are created.
26. Record Drawings are completed.

E. Test Plan:

1. Prepare and submit a validation test plan including test procedures for performance validation tests.
2. Test plan shall address all specified functions of DDC system and sequences of operation.
3. Explain detailed actions and expected results to demonstrate compliance with requirements indicated.
4. Explain method for simulating necessary conditions of operation used to demonstrate performance.
5. Include a test checklist to be used to check and initial that each test has been successfully completed.

F. Validation Test:

1. Verify operating performance of each I/O point in DDC system.
  - a. Verify analog I/O points at operating value.
  - b. Make adjustments to out-of-tolerance I/O points.
    - 1) Identify I/O points for future reference.
    - 2) Simulate abnormal conditions to demonstrate proper function of safety devices.
    - 3) Replace instruments and controllers that cannot maintain performance indicated after adjustments.

2. Simulate conditions to demonstrate proper sequence of control.
3. Readjust settings to design values and observe ability of DDC system to establish desired conditions.
4. After 24 Hours following Initial Validation Test:
  - a. Re-check I/O points that required corrections during initial test.
  - b. Identify I/O points that still require additional correction and make corrections necessary to achieve desired results.
5. After 24 Hours of Second Validation Test:
  - a. Re-check I/O points that required corrections during second test.
  - b. Continue validation testing until I/O point is normal on two consecutive tests.
6. Completely check out, calibrate, and test all connected hardware and software to ensure that DDC system performs according to requirements indicated.
7. After validation testing is complete, prepare and submit a report indicating all I/O points that required correction and how many validation re-tests it took to pass. Identify adjustments made for each test and indicate instruments that were replaced.

G. DDC System Response Time Test:

1. Simulate HLC.
  - a. Heavy load shall be an occurrence of 50 percent of total connected binary COV, one-half of which represent an "alarm" condition, and 50 percent of total connected analog COV, one-half of which represent an "alarm" condition, that are initiated simultaneously on a one-time basis.
2. Initiate 10 successive occurrences of HLC and measure response time to typical alarms and status changes.
3. Measure with a timer having at least 0.1-second resolution and 0.01 percent accuracy.
4. Purpose of test is to demonstrate DDC system, as follows:
  - a. Reaction to COV and alarm conditions during HLC.
  - b. Ability to update DDC system database during HLC.
5. Passing test is contingent on the following:
  - a. Alarm reporting at printer beginning no more than two seconds after the initiation (time zero) of HLC.
  - b. All alarms, both binary and analog, are reported and printed; none are lost.
  - c. Compliance with response times specified.
6. Prepare and submit a report documenting HLC tested and results of test including time stamp and print out of all alarms.

H. DDC System Network Bandwidth Test:

1. Test network bandwidth usage on all DDC system networks to demonstrate bandwidth usage under DDC system normal operating conditions and under simulated HLC.
2. To pass, none of DDC system networks shall use more than 70 percent of available bandwidth under normal and HLC operation.

### 3.12 DDC SYSTEM WIRELESS NETWORK VERIFICATION

- A. DDC system Installer shall design wireless DDC system networks to comply with performance requirements indicated.
- B. Installer shall verify wireless network performance through field testing and shall document results in a field test report.
- C. Testing and verification of all wireless devices shall include, but not be limited to, the following:
  1. Speed.
  2. Online status.
  3. Signal strength.

### 3.13 FINAL REVIEW

- A. Submit written request to Architect when DDC system is ready for final review. Written request shall state the following:
  1. DDC system has been thoroughly inspected for compliance with contract documents and found to be in full compliance.
  2. DDC system has been calibrated, adjusted and tested and found to comply with requirements of operational stability, accuracy, speed and other performance requirements indicated.
  3. DDC system monitoring and control of HVAC systems results in operation according to sequences of operation indicated.
  4. DDC system is complete and ready for final review.
- B. Review by Architect shall be made after receipt of written request. A field report shall be issued to document observations and deficiencies.
- C. Take prompt action to remedy deficiencies indicated in field report and submit a second written request when all deficiencies have been corrected. Repeat process until no deficiencies are reported.
- D. Should more than two reviews be required, DDC system manufacturer and Installer shall compensate entity performing review for total costs, labor and expenses, associated with third and subsequent reviews. Estimated cost of each review shall be submitted and approved by DDC system manufacturer and Installer before making the review.
- E. Prepare and submit closeout submittals when no deficiencies are reported.

- F. A part of DDC system final review shall include a demonstration to parties participating in final review.
  - 1. Provide staff familiar with DDC system installed to demonstrate operation of DDC system during final review.
  - 2. Provide testing equipment to demonstrate accuracy and other performance requirements of DDC system that is requested by reviewers during final review.

#### 3.14 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

#### 3.15 SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT

- A. Technical Support: Beginning at Substantial Completion, service agreement shall include software support for one year(s).
- B. Upgrade Service: At Substantial Completion, update software to latest version. Install and program software upgrades that become available within one year(s) from date of Substantial Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system and new or revised licenses for using software.
  - 1. Upgrade Notice: At least 30 days to allow Owner to schedule and access system and to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

#### 3.16 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative with complete knowledge of Project-specific system installed to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain DDC system.

END OF SECTION 230923

## SECTION 230923.27 - TEMPERATURE INSTRUMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Air temperature sensors.
  - 2. Combination air temperature sensors and switches.
  - 3. Air temperature switches.
  - 4. Air temperature RTD transmitters.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Division 23 Section "Direct-Digital Control System for HVAC" for control equipment and software, relays, electrical power devices, uninterruptible power supply units, wire, and cable.
  - 2. Division 23 Section "Sequence of Operations for HVAC Controls" for requirements that relate to Section 230923.27.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. RTD: Resistance temperature detector.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product, including the following:
  - 1. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
  - 2. Operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished accessories indicating process operating range, accuracy over range, control signal over range, default control signal with loss of power, calibration data specific to each unique application, electrical power requirements, and limitations of ambient operating environment, including temperature and humidity.
  - 3. Product description with complete technical data, performance curves, and product specification sheets.

4. Installation operation and maintenance instructions, including factors affecting performance.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each product requiring a certificate.
- B. Product Test Reports: For each product, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials and parts that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Environmental Conditions:
  1. Instruments shall operate without performance degradation under the ambient environmental temperature, pressure, humidity, and vibration conditions specified and encountered for installed location.

#### 2.2 AIR TEMPERATURE SENSORS

- A. Platinum RTDs: Common Requirements:
  1. 100 or 1000 ohms at zero deg C and a temperature coefficient of 0.00385 ohm/ohm/deg C.
  2. Two-wire, PTFE-insulated, 22-gage stranded copper leads.
  3. Performance Characteristics:
    - a. Range: Minus 50 to 275 deg F.
    - b. Interchangeable Accuracy: At 32 deg F within 0.5 deg F.
    - c. Repeatability: Within 0.5 deg F.
    - d. Self-Heating: Negligible.
  4. Transmitter Requirements:
    - a. Transmitter required for each 100-ohm RTD.



- b. Transmitter optional for 1000-ohm RTD, contingent on compliance with end-to-end control accuracy.
- B. Platinum RTD, Single-Point Air Temperature Duct Sensors:
  - 1. 100 or 1000 ohms.
  - 2. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to 275 deg F
  - 3. Probe: Single-point sensor with a stainless-steel sheath.
  - 4. Length: As required by application to achieve tip at midpoint of air tunnel, up to 18 inches.
  - 5. Enclosure: Junction box with removable cover; NEMA 250, Type 1 for indoor applications and Type 4 for outdoor applications.
  - 6. Gasket for attachment to duct or equipment to seal penetration airtight.
  - 7. Conduit Connection: 1/2-inch
- C. Platinum RTD, Air Temperature Averaging Sensors:
  - 1. 100 or 1000 ohms.
  - 2. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to 275 deg F
  - 3. Multiple sensors to provide average temperature across entire length of sensor.
  - 4. Rigid probe of aluminum, brass, copper, or stainless-steel sheath.
  - 5. Flexible probe of aluminum, brass, copper, or stainless-steel sheath and formable to a 4-inch radius.
  - 6. Length: As required by application to cover entire cross section of air tunnel.
  - 7. Enclosure: Junction box with removable cover; NEMA 250, Type 1 for indoor applications and Type 4 for outdoor applications.
  - 8. Gasket for attachment to duct or equipment to seal penetration airtight.
  - 9. Conduit Connection: 1/2-inch
- D. Platinum RTD Outdoor Air Temperature Sensors:
  - 1. 100 or 1000 ohms.
  - 2. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to 275 deg F
  - 3. Probe: Single-point sensor with a stainless-steel sheath.
  - 4. Solar Shield: Stainless steel.
  - 5. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4 or 4X junction box or combination conduit and outlet box with removable cover and gasket.
  - 6. Conduit Connection: 1/2-inch trade size.
- E. Platinum RTD Space Air Temperature Sensors:
  - 1. 100 or 1000 ohms.
  - 2. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to 212 deg F
  - 3. Sensor assembly shall include a temperature sensing element mounted under a flush, brushed-aluminum cover.
  - 4. Provide a mounting plate that is compatible with the surface shape that it is mounted to and electrical box used.
  - 5. Concealed wiring connection.

F. Thermal Resistors (Thermistors): Common Requirements:

1. 10,000 ohms at 25 deg C and a temperature coefficient of 23.5 ohms/ohm/deg C.
2. Two-wire, PTFE-insulated, 22-gage stranded copper leads.
3. Performance Characteristics:
  - a. Range: Minus 50 to 275 deg F.
  - b. Interchangeable Accuracy: At 77 deg F within 0.5 deg F.
  - c. Repeatability: Within 0.5 deg F.
  - d. Drift: Within 0.5 deg F over 10 years.
  - e. Self-Heating: Negligible.
4. Transmitter optional, contingent on compliance with end-to-end control accuracy.

G. Thermistor, Single-Point Duct Air Temperature Sensors:

1. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to 275 deg F
2. Probe: Single-point sensor with a stainless-steel sheath.
3. Length: As required by application to achieve tip at midpoint of air tunnel, up to 18 inches.
4. Enclosure: Junction box with removable cover; NEMA 250, Type 1 for indoor applications and Type 4 for outdoor applications.
5. Gasket for attachment to duct or equipment to seal penetration airtight.
6. Conduit Connection: 1/2- inch trade size.

H. Thermistor Averaging Air Temperature Sensors:

1. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to 275 deg F
2. Multiple sensors to provide average temperature across entire length of sensor.
3. Rigid probe of aluminum, brass, copper, or stainless-steel sheath.
4. Flexible probe of aluminum, brass, copper, or stainless-steel sheath and formable to a 4-inch radius.
5. Length: As required by application to cover entire cross section of air tunnel.
6. Enclosure: Junction box with removable cover; NEMA 250, Type 1 for indoor applications and Type 4 for outdoor applications.
7. Gasket for attachment to duct or equipment to seal penetration airtight.
8. Conduit Connection: 1/2-inch trade size.

I. Thermistor Outdoor Air Temperature Sensors:

1. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to 275 deg F
2. Probe: Single-point sensor with a stainless-steel sheath.
3. Solar Shield: Stainless steel.
4. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4 or 4X junction box or combination conduit and outlet box with removable cover and gasket.
5. Conduit Connection: 1/2-inch trade size.

J. Thermistor Space Air Temperature Sensors:

1. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to 212 deg F
2. Sensor assembly shall include a temperature sensing element mounted under a flush, brushed-aluminum cover.
3. Provide a mounting plate that is compatible with the surface shape that it is mounted to and electrical box used.
4. Concealed wiring connection.

K. Space Air Temperature Sensors for Use with DDC Controllers Controlling Terminal Units:

1. 100- or 1000-ohm platinum RTD or thermistor.
2. Thermistor:
  - a. Pre-aged, burned in, and coated with glass; inserted in a metal sleeve; and entire unit encased in epoxy.
  - b. Thermistor drift shall be less than plus or minus 0.5 deg F over 10 years.
3. Temperature Transmitter Requirements:
  - a. Mating transmitter required with each 100-ohm RTD.
  - b. Mating transmitters optional for 1000-ohm RTD and thermistor, contingent on compliance with end-to-end control accuracy.
4. Provide digital display of sensed temperature.
5. Provide sensor with local control.
  - a. Local override to turn HVAC on.
  - b. Local adjustment of temperature set point.
  - c. Both features shall be capable of manual override through control system operator.

## 2.3 COMBINATION AIR TEMPERATURE SENSOR AND SWITCH

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain temperature-measuring sensors and transmitters and airflow from single manufacturer.
- B. Combination temperature sensor and switch in same instrument.
- C. Air Temperature Switch:
  1. Factory preset set point of 38 deg F. Field-adjustable set point from 30 to 44 deg F.
  2. Responsive to coldest 12-inch section of sensor length.
  3. DPST latching relay rated at 25 A and 120-V ac, with powered controller, coil, and manual reset at panel. Wire one leg to fan start circuit and other leg to signal a remote alarm.
- D. Air Temperature Sensor:

1. Temperature-averaging type over sensor length. Length to be determined by installing trade to provide uniform coverage over air tunnel. Consult manufacturer for recommendations.
2. Platinum RTD with a value of 1000 ohms at zero deg C and a temperature coefficient of 0.00385 ohm/ohm/deg C.
3. Accuracy: Within 0.9 deg F.
4. Output Signal: 4 to 20 mA for connection to remote monitoring.
5. Encase RTDs in a flexible nominal 0.375-inch-diameter sheath constructed of brass.
6. Lead wires shall be 18-gage AWG copper.
7. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4.

## 2.4 AIR TEMPERATURE SWITCHES

### A. Thermostat and Switch for Low Temperature Control in Duct Applications:

1. Description:
  - a. Two-position control.
  - b. Field-adjustable set point.
  - c. Manual reset.
  - d. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Performance:
  - a. Operating Temperature Range: 15 to 55 deg F.
  - b. Temperature Differential: 5 deg F, non-adjustable and additive.
  - c. Enclosure Ambient Temperature: Minus 20 to 140 deg F.
  - d. Sensing Element Maximum Temperature: 250 deg F.
  - e. Voltage: 120-V ac.
  - f. Current: 16 FLA.
  - g. Switch Type: Two SPDT snap switches operate on coldest 12-inch section along element length.
3. Construction:
  - a. Vapor-Filled Sensing Element: Nominal 20 feet long.
  - b. Dual Temperature Scale: Fahrenheit and Celsius visible on face.
  - c. Set-Point Adjustment: Screw.
  - d. Enclosure: Painted metal, NEMA 250, Type 1.
  - e. Electrical Connections: Screw terminals.
  - f. Conduit Connection: 1/2-inch trade size.

## 2.5 AIR TEMPERATURE RTD TRANSMITTERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain temperature-measuring sensors and transmitters and airflow from single manufacturer.
- B. House electronics in NEMA 250 enclosure.
  - 1. Duct: Type 1.
  - 2. Outdoor: Type 4.
  - 3. Space: Type 1.
- C. Conduit Connection: 1/2-inch
- D. Functional Characteristics:
  - 1. Input:
    - a. 100-ohm platinum RTD temperature coefficient of 0.00385 ohm/ohm/deg C, two-wire sensors.
    - b. 1000-ohm platinum RTD temperature coefficient of 0.00385 ohm/ohm/deg C, two-wire sensors.
  - 2. Span (Adjustable):
    - a. Space: 40 to 90 deg F.
    - b. Supply Air Cooling and Heating: 40 to 120 deg F.
    - c. Supply Air Cooling Only: 40 to 90 deg F.
    - d. Supply Air Heating Only: 40 to 120 deg F.
    - e. Exhaust Air: 50 to 100 deg F.
    - f. Return Air: 50 to 100 deg F.
    - g. Mixed Air: Minus 40 to 140 deg F.
    - h. Outdoor: Minus 40 to 140 deg F.
  - 3. Output: 4- to 20-mA dc, linear with temperature; RFI insensitive; minimum drive load of 600 ohms at 24-V dc.
  - 4. Zero and span field adjustments, plus or minus 5 percent of span. Minimum span of 50 deg F.
  - 5. Match sensor with temperature transmitter and factory calibrate together.
- E. Performance Characteristics:
  - 1. Calibration Accuracy: Within 0.1 percent of the span.
  - 2. Stability: Within 0.2 percent of the span for at least 6 months.
  - 3. Combined Accuracy: Within 0.5 percent.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for instruments installed in piping to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
- C. Examine roughing-in for instruments installed in duct systems to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
- D. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install products level, plumb, parallel, and perpendicular with building construction.
- B. Properly support instruments, tubing, piping, wiring, and conduit to comply with requirements indicated. Brace all products to prevent lateral movement and sway or a break in attachment when subjected to force.
- C. Fastening Hardware:
  - 1. Stillson wrenches, pliers, and other tools that cause injury to or mar surfaces of rods, nuts, and other parts are prohibited for work of assembling and tightening nuts.
  - 2. Tighten bolts and nuts firmly and uniformly. Do not overstress threads by excessive force or by oversized wrenches.
  - 3. Lubricate threads of bolts, nuts, and screws with graphite and oil before assembly.
- D. Install products in locations that are accessible and that permit calibration and maintenance from floor, equipment platforms, or catwalks. Where ladders are required for Owner's access, confirm unrestricted ladder placement is possible under occupied condition.
- E. Corrosive Environments:
  - 1. Use products that are suitable for environment to which they are subjected.
  - 2. If possible, avoid or limit use of materials in corrosive environments.
  - 3. When conduit is in contact with a corrosive environment, use Type 316 stainless-steel conduit and fittings or conduit and fittings that are coated with a corrosive-resistant coating that is suitable for environment.
  - 4. Where instruments are located in a corrosive environment and are not corrosive resistant from manufacturer, field install products in a NEMA 250, Type 4X enclosure constructed of Type 316L stainless steel.

### 3.3 ELECTRIC POWER

- A. Furnish and install electrical power to products requiring electrical connections.
- B. Furnish and install circuit breakers. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers."
- C. Furnish and install power wiring. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- D. Furnish and install raceways. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."

### 3.4 TEMPERATURE INSTRUMENT INSTALLATIONS

#### A. Mounting Location:

##### 1. Roughing In:

- a. Outline instrument mounting locations before setting instruments and routing cable, wiring, tubing, and conduit to final location.
  - b. Provide independent inspection to confirm that proposed mounting locations comply with requirements indicated and approved submittals.
    - 1) Indicate dimensioned locations with mounting height for all surface-mounted products on Shop Drawings.
    - 2) Do not begin installation without submittal approval of mounting location.
  - c. Complete installation rough-in only after confirmation by independent inspection is complete and approval of location is documented for review by Owner and Architect on request.
- 2. Install switches and transmitters for air and liquid temperature associated with individual air-handling units and associated connected ductwork and piping near air-handling units co-located in air-handling unit system control panel to provide service personnel a single and convenient location for inspection and service.
  - 3. Install liquid and steam temperature switches and transmitters for indoor applications in mechanical equipment rooms. Do not locate in user-occupied space unless indicated specifically on Drawings.
  - 4. Install air temperature switches and transmitters for indoor applications in mechanical equipment rooms. Do not locate in user-occupied space unless indicated specifically on Drawings.
  - 5. Mount switches and transmitters on walls, floor-supported freestanding pipe stands, or floor-supported structural support frames. Use manufacturer's mounting brackets to accommodate field mounting. Securely support and brace products to prevent vibration and movement.

#### B. Special Mounting Requirements:

1. Protect products installed outdoors from solar radiation, building and wind effect with stand-offs and shields constructed of **[Type 316 stainless]** <Insert material>.
2. Temperature instruments having performance impacted by temperature of mounting substrate shall be isolated with an insulating barrier located between instrument and substrate to eliminate effect. Where instruments requiring insulation are located in finished space, conceal insulating barrier in a cover matching the instrument cover.

C. Mounting Height:

1. Mount temperature instruments in user-occupied space to match mounting height of light switches unless otherwise indicated on Drawings. Mounting height shall comply with codes and accessibility requirements.
2. Mount switches and transmitters located in mechanical equipment rooms and other similar space not subject to code or state and Federal accessibility requirements within a range of 42 to 72 inches above the adjacent floor, grade, or service catwalk or platform.
  - a. Make every effort to mount at 60 inches.

D. Seal penetrations to ductwork, plenums, and air-moving equipment to comply with duct static-pressure class and leakage and seal classes indicated using neoprene gaskets or grommets.

E. Space Temperature Sensor Installation:

1. Conceal assembly in an electrical box of sufficient size to house sensor and transmitter, if provided.
2. Install electrical box with a faceplate to match sensor cover if sensor cover does not completely cover electrical box.
3. In finished areas, recess electrical box within wall.
4. In unfinished areas, electrical box may be surface mounted if electrical light switches are surface mounted. Use a cast-aluminum electric box for surface-mounted installations.
5. Align electrical box with other electrical devices such as visual alarms and light switches located in the vicinity to provide a neat and well-thought-out arrangement. Where possible, align in both horizontal and vertical axis.

F. Outdoor Air Temperature Sensor Installation:

1. Mount sensor in a discrete location facing north.
2. Protect installed sensor from solar radiation and other influences that could impact performance.
3. If required to have a transmitter, mount transmitter remote from sensor in an accessible and serviceable location indoors.

G. Single-Point Duct Temperature Sensor Installation:

1. Install single-point-type, duct-mounted, supply- and return-air temperature sensors. Install sensors in ducts with sensitive portion of the element installed in center of duct cross section and located to sense near average temperature. Do not exceed 24 inches in sensor length.



2. Install return-air sensor in location that senses return-air temperature without influence from outdoor or mixed air.
3. Rigidly support sensor to duct and seal penetration airtight.
4. If required to have transmitter, mount transmitter remote from sensor at accessible and serviceable location.

H. Averaging Duct Temperature Sensor Installation:

1. Install averaging-type air temperature sensor for temperature sensors located within air-handling units, similar equipment, and large ducts with air tunnel cross-sectional area of 20 sq. ft. and larger.
2. Install sensor length to maintain coverage over entire cross-sectional area. Install multiple sensors where required to maintain the minimum coverage.
3. Fasten and support sensor with manufacturer-furnished clips to keep sensor taut throughout entire length.
4. If required to have transmitter, mount transmitter in an accessible and serviceable location.

I. Low-Limit Air Temperature Switch Installation:

1. Install multiple low-limit switches to maintain coverage over entire cross-sectional area of air tunnel.
2. Fasten and support sensing element with manufacturer-furnished clips to keep element taut throughout entire length.
3. Mount switches outside of airstream at a location and mounting height to provide easy access for switch set-point adjustment and manual reset.
4. Install on entering side of cooling coil unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.

### 3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Each piece of wire, cable, and tubing shall have the same designation at each end for operators to determine continuity at points of connection. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

### 3.6 CLEANING

- A. Remove grease, mastic, adhesives, dust, dirt, stains, fingerprints, labels, and other foreign materials from exposed interior and exterior surfaces.
- B. Wash and shine glazing.
- C. Polish glossy surfaces to a clean shine.

### 3.7 CHECK-OUT PROCEDURES

- A. Check installed products before continuity tests, leak tests, and calibration.
- B. Check temperature instruments for proper location and accessibility.
- C. Verify sensing element type and proper material.
- D. Verify location and length.
- E. Verify that wiring is correct and secure.

### 3.8 ADJUSTMENT, CALIBRATION, AND TESTING

#### A. Description:

- 1. Calibrate each instrument installed that is not factory calibrated and provided with calibration documentation.
- 2. Provide a written description of proposed field procedures and equipment for calibrating each type of instrument. Submit procedures before calibration and adjustment.
- 3. For each analog instrument, make a three-point test of calibration for both linearity and accuracy.
- 4. Equipment and procedures used for calibration shall meet instrument manufacturer's written instructions.
- 5. Provide diagnostic and test equipment for calibration and adjustment.
- 6. Field instruments and equipment used to test and calibrate installed instruments shall have accuracy at least twice the instrument accuracy being calibrated. For example, an installed instrument with an accuracy of 1 percent shall be checked by an instrument with an accuracy of 0.5 percent.
- 7. Calibrate each instrument according to instrument instruction manual supplied by manufacturer.
- 8. If after calibration indicated performance cannot be achieved, replace out-of-tolerance instruments.
- 9. Comply with field-testing requirements and procedures indicated by ASHRAE Guideline 11, "Field Testing of HVAC Control Components," in the absence of specific requirements and to supplement requirements indicated.

#### B. Analog Signals:

- 1. Check analog voltage signals using a precision voltage meter at zero, 50, and 100 percent.
- 2. Check analog current signals using a precision current meter at zero, 50, and 100 percent.
- 3. Check resistance signals for temperature sensors at zero, 50, and 100 percent of operating span using a precision-resistance source.

- C. Digital Signals:
  - 1. Check digital signals using a jumper wire.
  - 2. Check digital signals using an ohmmeter to test for contact.
- D. Sensors: Check sensors at zero, 50, and 100 percent of Project design values.
- E. Switches: Calibrate switches to make or break contact at set points indicated.
- F. Transmitters:
  - 1. Check and calibrate transmitters at zero, 50, and 100 percent of Project design values.
  - 2. Calibrate resistance temperature transmitters at zero, 50, and 100 percent of span using a precision-resistance source.

### 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. Perform according to manufacturer's written instruction.
  - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.10 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

### 3.11 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain temperature instruments.

END OF SECTION 230923.27

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 230993.11 - SEQUENCE OF OPERATIONS FOR HVAC DDC

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes control sequences for DDC for HVAC systems, subsystems, and equipment.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Division 23 Section "DDC Systems for HVAC" for control equipment.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Analog Output: Proportional output signal (zero- to 10-V dc, 4 to 20 mA).
- B. Binary Output: On/off output signal or contact closure.
- C. DDC: Direct digital control.
- D. Digital Output: Data output that must be interpreted digitally.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
  - 1. An instrumentation list for each controlled system. Label each element of the controlled system in table format. Show, in the table element name, type of device, manufacturer, model number, and control device product data sheet number.
  - 2. A complete description of the operation of the control system, including sequences of operation. Include and reference a schematic diagram of the controlled system.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Riser diagrams showing control network layout, communication protocol, and wire types.
  - 2. Schematic diagram of each controlled system. Include all control points labeled with point names shown or listed. Show the location of control elements in the system.

3. Wiring diagram for each controlled system. Show all control elements labels. Where a control element is the same as that shown on the control system schematic, label with the same name. Label all terminals.

#### 1.5 DOAS UNIT CONTROL SEQUENCE

##### A. BAS Control:

1. BAS shall command unit to occupied or unoccupied mode.

##### B. Unoccupied Mode:

1. In the unoccupied mode, the unit supply and exhaust fans shall be off, the energy recovery wheel shall be off, heating and cooling shall be disabled, and the outside air damper shall be closed.

##### C. Occupied Mode:

1. In the occupied mode, the unit supply and exhaust fans shall be energized; the energy recovery wheel, heating, cooling, and reheat shall be enabled; and the outside air damper shall be open.
  - a. Heating and cooling shall operate via integral unit controls to maintain discharge air temperature setpoint.
    - 1) Discharge air temperature setpoint shall be reset based on outside air temperature. Setpoint shall be 70°F (adj.) when outside air temperature is 55°F or lower, and shall be linearly reset to 65°F (adj.) when outside air temperature is 80°F or higher.
  - b. Hot gas reheat shall be enabled when humidity in any space is greater than 60%.
  - c. Enthalpy wheel control:
    - 1) Enthalpy wheel shall be enabled whenever heating or cooling energy can be recovered.
    - 2) Enthalpy wheel shall modulate speed or cycle as required to prevent frost formation.
    - 3) Enthalpy wheel shall run at minimum speed or cycle when disabled to prevent build-up of contaminants.

#### 1.6 ROOFTOP UNIT CONTROL SEQUENCE

##### A. BAS Control:

1. BAS shall command unit to occupied or unoccupied mode.

B. Unoccupied Mode:

1. In the unoccupied mode, the unit supply and exhaust fans shall be off, heating and cooling shall be disabled, the outside air damper shall be closed, and the return air damper shall be open.
2. The unit will cycle on as required to maintain space setback temperature. Return air damper will remain open and outside air damper will remain closed. Heating or cooling will be fully enabled.

C. Occupied Mode:

1. In the occupied mode, the unit supply fan shall be energized; heating, cooling, and reheat shall be enabled; and the outside air damper shall be open.
  - a. Heating and cooling shall operate via integral unit controls to maintain space temperature setpoint.
  - b. Supply fan speed shall be reset based on space CO<sub>2</sub> sensors.
    - 1) Supply fan shall modulate as required to maintain maximum CO<sub>2</sub> level of 1000 ppm.
  - c. Supply fan speed shall be reset to utilize minimum-energy single-zone VAV strategy.
  - d. Hot gas reheat shall be enabled when humidity in space is greater than 60%.

1.7 VRF SYSTEM

A. Outdoor Unit:

1. Unit shall operate per manufacturer's standard control.

B. Indoor Units:

1. Units shall operate as required to maintain setpoint at zone temperature sensor.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 230993.11

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK



## SECTION 231126 - FACILITY LIQUEFIED-PETROLEUM GAS PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Pipes, tubes, and fittings.
  - 2. Piping specialties.
  - 3. Piping and tubing joining materials.
  - 4. Valves.
  - 5. Pressure regulators.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct shafts, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.
- B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
- C. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.
- D. LPG: Liquefied-petroleum gas.

#### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Minimum Operating-Pressure Ratings:
  - 1. For Piping Containing Only Vapor:
    - a. Piping and Valves: 125 psig unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. For Piping Containing Liquid:
    - a. Piping between Shutoff Valves: 350 psig unless otherwise indicated.

- b. Piping Other Than Above: 250 psig unless otherwise indicated.
  - c. Valves and Fittings: 250 psig unless otherwise indicated.
- B. LPG System Pressure within Buildings: One pressure range. 0.5 psig or less.
- C. Seismic Performance: Storage container supports shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to SEI/ASCE 7.
  - 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."

#### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following:
  - 1. Piping specialties.
  - 2. Corrugated stainless-steel tubing with associated components.
  - 3. Valves. Include pressure rating, capacity, settings, and electrical connection data of selected models.
  - 4. Pressure regulators. Indicate pressure ratings and capacities.
  - 5. Dielectric fittings.

#### 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For LPG equipment and accessories to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

#### 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Steel Support Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

## 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Handling Flammable Liquids: Remove and dispose of liquids from existing LPG piping according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- C. Store pipes and tubes with protective PE coating to avoid damaging coating and protect from direct sunlight.
- D. Protect stored PE pipes and valves from direct sunlight.

## 1.10 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Perform site survey, research public utility records, and verify existing utility locations. Contact utility-locating service for area where Project is located.

## 1.11 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.
- B. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for valves installed concealed behind finished surfaces. Comply with requirements in Division 08 Section "Access Doors and Frames."

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PIPES, TUBES, AND FITTINGS

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel, Schedules 40 and 80, Type E or S, Grade B.
  - 1. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Class 150, standard pattern.
  - 2. Wrought-Steel Welding Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M for butt welding and socket welding.
  - 3. Unions: ASME B16.39, Class 150, malleable iron with brass-to-iron seat, ground joint, and threaded ends.
  - 4. Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, minimum Class 150, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:
    - a. Material Group: 1.1.
    - b. End Connections: Threaded or butt welding to match pipe.
    - c. Lapped Face: Not permitted underground.
    - d. Gasket Materials: ASME B16.20, metallic, flat, asbestos free, aluminum o-rings, and spiral-wound metal gaskets.

- e. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel aboveground, and stainless steel underground.
- 5. Protective Coating for Underground Piping: Factory-applied, three-layer coating of epoxy, adhesive, and PE.
  - a. Joint Cover Kits: Epoxy paint, adhesive, and heat-shrink PE sleeves.
- 6. Mechanical Couplings:
  - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - 1) GE Oil & Gas.
    - 2) Smith-Blair, Inc.
  - b. Steel flanges and tube with epoxy finish.
  - c. Buna-nitrile seals.
  - d. Steel bolts, washers, and nuts.
  - e. Coupling shall be capable of joining PE pipe to PE pipe, steel pipe to PE pipe, or steel pipe to steel pipe.
  - f. Steel body couplings installed underground on plastic pipe shall be factory equipped with anode.
- B. Corrugated, Stainless-Steel Tubing: Comply with ANSI/IAS LC 1.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. FlashShield Products; Gastite, a division of Titeflex Corp.
    - b. TracPipe CounterStrike; Omega Flex, Inc.
  - 2. Tubing: ASTM A 240/A 240M, corrugated, Series 300 stainless steel.
  - 3. Coating: PE with flame retardant.
    - a. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
      - 1) Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
      - 2) Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.
  - 4. Fittings: Copper-alloy mechanical fittings with ends made to fit and listed for use with corrugated stainless-steel tubing and capable of metal-to-metal seal without gaskets. Include brazing socket or threaded ends complying with ASME B1.20.1.
  - 5. Striker Plates: Steel, designed to protect tubing from penetrations.

6. Manifolds: Malleable iron or steel with factory-applied protective coating. Threaded connections shall comply with ASME B1.20.1 for pipe inlet and corrugated tubing outlets.
  7. Operating-Pressure Rating: 5 psig.
- C. Drawn-Temper Copper Tube: Comply with ASTM B 88, Type K.
1. Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought copper, and streamlined pattern.
  2. Bronze Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.24, Class 150.
    - a. Gasket Material: ASME B16.20, metallic, flat, asbestos free, aluminum o-rings, and spiral-wound metal gaskets.
    - b. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel or stainless steel.
  3. Protective Coating for Underground Tubing: Factory-applied, extruded PE a minimum of 0.022 inch thick.
- D. Annealed-Temper Copper Tube: Comply with ASTM B 88, Type K.
1. Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought copper, and streamlined pattern.
  2. Flare Fittings: Comply with ASME B16.26 and SAE J513.
    - a. Copper fittings with long nuts.
    - b. Metal-to-metal compression seal without gasket.
    - c. Dryseal threads complying with ASME B1.20.3.
  3. Protective Coating for Underground Tubing: Factory-applied, extruded PE a minimum of 0.022 inch thick.
- E. PE Pipe: ASTM D 2513, SDR 11.
1. PE Fittings: ASTM D 2683, socket-fusion type or ASTM D 3261, butt-fusion type with dimensions matching PE pipe.
  2. PE Transition Fittings: Factory-fabricated fittings with PE pipe complying with ASTM D 2513, SDR 11; and steel pipe complying with ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grade B.
  3. Anodeless Service-Line Risers: Factory fabricated and leak tested.
    - a. Underground Portion: PE pipe complying with ASTM D 2513, SDR 11 inlet.
    - b. Casing: Steel pipe complying with ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, black steel, Type E or S, Grade B with corrosion-protective coating covering. Vent casing aboveground.
    - c. Aboveground Portion: PE transition fitting.
    - d. Outlet shall be threaded or flanged or suitable for welded connection.
    - e. Tracer wire connection.
    - f. Ultraviolet shield.
    - g. Stake supports with factory finish to match steel pipe casing or carrier pipe.

4. Transition Service-Line Risers: Factory fabricated and leak tested.
  - a. Underground Portion: PE pipe complying with ASTM D 2513, SDR 11 inlet connected to steel pipe complying with ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grade B, with corrosion-protective coating for aboveground outlet.
  - b. Outlet shall be threaded or flanged or suitable for welded connection.
  - c. Bridging sleeve over mechanical coupling.
  - d. Factory-connected anode.
  - e. Tracer wire connection.
  - f. Ultraviolet shield.
  - g. Stake supports with factory finish to match steel pipe casing or carrier pipe.
5. Plastic Mechanical Couplings, NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Capable of joining PE pipe to PE pipe.
  - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - 1) Lyall, R. W. & Company, Inc.
    - 2) Mueller Co.
  - b. PE body with molded-in, stainless-steel support ring.
  - c. Buna-nitrile seals.
  - d. Acetal collets.
  - e. Electro-zinc-plated steel stiffener.
6. Plastic Mechanical Couplings, NPS 2 and Larger: Capable of joining PE pipe to PE pipe, steel pipe to PE pipe, or steel pipe to steel pipe.
  - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - 1) Lyall, R. W. & Company, Inc.
    - 2) Mueller Co.
  - b. Fiber-reinforced plastic body.
  - c. PE body tube.
  - d. Buna-nitrile seals.
  - e. Acetal collets.
  - f. Stainless-steel bolts, nuts, and washers.
7. Steel Mechanical Couplings: Capable of joining plain-end PE pipe to PE pipe, steel pipe to PE pipe, or steel pipe to steel pipe.

- a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1) GE Oil & Gas.
  - 2) Smith-Blair, Inc.
- b. Steel flanges and tube with epoxy finish.
- c. Buna-nitrile seals.
- d. Steel bolts, washers, and nuts.
- e. Factory-installed anode for steel-body couplings installed underground.

## 2.2 PIPING SPECIALTIES

### A. Flexible Piping Joints:

- 1. Approved for LPG service.
- 2. Stainless-steel bellows with woven, flexible, bronze, wire-reinforcing protective jacket.
- 3. Minimum working pressure of 250 psig and 250 deg F operating temperature.
- 4. Flanged- or threaded-end connections to match equipment connected and shall be capable of minimum 3/4-inch misalignment.
- 5. Maximum 36-inch length for liquid LPG lines.

### B. Appliance Flexible Connectors:

- 1. Indoor, Fixed-Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.24.
- 2. Indoor, Movable-Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.69.
- 3. Outdoor, Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.75.
- 4. Corrugated stainless-steel tubing with polymer coating.
- 5. Operating-Pressure Rating: 0.5 psig.
- 6. End Fittings: Zinc-coated steel.
- 7. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
- 8. Maximum Length: 72 inches

### C. Quick-Disconnect Devices: Comply with ANSI Z21.41.

- 1. Copper-alloy convenience outlet and matching plug connector.
- 2. Nitrile seals.
- 3. Hand operated with automatic shutoff when disconnected.
- 4. For indoor or outdoor applications.
- 5. Adjustable, retractable restraining cable.

### D. Y-Pattern Strainers:

- 1. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
- 2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

3. Strainer Screen: 40-mesh startup strainer and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
  4. CWP Rating: 125 psig.
- E. Weatherproof Vent Cap: Cast- or malleable-iron increaser fitting with corrosion-resistant wire screen, with free area at least equal to cross-sectional area of connecting pipe and threaded-end connection.

## 2.3 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Joint Compound and Tape: Suitable for LPG.
- B. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- C. Brazing Filler Metals: Alloy with melting point greater than 1000 deg F complying with AWS A5.8/A5.8M.

## 2.4 MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVES

- A. See "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles for where each valve type is applied in various services.
- B. Metallic Valves, NPS 2 and Smaller for Liquid Service: Comply with ASME B16.33 and UL 842.
1. CWP Rating: 250 psig.
  2. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
  3. Socket ends for brazed joints.
  4. Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
  5. Listing by CSA or agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for valves 1 inch and smaller.
  6. Valves 1-1/4 inch and larger shall be suitable for LPG service, with "WOG" indicated on valve body.
- C. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2 and Smaller for Vapor Service: Comply with ASME B16.33.
1. CWP Rating: 125 psig.
  2. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
  3. Dryseal Threads on Flare Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.3.
  4. Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
  5. Listing: Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for valves 1 inch and smaller.



6. Service Mark: Valves 1-1/4 inch to NPS 2 shall have initials "WOG" permanently marked on valve body.
- D. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim: MSS SP-110.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. A.Y. McDonald Mfg. Co.
    - b. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
    - c. BrassCraft Manufacturing Co.; a Masco company.
  2. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.
  3. Ball: Chrome-plated bronze.
  4. Stem: Bronze; blowout proof.
  5. Seats: Reinforced TFE; blowout proof.
  6. Packing: Threaded-body packnut design with adjustable-stem packing.
  7. Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
  8. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
  9. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  10. Service: Suitable for LPG service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.
- E. Bronze Plug Valves: MSS SP-78.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. A.Y. McDonald Mfg. Co.
    - b. Lee Brass Company.
  2. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.
  3. Plug: Bronze.
  4. Ends: Threaded, socket, or flanged as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
  5. Operator: Square head or lug type with tamperproof feature where indicated.
  6. Pressure Class: 125 psig.
  7. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  8. Service: Suitable for LPG service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.
- F. PE Ball Valves: Comply with ASME B16.40.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Kerotest Manufacturing Corp.
  - b. Lyall, R. W. & Company, Inc.
2. Body: PE.
3. Ball: PE.
4. Stem: Acetal.
5. Seats and Seals: Nitrile.
6. Ends: Plain or fusible to match piping.
7. CWP Rating: 80 psig.
8. Operating Temperature: Minus 20 to plus 140 deg F.
9. Operator: Nut or flat head for key operation.
10. Include plastic valve extension.
11. Include tamperproof locking feature for valves where indicated on Drawings.

G. Valve Boxes:

1. Cast-iron, two-section box.
2. Top section with cover with "GAS" lettering.
3. Bottom section with base to fit over valve and barrel a minimum of 5 inches in diameter.
4. Adjustable cast-iron extensions of length required for depth of bury.
5. Include tee-handle, steel operating wrench with socket end fitting valve nut or flat head and with stem of length required to operate valve.

## 2.5 PRESSURE REGULATORS

A. General Requirements:

1. Single stage and suitable for LPG.
2. Steel jacket and corrosion-resistant components.
3. Elevation compensator.
4. End Connections: Threaded for regulators NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for regulators NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

B. Line Pressure Regulators: Comply with ANSI Z21.80.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. American Meter Company.
  - b. Fisher Control Valves & Instruments; a brand of Emerson Process Management.
  - c. Maxitrol Company.

2. Body and Diaphragm Case: Cast iron or die-cast aluminum.
3. Springs: Zinc-plated steel; interchangeable.
4. Diaphragm Plate: Zinc-plated steel.
5. Seat Disc: Nitrile rubber resistant to gas impurities, abrasion, and deformation at the valve port.
6. Orifice: Aluminum; interchangeable.
7. Seal Plug: Ultraviolet-stabilized, mineral-filled nylon.
8. Single-port, self-contained regulator with orifice no larger than required at maximum pressure inlet and no pressure sensing piping external to the regulator.
9. Pressure regulator shall maintain discharge pressure setting downstream and not exceed 150 percent of design discharge pressure at shutoff.
10. Overpressure Protection Device: Factory mounted on pressure regulator.
11. Atmospheric Vent: Factory- or field-installed, stainless-steel screen in opening if not connected to vent piping.
12. Maximum Inlet Pressure: 2 psig.

C. Appliance Pressure Regulators: Comply with ANSI Z21.18.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Maxitrol Company.
2. Body and Diaphragm Case: Die-cast aluminum.
3. Springs: Zinc-plated steel; interchangeable.
4. Diaphragm Plate: Zinc-plated steel.
5. Seat Disc: Nitrile rubber.
6. Seal Plug: Ultraviolet-stabilized, mineral-filled nylon.
7. Factory-Applied Finish: Minimum three-layer polyester and polyurethane paint finish.
8. Regulator may include vent limiting device, instead of vent connection, if approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
9. Maximum Inlet Pressure: 1 psig.

## 2.6 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Dielectric Unions:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. WATTS.

- b. Wilkins.
- 2. Description:
  - a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
  - b. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
  - c. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- C. Dielectric Flanges:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. WATTS.
    - b. Wilkins.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
    - b. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
    - c. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
    - d. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- D. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Calpico, Inc.
    - b. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
    - b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
    - c. Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
    - d. Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
    - e. Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.

## 2.7 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Detectable Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant PE film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, a minimum of 6 inches wide and 4 mils thick, continuously inscribed with a description of utility, with metallic core encased in a protective

jacket for corrosion protection, detectable by metal detector when tape is buried up to 30 inches deep; colored yellow.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for LPG piping system to verify actual locations of piping connections before equipment installation.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Close equipment shutoff valves before turning off LPG to premises or piping section.
- B. Inspect LPG piping according to NFPA 58 and the International Fuel Gas Code to determine that LPG utilization devices are turned off in piping section affected.
- C. Comply with NFPA 58 and the International Fuel Gas Code requirements for prevention of accidental ignition.

#### 3.3 INDOOR PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with the International Fuel Gas Code for installation and purging of LPG piping.
- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- C. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, sleeves, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for mechanical installations.
- D. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- E. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- F. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- G. Locate valves for easy access.

- H. Install LPG piping at uniform grade of 2 percent down toward drip and sediment traps.
- I. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- J. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- K. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- L. Comply with requirements in Sections specifying gas-fired appliances and equipment for roughing-in requirements.
- M. Drips and Sediment Traps: Install drips at points where condensate may collect, including service-meter outlets. Locate where readily accessible to permit cleaning and emptying. Do not install where condensate is subject to freezing.
  - 1. Construct drips and sediment traps using tee fitting with bottom outlet plugged or capped. Use nipple a minimum length of 3 pipe diameters, but not less than 3 inches long and same size as connected pipe. Install with space below bottom of drip to remove plug or cap.
- N. Extend relief vent connections for service regulators, line regulators, and overpressure protection devices to outdoors and terminate with weatherproof vent cap.
- O. Conceal pipe installations in walls, pipe spaces, utility spaces, above ceilings, below grade or floors, and in floor channels unless indicated to be exposed to view.
- P. Concealed Location Installations: Except as specified below, install concealed LPG piping and piping installed under the building in containment conduit constructed of steel pipe with welded joints as described in Part 2. Install a vent pipe from containment conduit to outdoors and terminate with weatherproof vent cap.
  - 1. Above Accessible Ceilings: LPG piping, fittings, valves, and regulators may be installed in accessible spaces without containment conduit.
  - 2. In Floors: Install LPG piping with welded or brazed joints and protective coating in cast-in-place concrete floors. Cover piping to be cast in concrete slabs with minimum of 1-1/2 inches of concrete. Piping may not be in physical contact with other metallic structures such as reinforcing rods or electrically neutral conductors. Do not embed piping in concrete slabs containing quick-set additives or cinder aggregate.
  - 3. In Floor Channels: Install LPG piping in floor channels. Channels must have cover and be open to space above cover for ventilation.
  - 4. In Walls or Partitions: Protect tubing installed inside partitions or hollow walls from physical damage using steel striker barriers at rigid supports.
    - a. Exception: Tubing passing through partitions or walls does not require striker barriers.
  - 5. Prohibited Locations:

- a. Do not install LPG piping in or through circulating air ducts, clothes or trash chutes, chimneys or gas vents (flues), ventilating ducts, or dumbwaiter or elevator shafts.
  - b. Do not install LPG piping in solid walls or partitions.
- Q. Use eccentric reducer fittings to make reductions in pipe sizes. Install fittings with level side down.
- R. Connect branch piping from top or side of horizontal piping.
- S. Install unions in pipes NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve, at final connection to each piece of equipment. Unions are not required at flanged connections.
- T. Do not use LPG piping as grounding electrode.
- U. Install strainer on inlet of each line-pressure regulator and automatic or electrically operated valve.
- V. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Division 23 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- W. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Division 23 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- X. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Division 23 Section "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."

### 3.4 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install manual gas shutoff valve for each gas appliance ahead of corrugated stainless-steel tubing, aluminum, or copper connector.
- B. Install regulators and overpressure protection devices with maintenance access space adequate for servicing and testing.
- C. Install anode for metallic valves in underground PE piping.

### 3.5 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Threaded Joints:

1. Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads complying with ASME B1.20.1.
2. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies.
3. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID of pipe.
4. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dryseal threading is specified.
5. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.

D. Welded Joints:

1. Construct joints according to AWS D10.12/D10.12M, using qualified processes and welding operators.
2. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
3. Patch factory-applied protective coating as recommended by manufacturer at field welds and where damage to coating occurs during construction.

E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," Ch. 22, "Pipe and Tube."

F. Flanged Joints: Install gasket material, size, type, and thickness appropriate for LPG service. Install gasket concentrically positioned.

G. Flared Joints: Cut tubing with roll cutting tool. Flare tube end with tool to result in flare dimensions complying with SAE J513. Tighten finger tight, then use wrench. Do not overtighten.

H. PE Piping Heat-Fusion Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces by wiping with clean cloth or paper towels. Join according to ASTM D 2657.

1. Plain-End Pipe and Fittings: Use butt fusion.
2. Plain-End Pipe and Socket Fittings: Use socket fusion.

### 3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Division 23 Section "Vibration for HVAC."

B. Comply with requirements for pipe hangers and supports specified in Division 23 Section "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

C. Install hangers for horizontal steel piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:

1. NPS 1 and Smaller: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
2. NPS 1-1/4: Maximum span, 108 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: Maximum span, 108 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
4. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 3-1/2: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 1/2 inch.
5. NPS 4 and Larger: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 5/8 inch.



- D. Install hangers for horizontal, drawn-temper copper tubing with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
  - 1. NPS 3/8: Maximum span, 48 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  - 2. NPS 1/2 and NPS 5/8: Maximum span, 72 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  - 3. NPS 3/4 and NPS 7/8: Maximum span, 84 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  - 4. NPS 1: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
- E. Install hangers for horizontal, corrugated stainless-steel tubing with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
  - 1. NPS 3/8: Maximum span, 48 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  - 2. NPS 1/2: Maximum span, 72 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  - 3. NPS 3/4 and Larger: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod, 3/8 inch.

### 3.7 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect to utility's gas main according to utility's procedures and requirements.
- B. Install LPG piping electrically continuous and bonded to gas appliance equipment grounding conductor of the circuit powering the appliance according to NFPA 70.
- C. Install piping adjacent to appliances to allow service and maintenance of appliances.
- D. Connect piping to appliances using manual gas shutoff valves and unions. Install valve within 72 inches of each gas-fired appliances and equipment. Install union between valve and appliances or equipment.
- E. Sediment Traps: Install tee fitting with capped nipple in bottom to form drip, as close as practical to inlet of each appliance.

### 3.8 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for piping and valve identification.
- B. Install detectable warning tape directly above gas piping, 12 inches below finished grade, except 6 inches below subgrade under pavements and slabs.

### 3.9 PAINTING

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 09 Section "Exterior Painting" and Division 09 Section "Interior Painting" for painting interior and exterior LPG piping.

- B. Paint exposed, interior metal piping, valves, service regulators, service meters and meter bars, earthquake valves, and piping specialties, except components with factory-applied paint or protective coating.
  - 1. Latex Over Alkyd Primer System: MPI INT 5.1Q.
    - a. Prime Coat: Alkyd anticorrosive metal primer.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Interior latex matching topcoat.
    - c. Topcoat: Interior latex (flat).
    - d. Color: Gray.
  - 2. Alkyd System: MPI INT 5.1E.
    - a. Prime Coat: Alkyd anticorrosive metal primer.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Interior alkyd matching topcoat.
    - c. Topcoat: Interior alkyd (flat).
    - d. Color: Gray.
- C. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-applied finishes with materials and by procedures to match original factory finish.

### 3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Test, inspect, and purge LPG according to NFPA 58 and the International Fuel Gas Code and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. LPG piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.11 INDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE FOR SYSTEM PRESSURES LESS THAN 0.5 PSIG

- A. Aboveground, branch piping NPS 1 and smaller shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Corrugated stainless-steel tubing with mechanical fittings having socket or threaded ends to match adjacent piping.
  - 2. Annealed-temper copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints.
  - 3. Aluminum tube with flared fittings and joints.
  - 4. Schedule 40, steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
- B. Aboveground, distribution piping shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Schedule 40, steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.

2. Schedule 40, steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.
  3. Drawn-temper copper tube, Type L with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints.
- C. Containment Conduit: Schedule 40, steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.
- D. Containment Conduit Vent Piping: Schedule 40, steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded or wrought-steel fittings with welded joints. Coat underground pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.

### 3.12 ABOVEGROUND MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Aboveground Liquid Piping:
1. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
- B. Distribution piping valves for pipe NPS 2 and smaller shall be one of the following:
1. One-piece, bronze ball valve with bronze trim.
  2. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
  3. Bronze plug valve.
- C. Distribution piping valves for pipe NPS 2-1/2 and larger shall be one of the following:
1. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
  2. Bronze plug valve.
  3. Cast-iron, nonlubricated plug valve.
- D. Valves in branch piping for single appliance shall be one of the following:
1. One-piece, bronze ball valve with bronze trim.
  2. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
  3. Bronze plug valve.

END OF SECTION 231126

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 232300 - REFRIGERANT PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Refrigerant pipes and fittings.
  - 2. Refrigerant piping valves and specialties.
  - 3. Refrigerants.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve, refrigerant piping, and piping specialty.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For refrigerant valves and piping specialties to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
- B. Comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Code for Refrigeration Systems."
- C. Comply with ASME B31.5, "Refrigeration Piping and Heat Transfer Components."

## 1.7 PRODUCT STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Store piping with end caps in place to ensure that piping interior and exterior are clean when installed.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-410A:
  - 1. Suction Lines for Air-Conditioning Applications: 300 psig.
  - 2. Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: 535 psig.
  - 3. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 535 psig.

### 2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Copper Tube: ASTM B 280, Type ACR.
- B. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.
- C. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.
- D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32. Use 95-5 tin antimony or alloy HB solder to join copper socket fittings on copper pipe.
- E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M.
- F. Flexible Connectors:
  - 1. Body: Tin-bronze bellows with woven, flexible, tinned-bronze-wire-reinforced protective jacket.
  - 2. End Connections: Socket ends.
  - 3. Offset Performance: Capable of minimum 3/4-inch misalignment in minimum 7-inch-long assembly.
  - 4. Working Pressure Rating: Factory test at minimum 500 psig.
  - 5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

### 2.3 VALVES AND SPECIALTIES

- A. Diaphragm Packless Valves:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

- a. Danfoss Inc.
    - b. Parker Hannifin Corp.
  - 2. Body and Bonnet: Forged brass or cast bronze; globe design with straight-through or angle pattern.
  - 3. Diaphragm: Phosphor bronze and stainless steel with stainless-steel spring.
  - 4. Operator: Rising stem and hand wheel.
  - 5. Seat: Nylon.
  - 6. End Connections: Socket, union, or flanged.
  - 7. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
  - 8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.
- B. Packed-Angle Valves:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Danfoss Inc.
    - b. Parker Hannifin Corp.
  - 2. Body and Bonnet: Forged brass or cast bronze.
  - 3. Packing: Molded stem, back seating, and replaceable under pressure.
  - 4. Operator: Rising stem.
  - 5. Seat: Nonrotating, self-aligning polytetrafluoroethylene.
  - 6. Seal Cap: Forged-brass or valox hex cap.
  - 7. End Connections: Socket, union, threaded, or flanged.
  - 8. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
  - 9. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.
- C. Check Valves:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
    - b. Danfoss Inc.
    - c. Parker Hannifin Corp.
  - 2. Body: Ductile iron, forged brass, or cast bronze; globe pattern.
  - 3. Bonnet: Bolted ductile iron, forged brass, or cast bronze; or brass hex plug.
  - 4. Piston: Removable polytetrafluoroethylene seat.
  - 5. Closing Spring: Stainless steel.
  - 6. Manual Opening Stem: Seal cap, plated-steel stem, and graphite seal.
  - 7. End Connections: Socket, union, threaded, or flanged.
  - 8. Maximum Opening Pressure: 0.50 psig.
  - 9. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.

10. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

D. Service Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Danfoss Inc.
  - b. Parker Hannifin Corp.
2. Body: Forged brass with brass cap including key end to remove core.
3. Core: Removable ball-type check valve with stainless-steel spring.
4. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
5. End Connections: Copper spring.
6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.

E. Solenoid Valves: Comply with AHRI 760 and UL 429; listed and labeled by a National Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL).

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Danfoss Inc.
  - b. Parker Hannifin Corp.
2. Body and Bonnet: Plated steel.
3. Solenoid Tube, Plunger, Closing Spring, and Seat Orifice: Stainless steel.
4. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
5. End Connections: Threaded.
6. Electrical: Molded, watertight coil in NEMA 250 enclosure of type required by location with 1/2-inch conduit adapter, and 24-V ac coil.
7. Working Pressure Rating: 400 psig.
8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

F. Safety Relief Valves: Comply with 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code; listed and labeled by an NRTL.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Danfoss Inc.
  - b. Parker Hannifin Corp.
2. Body and Bonnet: Ductile iron and steel, with neoprene O-ring seal.
3. Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.



4. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
5. End Connections: Threaded.
6. Working Pressure Rating: 400 psig.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

G. Thermostatic Expansion Valves: Comply with AHRI 750.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Danfoss Inc.
  - b. Emerson Climate Technologies.
2. Body, Bonnet, and Seal Cap: Forged brass or steel.
3. Diaphragm, Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
4. Packing and Gaskets: Non-asbestos.
5. Capillary and Bulb: Copper tubing filled with refrigerant charge.
6. Suction Temperature: 40 deg F.
7. Superheat: Adjustable.
8. Reverse-flow option (for heat-pump applications).
9. End Connections: Socket, flare, or threaded union.
10. Working Pressure Rating: 700 psig.

H. Hot-Gas Bypass Valves: Comply with UL 429; listed and labeled by an NRTL.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Danfoss Inc.
  - b. Parker Hannifin Corp.
2. Body, Bonnet, and Seal Cap: Ductile iron or steel.
3. Diaphragm, Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
4. Packing and Gaskets: Non-asbestos.
5. Solenoid Tube, Plunger, Closing Spring, and Seat Orifice: Stainless steel.
6. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
7. Equalizer: Internal.
8. Electrical: Molded, watertight coil in NEMA 250 enclosure of type required by location with 1/2-inch conduit adapter and 24-V ac coil.
9. End Connections: Socket.
10. Throttling Range: Maximum 5 psig.
11. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
12. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

I. Straight-Type Strainers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Danfoss Inc.
  - b. Parker Hannifin Corp.
2. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
3. Screen: 100-mesh stainless steel.
4. End Connections: Socket or flare.
5. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
6. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

J. Moisture/Liquid Indicators:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Danfoss Inc.
  - b. Parker Hannifin Corp.
2. Body: Forged brass.
3. Window: Replaceable, clear, fused glass window with indicating element protected by filter screen.
4. Indicator: Color coded to show moisture content in parts per million (ppm).
5. Minimum Moisture Indicator Sensitivity: Indicate moisture above 60 ppm.
6. End Connections: Socket or flare.
7. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

K. Replaceable-Core Filter Dryers: Comply with AHRI 730.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Danfoss Inc.
  - b. Parker Hannifin Corp.
2. Body and Cover: Painted-steel shell with ductile-iron cover, stainless-steel screws, and neoprene gaskets.
3. Filter Media: 10 micron, pleated with integral end rings; stainless-steel support.
4. Desiccant Media: Activated alumina.
5. Designed for reverse flow (for heat-pump applications).
6. End Connections: Socket.
7. Access Ports: NPS 1/4 connections at entering and leaving sides for pressure differential measurement.

8. Maximum Pressure Loss: 2 psig.
9. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
10. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

L. Permanent Filter Dryers: Comply with AHRI 730.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Danfoss Inc.
  - b. Parker Hannifin Corp.
2. Body and Cover: Painted-steel shell.
3. Filter Media: 10 micron, pleated with integral end rings; stainless-steel support.
4. Desiccant Media: Activated alumina.
5. Designed for reverse flow (for heat-pump applications).
6. End Connections: Socket.
7. Access Ports: NPS 1/4 connections at entering and leaving sides for pressure differential measurement.
8. Maximum Pressure Loss: 2 psig.
9. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
10. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

M. Mufflers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Danfoss Inc.
  - b. Emerson Climate Technologies.
2. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
3. End Connections: Socket or flare.
4. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

N. Receivers: Comply with AHRI 495.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Heldon Products; Henry Technologies.
2. Comply with 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
3. Comply with UL 207; listed and labeled by an NRTL.

4. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
5. Tappings: Inlet, outlet, liquid level indicator, and safety relief valve.
6. End Connections: Socket or threaded.
7. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

O. Liquid Accumulators: Comply with AHRI 495.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Emerson Climate Technologies.
  - b. Parker Hannifin Corp.
2. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
3. End Connections: Socket or threaded.
4. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

## 2.4 REFRIGERANTS

A. ASHRAE 34, R-410A: Pentafluoroethane/Difluoromethane.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Arkema Inc.
  - b. DuPont Fluorochemicals Div.
  - c. Genetron Refrigerants; Honeywell International Inc.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS FOR REFRIGERANT R-410A

- A. Suction Lines NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller for Conventional Air-Conditioning Applications: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.
- B. Suction Lines NPS 2 to NPS 4 for Conventional Air-Conditioning Applications: Copper, Type ACR, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.
- C. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines:
  1. NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.

2. NPS 2 to NPS 4: Copper, Type ACR, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.
- D. Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping: Copper, Type ACR, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with soldered joints.

### 3.2 VALVE AND SPECIALTY APPLICATIONS

- A. Install diaphragm packless valves in suction and discharge lines of compressor.
- B. Install service valves for gage taps at inlet and outlet of hot-gas bypass valves and strainers if they are not an integral part of valves and strainers.
- C. Install a check valve at the compressor discharge and a liquid accumulator at the compressor suction connection.
- D. Except as otherwise indicated, install diaphragm packless valves on inlet and outlet side of filter dryers.
- E. Install a full-size, three-valve bypass around filter dryers.
- F. Install solenoid valves upstream from each expansion valve and hot-gas bypass valve. Install solenoid valves in horizontal lines with coil at top.
- G. Install thermostatic expansion valves as close as possible to distributors on evaporators.
  1. Install valve so diaphragm case is warmer than bulb.
  2. Secure bulb to clean, straight, horizontal section of suction line using two bulb straps. Do not mount bulb in a trap or at bottom of the line.
  3. If external equalizer lines are required, make connection where it will reflect suction-line pressure at bulb location.
- H. Install safety relief valves where required by 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Pipe safety-relief-valve discharge line to outside according to ASHRAE 15.
- I. Install moisture/liquid indicators in liquid line at the inlet of the thermostatic expansion valve or at the inlet of the evaporator coil capillary tube.
- J. Install strainers upstream from and adjacent to the following unless they are furnished as an integral assembly for the device being protected:
  1. Solenoid valves.
  2. Thermostatic expansion valves.
  3. Hot-gas bypass valves.
  4. Compressor.
- K. Install filter dryers in liquid line between compressor and thermostatic expansion valve.

- L. Install receivers sized to accommodate pump-down charge.
- M. Install flexible connectors at compressors.

### 3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems; indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings.
- B. Install refrigerant piping according to ASHRAE 15.
- C. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping adjacent to machines to allow service and maintenance.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- J. Refer to Division 23 Section "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC" and Division 23 Section "Sequence of Operations for HVAC DDC" for solenoid valve controllers, control wiring, and sequence of operation.
- K. Install piping as short and direct as possible, with a minimum number of joints, elbows, and fittings.
- L. Arrange piping to allow inspection and service of refrigeration equipment. Install valves and specialties in accessible locations to allow for service and inspection. Install access doors or panels as specified in Division 08 Section "Access Doors and Frames" if valves or equipment requiring maintenance is concealed behind finished surfaces.
- M. Install refrigerant piping in protective conduit where installed below ground.
- N. Install refrigerant piping in rigid or flexible conduit in locations where exposed to mechanical injury.

O. Slope refrigerant piping as follows:

1. Install horizontal hot-gas discharge piping with a uniform slope downward away from compressor.
2. Install horizontal suction lines with a uniform slope downward to compressor.
3. Install traps and double risers to entrain oil in vertical runs.
4. Liquid lines may be installed level.

P. When brazing or soldering, remove solenoid-valve coils and sight glasses; also remove valve stems, seats, and packing, and accessible internal parts of refrigerant specialties. Do not apply heat near expansion-valve bulb.

Q. Install piping with adequate clearance between pipe and adjacent walls and hangers or between pipes for insulation installation.

R. Identify refrigerant piping and valves according to Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

S. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Division 23 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."

T. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Division 23 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."

U. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Division 23 Section "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."

### 3.4 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.

B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.

C. Fill pipe and fittings with an inert gas (nitrogen or carbon dioxide), during brazing or welding, to prevent scale formation.

D. Soldered Joints: Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."

E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," Chapter "Pipe and Tube."

1. Use Type BCuP (copper-phosphorus) alloy for joining copper socket fittings with copper pipe.
2. Use Type BAg (cadmium-free silver) alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.

F. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12M/D10.12.

- G. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.

### 3.5 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with requirements for pipe hangers and supports specified in Division 23 Section "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Install the following pipe attachments:
  - 1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal runs less than 20 feet long.
  - 2. Roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal runs 20 feet or longer.
  - 3. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet or longer, supported on a trapeze.
  - 4. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
  - 5. Copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.
- C. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - 1. NPS 1/2: Maximum span, 60 inches; minimum rod, 1/4 inch.
  - 2. NPS 5/8: Maximum span, 60 inches; minimum rod, 1/4 inch.
  - 3. NPS 1: Maximum span, 72 inches; minimum rod, 1/4 inch.
  - 4. NPS 1-1/4: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod, 3/8 inch.
  - 5. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod, 3/8 inch.
  - 6. NPS 2: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod, 3/8 inch.
  - 7. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 108 inches; minimum rod, 3/8 inch.
  - 8. NPS 3: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod, 3/8 inch.
  - 9. NPS 4: Maximum span, 12 feet; minimum rod, 1/2 inch.
- D. Support multifloor vertical runs at least at each floor.

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. Comply with ASME B31.5, Chapter VI.
  - 2. Test refrigerant piping, specialties, and receivers. Isolate compressor, condenser, evaporator, and safety devices from test pressure if they are not rated above the test pressure.
  - 3. Test high- and low-pressure side piping of each system separately at not less than the pressures indicated in "Performance Requirements" Article.
    - a. Fill system with nitrogen to the required test pressure.
    - b. System shall maintain test pressure at the manifold gage throughout duration of test.



- c. Test joints and fittings with electronic leak detector or by brushing a small amount of soap and glycerin solution over joints.
- d. Remake leaking joints using new materials, and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.

B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.7 SYSTEM CHARGING

A. Charge system using the following procedures:

- 1. Install core in filter dryers after leak test but before evacuation.
- 2. Evacuate entire refrigerant system with a vacuum pump to 500 micrometers. If vacuum holds for 12 hours, system is ready for charging.
- 3. Break vacuum with refrigerant gas, allowing pressure to build up to 2 psig.
- 4. Charge system with a new filter-dryer core in charging line.

### 3.8 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust thermostatic expansion valve to obtain proper evaporator superheat.

B. Adjust high- and low-pressure switch settings to avoid short cycling in response to fluctuating suction pressure.

C. Adjust set-point temperature of air-conditioning or chilled-water controllers to the system design temperature.

D. Perform the following adjustments before operating the refrigeration system, according to manufacturer's written instructions:

- 1. Open shutoff valves in condenser water circuit.
- 2. Verify that compressor oil level is correct.
- 3. Open compressor suction and discharge valves.
- 4. Open refrigerant valves except bypass valves that are used for other purposes.
- 5. Check open compressor-motor alignment and verify lubrication for motors and bearings.

E. Replace core of replaceable filter dryer after system has been adjusted and after design flow rates and pressures are established.

END OF SECTION 232300

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 233113 - METAL DUCTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Single-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
2. Single-wall round ducts and fittings.
3. Sheet metal materials.
4. Duct liner.
5. Sealant and gaskets.
6. Hangers and supports.

- B. Related Sections:

1. Division 23 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing requirements for metal ducts.
2. Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories" for dampers, sound-control devices, duct-mounting access doors and panels, turning vanes, and flexible ducts.

#### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Duct Design: Duct construction, including sheet metal thicknesses, seam and joint construction, reinforcements, and hangers and supports, shall comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and performance requirements and design criteria indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article.
- B. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings:

1. Fabrication, assembly, and installation, including plans, elevations, sections, components, and attachments to other work.

2. Factory- and shop-fabricated ducts and fittings.
3. Duct layout indicating sizes, configuration, liner material, and static-pressure classes.
4. Elevation of top of ducts.
5. Dimensions of main duct runs from building grid lines.
6. Fittings.
7. Reinforcement and spacing.
8. Seam and joint construction.
9. Penetrations through fire-rated and other partitions.
10. Equipment installation based on equipment being used on Project.
11. Locations for duct accessories, including dampers, turning vanes, and access doors and panels.
12. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment and vibration isolation.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
  1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for hangers and supports.
  2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum," for aluminum supports.
  3. AWS D9.1M/D9.1, "Sheet Metal Welding Code," for duct joint and seam welding.
- B. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."
- C. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6.4.4 - "HVAC System Construction and Insulation."

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 SINGLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support

intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 4, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

## 2.2 SINGLE-WALL ROUND DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
    - b. McGill AirFlow LLC.
    - c. SEMCO LLC.
- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
  - 1. Transverse Joints in Ducts Larger Than 60 Inches in Diameter: Flanged.
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Round Duct Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
  - 1. Fabricate round ducts larger than 90 inches in diameter with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
  - 2. Fabricate flat-oval ducts larger than 72 inches in width (major dimension) with butt-welded longitudinal seams.

- D. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

## 2.3 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

- A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.
- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
  - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90.
  - 2. Finishes for Surfaces Exposed to View: Mill phosphatized.
- C. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
  - 1. Where black- and galvanized-steel shapes and plates are used to reinforce aluminum ducts, isolate the different metals with butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM gasket materials.
- D. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

## 2.4 DUCT LINER

- A. Fibrous-Glass Duct Liner: Comply with ASTM C 1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corporation.
    - b. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
    - c. Knauf Insulation.
    - d. Owens Corning.
    - 1) Type I, Flexible: 0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.
    - 2) Type II, Rigid: 0.23 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.

2. Antimicrobial Erosion-Resistant Coating: Apply to the surface of the liner that will form the interior surface of the duct to act as a moisture repellent and erosion-resistant coating. Antimicrobial compound shall be tested for efficacy by an NRTL and registered by the EPA for use in HVAC systems.
  3. Water-Based Liner Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B and with ASTM C 916.
    - a. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
    - b. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Duct Liner: Preformed, cellular, closed-cell, sheet materials complying with ASTM C 534, Type II, Grade 1; and with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.
    - b. Armacell LLC.
    - c. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
  2. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
  3. Liner Adhesive: As recommended by insulation manufacturer and complying with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
    - a. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
    - b. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- C. Natural-Fiber Duct Liner: 85 percent cotton, 10 percent borate, and 5 percent polybinding fibers, treated with a microbial growth inhibitor and complying with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
  2. Maximum Thermal Conductivity: 0.24 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature when tested according to ASTM C 518.

3. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to ASTM E 84; certified by an NRTL.
4. Liner Adhesive: As recommended by insulation manufacturer and complying with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
  - a. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  - b. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

D. Insulation Pins and Washers:

1. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.
2. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick galvanized steel; with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.

E. Shop Application of Duct Liner: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 7-11, "Flexible Duct Liner Installation."

1. Adhere a single layer of indicated thickness of duct liner with at least 90 percent adhesive coverage at liner contact surface area. Attaining indicated thickness with multiple layers of duct liner is prohibited.
2. Apply adhesive to transverse edges of liner facing upstream that do not receive metal nosing.
3. Butt transverse joints without gaps, and coat joint with adhesive.
4. Fold and compress liner in corners of rectangular ducts or cut and fit to ensure butted-edge overlapping.
5. Do not apply liner in rectangular ducts with longitudinal joints, except at corners of ducts, unless duct size and dimensions of standard liner make longitudinal joints necessary.
6. Apply adhesive coating on longitudinal seams in ducts with air velocity of 2500 fpm.
7. Secure liner with mechanical fasteners 4 inches from corners and at intervals not exceeding 12 inches transversely; at 3 inches from transverse joints and at intervals not exceeding 18 inches longitudinally.
8. Secure transversely oriented liner edges facing the airstream with metal nosings that have either channel or "Z" profiles or are integrally formed from duct wall. Fabricate edge facings at the following locations:
  - a. Fan discharges.
  - b. Intervals of lined duct preceding unlined duct.
  - c. Upstream edges of transverse joints in ducts where air velocities are higher than 2500 fpm or where indicated.



9. Secure insulation between perforated sheet metal inner duct of same thickness as specified for outer shell. Use mechanical fasteners that maintain inner duct at uniform distance from outer shell without compressing insulation.
  - a. Sheet Metal Inner Duct Perforations: 3/32-inch diameter, with an overall open area of 23 percent.
10. Terminate inner ducts with buildouts attached to fire-damper sleeves, dampers, turning vane assemblies, or other devices. Fabricated buildouts (metal hat sections) or other buildout means are optional; when used, secure buildouts to duct walls with bolts, screws, rivets, or welds.

## 2.5 SEALANT AND GASKETS

- A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets shall be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
- B. Two-Part Tape Sealing System:
  1. Tape: Woven cotton fiber impregnated with mineral gypsum and modified acrylic/silicone activator to react exothermically with tape to form hard, durable, airtight seal.
  2. Tape Width: 3 inches.
  3. Sealant: Modified styrene acrylic.
  4. Water resistant.
  5. Mold and mildew resistant.
  6. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive and negative.
  7. Service: Indoor and outdoor.
  8. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
  9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum.
  10. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  11. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- C. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:
  1. Application Method: Brush on.
  2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
  3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
  4. Water resistant.
  5. Mold and mildew resistant.
  6. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
  7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive and negative.

8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.

D. Solvent-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:

1. Application Method: Brush on.
2. Base: Synthetic rubber resin.
3. Solvent: Toluene and heptane.
4. Solids Content: Minimum 60 percent.
5. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 60.
6. Water resistant.
7. Mold and mildew resistant.
8. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
9. VOC: Maximum 395 g/L.
10. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
11. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive or negative.
12. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
13. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.

E. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C 920.

1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
2. Type: S.
3. Grade: NS.
4. Class: 25.
5. Use: O.
6. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
7. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

F. Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.

G. Round Duct Joint O-Ring Seals:

1. Seal shall provide maximum leakage class of 3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg and shall be rated for 10-inch wg static-pressure class, positive or negative.
2. EPDM O-ring to seal in concave bead in coupling or fitting spigot.
3. Double-lipped, EPDM O-ring seal, mechanically fastened to factory-fabricated couplings and fitting spigots.

## 2.6 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Cadmium-plated steel rods and nuts.
- B. Hanger Rods for Corrosive Environments: Electrogalvanized, all-thread rods or galvanized rods with threads painted with zinc-chromate primer after installation.
- C. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."
- D. Steel Cables for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel complying with ASTM A 603.
- E. Steel Cable End Connections: Cadmium-plated steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.
- F. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.
- G. Trapeze and Riser Supports:
  - 1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 DUCT INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations. Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install ducts according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install round ducts in maximum practical lengths.
- D. Install ducts with fewest possible joints.
- E. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.
- F. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.

- G. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.
- H. Install ducts with a clearance of 1 inch, plus allowance for insulation thickness.
- I. Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment rooms and enclosures.
- J. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches.
- K. Where ducts pass through fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls, install fire dampers. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers.
- L. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials. Comply with SMACNA's "IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction," Appendix G, "Duct Cleanliness for New Construction Guidelines."

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF EXPOSED DUCTWORK

- A. Protect ducts exposed in finished spaces from being dented, scratched, or damaged.
- B. Trim duct sealants flush with metal. Create a smooth and uniform exposed bead. Do not use two-part tape sealing system.
- C. Grind welds to provide smooth surface free of burrs, sharp edges, and weld splatter. When welding stainless steel with a No. 3 or 4 finish, grind the welds flush, polish the exposed welds, and treat the welds to remove discoloration caused by welding.
- D. Maintain consistency, symmetry, and uniformity in the arrangement and fabrication of fittings, hangers and supports, duct accessories, and air outlets.
- E. Repair or replace damaged sections and finished work that does not comply with these requirements.

### 3.3 DUCT SEALING

- A. Seal ducts for duct static-pressure, seal classes, and leakage classes specified in "Duct Schedule" Article according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

### 3.4 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 5, "Hangers and Supports."
- B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.
  - 1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
  - 2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.
  - 3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes or for slabs more than 4 inches thick.
  - 4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
  - 5. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for seismic restraints.
- C. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within 24 inches of each elbow and within 48 inches of each branch intersection.
- D. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.
- E. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum intervals of 16 feet.
- F. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

### 3.5 CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors complying with Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.

### 3.6 PAINTING

- A. Paint interior of metal ducts that are visible through registers and grilles and that do not have duct liner. Apply one coat of flat, black, latex paint over a compatible galvanized-steel primer. Paint materials and application requirements are specified in Division 09 Section "Exterior Painting" and Division 09 Section "Interior Painting."

### 3.7 START UP

- A. Air Balance: Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

### 3.8 DUCT SCHEDULE

- A. Fabricate ducts with galvanized sheet steel except as otherwise indicated and as follows:

- B. Supply Ducts:

- 1. Ducts Connected to Constant-Volume Air-Handling Units:

- a. Pressure Class: Positive 2-inch wg.
    - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
    - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
    - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round: 6.

- 2. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:

- a. Pressure Class: Positive 2-inch wg.
    - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
    - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
    - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round: 6.

- C. Return Ducts:

- 1. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:

- a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
    - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
    - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
    - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round: 6.

- 2. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:

- a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
    - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
    - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
    - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round: 6.

- D. Exhaust Ducts:

- 1. Ducts Connected to Fans Exhausting (ASHRAE 62.1, Class 1 and 2) Air:

- a. Pressure Class: Negative 2-inch wg.
    - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A if negative pressure, and A if positive pressure.
    - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.

- d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round: 6.
- 2. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:
  - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
  - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A if negative pressure, and A if positive pressure.
  - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
  - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round: 6.
- 3. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:
  - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
  - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A if negative pressure, and A if positive pressure.
  - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
  - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round: 6.
- E. Intermediate Reinforcement:
  - 1. Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel.
- F. Liner:
  - 1. Return Air Ducts: Fibrous glass, Type I; flexible elastomeric; or natural fiber, 1 inch thick.
- G. Elbow Configuration:
  - 1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
    - a. Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower:
      - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
      - 2) Mitered Type RE 4 without vanes.
    - b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm:
      - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio.
      - 2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
      - 3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
    - c. Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher:
      - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
      - 2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.

- 3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
2. Round Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "Round Duct Elbows."
  - a. Minimum Radius-to-Diameter Ratio and Elbow Segments: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 3-1, "Mitered Elbows." Elbows with less than 90-degree change of direction have proportionately fewer segments.
    - 1) Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower: 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and three segments for 90-degree elbow.
    - 2) Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm: 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and four segments for 90-degree elbow.
    - 3) Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher: 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and five segments for 90-degree elbow.
    - 4) Radius-to Diameter Ratio: 1.5.
  - b. Round Elbows, 12 Inches and Smaller in Diameter: Stamped or pleated.
  - c. Round Elbows, 14 Inches and Larger in Diameter: Standing seam.

H. Branch Configuration:

1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-6, "Branch Connection."
  - a. Rectangular Main to Rectangular Branch: 45-degree entry.
  - b. Rectangular Main to Round Branch: Spin in.
2. Round and Flat Oval: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees." Saddle taps are permitted in existing duct.
  - a. Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower: 90-degree tap.
  - b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm: Conical tap.
  - c. Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher: 45-degree lateral.

END OF SECTION 233113



## SECTION 233300 - AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Backdraft and pressure relief dampers.
2. Manual volume dampers.
3. Control dampers.
4. Fire dampers.
5. Ceiling radiation dampers.
6. Combination fire and smoke dampers.
7. Flange connectors.
8. Turning vanes.
9. Duct-mounted access doors.
10. Flexible connectors.
11. Duct accessory hardware.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Division 23 Section "Flexible Ducts" for insulated and non-insulated flexible ducts.
2. Division 28 Section "Digital, Addressable Fire-Alarm System" for duct-mounted fire and smoke detectors.

#### 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air duct accessories to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

#### 1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  1. Fusible Links: Furnish quantity equal to 10 percent of amount installed.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

- A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

### 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
  - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90.
  - 2. Exposed-Surface Finish: Mill phosphatized.
- B. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum and stainless-steel ducts.
- C. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

### 2.3 BACKDRAFT AND PRESSURE RELIEF DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Lloyd Industries, Inc.
  - 2. Ruskin Company.
- B. Description: Gravity balanced.
- C. Maximum Air Velocity: 1000 fpm.
- D. Maximum System Pressure: 2-inch wg.
- E. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.05-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel, with welded corners or mechanically attached and mounting flange.
- F. Blades: Multiple single-piece blades, center pivoted, maximum 6-inch width, 0.025-inch-thick, roll-formed aluminum with sealed edges.
- G. Blade Action: Parallel.

- H. Blade Seals: Felt.
- I. Blade Axles:
  - 1. Material: Nonferrous metal.
  - 2. Diameter: 0.20 inch.
- J. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.
- K. Return Spring: Adjustable tension.
- L. Bearings: Synthetic pivot bushings.
- M. Accessories:
  - 1. Adjustment device to permit setting for varying differential static pressure.
  - 2. Counterweights and spring-assist kits for vertical airflow installations.
  - 3. Electric actuators.
  - 4. Chain pulls.
  - 5. Screen Mounting: Front mounted in sleeve.
    - a. Sleeve Thickness: 20 gage minimum.
    - b. Sleeve Length: 6 inches minimum.
  - 6. Screen Mounting: Rear mounted.
  - 7. Screen Material: Galvanized steel.
  - 8. Screen Type: Bird.
  - 9. 90-degree stops.

## 2.4 MANUAL VOLUME DAMPERS

- A. Standard, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Pottorff.
    - b. Ruskin Company.
  - 2. Standard leakage rating.
  - 3. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
  - 4. Frames:
    - a. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.094-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel.
    - b. Mitered and welded corners.
    - c. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.

5. Blades:
  - a. Multiple or single blade.
  - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
  - c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
  - d. Galvanized-steel, 0.064 inch thick.
6. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
7. Bearings:
  - a. Oil-impregnated bronze.
  - b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
8. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.

B. Jackshaft:

1. Size: 0.5-inch diameter.
2. Material: Galvanized-steel pipe rotating within pipe-bearing assembly mounted on supports at each mullion and at each end of multiple-damper assemblies.
3. Length and Number of Mountings: As required to connect linkage of each damper in multiple-damper assembly.

C. Damper Hardware:

1. Zinc-plated, die-cast core with dial and handle made of 3/32-inch-thick zinc-plated steel, and a 3/4-inch hexagon locking nut.
2. Include center hole to suit damper operating-rod size.
3. Include elevated platform for insulated duct mounting.

## 2.5 CONTROL DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  1. Nailor Industries Inc.
  2. Pottorff.
  3. Ruskin Company.
- B. Low-leakage rating and bearing AMCA's Certified Ratings Seal for both air performance and air leakage.
- C. Frames:
  1. Hat shaped.
  2. 0.094-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel.
  3. Mitered and welded corners.

D. Blades:

1. Multiple blade with maximum blade width of 6 inches.
2. Parallel- and opposed-blade design.
3. Galvanized-steel.
4. 0.064 inch thick single skin.
5. Blade Edging: Closed-cell neoprene.
6. Blade Edging: Inflatable seal blade edging, or replaceable rubber seals.

E. Blade Axles: 1/2-inch-diameter; galvanized steel; blade-linkage hardware of zinc-plated steel and brass; ends sealed against blade bearings.

1. Operating Temperature Range: From minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.

F. Bearings:

1. Oil-impregnated bronze.
2. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
3. Thrust bearings at each end of every blade.

## 2.6 FIRE DAMPERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

1. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
2. Pottorff.
3. Ruskin Company.

B. Type: Static and dynamic; rated and labeled according to UL 555 by an NRTL.

C. Closing rating in ducts up to 4-inch wg static pressure class and minimum 2000-fpm velocity.

D. Fire Rating: 1-1/2 and 3 hours.

E. Frame: Curtain type with blades outside airstream; fabricated with roll-formed, 0.034-inch-thick galvanized steel; with mitered and interlocking corners.

F. Mounting Sleeve: Factory- or field-installed, galvanized sheet steel.

1. Minimum Thickness: 0.05-inch-thick, as indicated, and of length to suit application.
2. Exception: Omit sleeve where damper-frame width permits direct attachment of perimeter mounting angles on each side of wall or floor; thickness of damper frame must comply with sleeve requirements.

G. Mounting Orientation: Vertical or horizontal as indicated.

- H. Blades: Roll-formed, interlocking, 0.024-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel. In place of interlocking blades, use full-length, 0.034-inch-thick, galvanized-steel blade connectors.
- I. Horizontal Dampers: Include blade lock and stainless-steel closure spring.
- J. Heat-Responsive Device: Replaceable, 165 deg F rated, fusible links.

## 2.7 CEILING RADIATION DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Nailor Industries Inc.
  - 2. Pottorff.
  - 3. Ruskin Company.
- B. General Requirements:
  - 1. Labeled according to UL 555C by an NRTL.
  - 2. Comply with construction details for tested floor- and roof-ceiling assemblies as indicated in UL's "Fire Resistance Directory."
- C. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, round or rectangular, style to suit ceiling construction.
- D. Blades: Galvanized sheet steel with refractory insulation.
- E. Heat-Responsive Device: Replaceable, 165 deg F rated, fusible links.
- F. Fire Rating: 1 hours.

## 2.8 COMBINATION FIRE AND SMOKE DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
  - 2. Pottorff.
  - 3. Ruskin Company.
- B. Type: Dynamic; rated and labeled according to UL 555 and UL 555S by an NRTL.
- C. Closing rating in ducts up to 4-inch wg static pressure class and minimum 2000-fpm velocity.
- D. Fire Rating: 1-1/2 and 3 hours.
- E. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.094-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel, with welded corners and mounting flange.

- F. Heat-Responsive Device: Resettable, 165 deg F rated, fusible links.
- G. Smoke Detector: Integral, factory wired for single-point connection.
- H. Blades: Roll-formed, horizontal, interlocking, 0.063-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel.
- I. Leakage: Class I <Insert class>.
- J. Rated pressure and velocity to exceed design airflow conditions.
- K. Mounting Sleeve: Factory-installed, 0.039-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel; length to suit wall or floor application.
- L. Master control panel for use in dynamic smoke-management systems.
- M. Damper Motors: Modulating or two-position action.
- N. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
  - 1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
  - 2. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Division 23 Section "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC."
  - 3. Permanent-Split-Capacitor or Shaded-Pole Motors: With oil-immersed and sealed gear trains.
  - 4. Spring-Return Motors: Equip with an integral spiral-spring mechanism where indicated. Enclose entire spring mechanism in a removable housing designed for service or adjustments. Size for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque rating of 150 in. x lbf.
  - 5. Outdoor Motors and Motors in Outdoor-Air Intakes: Equip with O-ring gaskets designed to make motors weatherproof. Equip motors with internal heaters to permit normal operation at minus 40 deg F.
  - 6. Nonspring-Return Motors: For dampers larger than 25 sq. ft., size motor for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque rating of 300 in. x lbf.
  - 7. Electrical Connection: 115 V, single phase, 60 Hz.
- O. Accessories:
  - 1. Auxiliary switches for signaling.
  - 2. Test and reset switches, damper mounted.

## 2.9 FLANGE CONNECTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
  2. Ward Industries; a brand of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
- B. Description: Add-on or roll-formed, factory-fabricated, slide-on transverse flange connectors, gaskets, and components.
- C. Material: Galvanized steel.
- D. Gage and Shape: Match connecting ductwork.

## 2.10 TURNING VANES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. CL WARD & Family Inc.
  2. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
  3. Duro Dyne Inc.
- B. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Metal Ducts: Curved blades of galvanized sheet steel; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
1. Acoustic Turning Vanes: Fabricate airfoil-shaped aluminum extrusions with perforated faces and fibrous-glass fill.
- C. General Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
- D. Vane Construction: Single wall.

## 2.11 DUCT-MOUNTED ACCESS DOORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. CL WARD & Family Inc.
  2. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
  3. Pottorff.
- B. Duct-Mounted Access Doors: Fabricate access panels according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 7-2, "Duct Access Doors and Panels," and 7-3, "Access Doors - Round Duct."
1. Door:
    - a. Double wall, rectangular.



- b. Galvanized sheet metal with insulation fill and thickness as indicated for duct pressure class.
  - c. Vision panel.
  - d. Hinges and Latches: 1-by-1-inch butt or piano hinge and cam latches.
  - e. Fabricate doors airtight and suitable for duct pressure class.
- 2. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, with bend-over tabs and foam gaskets.
- 3. Number of Hinges and Locks:
  - a. Access Doors Less Than 12 Inches Square: No hinges and two sash locks.
  - b. Access Doors up to 18 Inches Square: Two hinges and two sash locks.
  - c. Access Doors up to 24 by 48 Inches: Three hinges and two compression latches.
  - d. Access Doors Larger Than 24 by 48 Inches: Four hinges and two compression latches with outside and inside handles.

## 2.12 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
  - 2. Duro Dyne Inc.
  - 3. Ventfabrics, Inc.
- B. Materials: Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics.
- C. Coatings and Adhesives: Comply with UL 181, Class 1.
- D. Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip 3-1/2 inches wide attached to two strips of 2-3/4-inch-wide, 0.028-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel or 0.032-inch-thick aluminum sheets. Provide metal compatible with connected ducts.
- E. Indoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.
  - 1. Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd..
  - 2. Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch in the warp and 360 lbf/inch in the filling.
  - 3. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.

## 2.13 DUCT ACCESSORY HARDWARE

- A. Instrument Test Holes: Cast iron or cast aluminum to suit duct material, including screw cap and gasket. Size to allow insertion of pitot tube and other testing instruments and of length to suit duct-insulation thickness.
- B. Adhesives: High strength, quick setting, neoprene based, waterproof, and resistant to gasoline and grease.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install duct accessories according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.
- B. Install duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel and fibrous-glass ducts, stainless-steel accessories in stainless-steel ducts, and aluminum accessories in aluminum ducts.
- C. Compliance with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2004 includes Section 6.4.3.3.3 - "Shutoff Damper Controls," restricts the use of backdraft dampers, and requires control dampers for certain applications. Install backdraft dampers at inlet of exhaust fans or exhaust ducts as close as possible to exhaust fan unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Install volume dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches extend from larger ducts. Where dampers are installed in ducts having duct liner, install dampers with hat channels of same depth as liner, and terminate liner with nosing at hat channel.
  - 1. Install steel volume dampers in steel ducts.
  - 2. Install aluminum volume dampers in aluminum ducts.
- E. Set dampers to fully open position before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- F. Install test holes at fan inlets and outlets and elsewhere as indicated.
- G. Install fire dampers according to UL listing.
- H. Install duct access doors on sides of ducts to allow for inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and equipment at the following locations:
  - 1. On both sides of duct coils.
  - 2. Upstream from duct filters.
  - 3. At outdoor-air intakes and mixed-air plenums.
  - 4. At drain pans and seals.
  - 5. Downstream from manual volume dampers, control dampers, backdraft dampers, and equipment.
  - 6. Adjacent to and close enough to fire or smoke dampers, to reset or reinstall fusible links. Access doors for access to fire or smoke dampers having fusible links shall be pressure relief access doors and shall be outward operation for access doors installed upstream from dampers and inward operation for access doors installed downstream from dampers.
  - 7. At each change in direction and at maximum 50-foot spacing.
  - 8. Control devices requiring inspection.

- 9. Elsewhere as indicated.
- I. Install access doors with swing against duct static pressure.
- J. Access Door Sizes:
  - 1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 by 5 inches.
  - 2. Two-Hand Access: 12 by 6 inches.
  - 3. Head and Hand Access: 18 by 10 inches.
  - 4. Head and Shoulders Access: 21 by 14 inches.
  - 5. Body Access: 25 by 14 inches.
  - 6. Body plus Ladder Access: 25 by 17 inches.
- K. Label access doors according to Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" to indicate the purpose of access door.
- L. Install flexible connectors to connect ducts to equipment.
- M. Connect diffusers to ducts with maximum 60-inch lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place.
- N. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with draw bands.
- O. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Operate dampers to verify full range of movement.
  - 2. Inspect locations of access doors and verify that purpose of access door can be performed.
  - 3. Operate fire, smoke, and combination fire and smoke dampers to verify full range of movement and verify that proper heat-response device is installed.
  - 4. Inspect turning vanes for proper and secure installation.

END OF SECTION 233300



## SECTION 233346 - FLEXIBLE DUCTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Non-insulated flexible ducts.
  - 2. Insulated flexible ducts.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

- A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.
- C. Comply with the Air Diffusion Council's "ADC Flexible Air Duct Test Code FD 72-R1."
- D. Comply with ASTM E 96/E 96M, "Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials."

#### 2.2 NON-INSULATED FLEXIBLE DUCTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.

2. Thermaflex; a Flex-Tek Group company.
  3. Ward Industries; a brand of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
- B. Non-Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, two-ply vinyl film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire.
1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg positive and 1.0-inch wg negative.
  2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.
  3. Temperature Range: Minus 10 to plus 160 deg F.

## 2.3 INSULATED FLEXIBLE DUCTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
  2. Thermaflex; a Flex-Tek Group company.
  3. Ward Industries; a brand of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
- B. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, two-ply vinyl film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; polyethylene vapor-barrier film.
1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg positive and 1.0-inch wg negative.
  2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.
  3. Temperature Range: Minus 10 to plus 160 deg F.
  4. Insulation R-Value: Comply with ASHRAE/IES 90.1.

## 2.4 FLEXIBLE DUCT CONNECTORS

- A. Clamps: Nylon strap in sizes 3 through 18 inches, to suit duct size.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install flexible ducts according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.
- B. Install in indoor applications only. Flexible ductwork should not be exposed to UV lighting.
- C. Connect diffusers to ducts with maximum 60-inch lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place.
- D. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with draw bands.

E. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.

F. Installation:

1. Install ducts fully extended.
2. Do not bend ducts across sharp corners.
3. Bends of flexible ducting shall not exceed a minimum of one duct diameter.
4. Avoid contact with metal fixtures, water lines, pipes, or conduits.
5. Install flexible ducts in a direct line, without sags, twists, or turns.

G. Supporting Flexible Ducts:

1. Suspend flexible ducts with bands 1-1/2 inches wide or wider and spaced a maximum of 48 inches apart. Maximum centerline sag between supports shall not exceed 1/2 inch per 12 inches.
2. Install extra supports at bends placed approximately one duct diameter from center line of the bend.
3. Ducts may rest on ceiling joists or truss supports. Spacing between supports shall not exceed the maximum spacing per manufacturer's written installation instructions.
4. Vertically installed ducts shall be stabilized by support straps at a maximum of 72 inches o.c.

END OF SECTION 233346

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK



## SECTION 233713.13 - AIR DIFFUSERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Louver face diffusers.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers and volume-control dampers not integral to diffusers.
  - 2. Division 23 Section "Air Registers and Grilles" for adjustable-bar register and grilles, fixed-face registers and grilles, and linear bar grilles.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.
  - 2. Diffuser Schedule: Indicate drawing designation, room location, quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 LOUVER FACE DIFFUSERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Price Industries.
  - 2. Titus.
- B. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.

- C. Material: Steel.
- D. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
- E. Mounting: T-bar.
- F. Pattern: Adjustable core style.
- G. Dampers: Butterfly.
- H. Accessories:
  - 1. Square to round neck adaptor.
  - 2. Adjustable pattern vanes.

## 2.2 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Verification of Performance: Rate diffusers according to ASHRAE 70, "Method of Testing for Rating the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets."

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas where diffusers are installed for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of equipment.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install diffusers level and plumb.
- B. Ceiling-Mounted Outlets and Inlets: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practical. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.
- C. Install diffusers with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. After installation, adjust diffusers to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

END OF SECTION 233713.13

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 233713.23 - AIR REGISTERS AND GRILLES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Adjustable blade face registers and grilles.
  - 2. Fixed face registers and grilles.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers and volume-control dampers not integral to registers and grilles.
  - 2. Division 23 Section "Air Diffusers" for various types of air diffusers.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.
  - 2. Register and Grille Schedule: Indicate drawing designation, room location, quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 REGISTERS

- A. Adjustable Blade Face Register:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Price Industries.
    - b. Titus.

2. Material: Steel.
3. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
4. Face Blade Arrangement: Horizontal spaced 3/4 inch apart.
5. Core Construction: Integral.
6. Rear-Blade Arrangement: Vertical spaced 3/4 inch apart.
7. Frame: 1 inch wide.
8. Mounting: Countersunk screw and lay in.
9. Damper Type: Adjustable opposed blade.

B. Fixed Face Register:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Price Industries.
  - b. Titus.
2. Material: Steel.
3. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
4. Face Blade Arrangement: Horizontal spaced 3/4 inch apart.
5. Face Arrangement: Perforated core.
6. Core Construction: Integral.
7. Frame: 1 inch wide.
8. Mounting: Countersunk screw and lay in.
9. Damper Type: Adjustable opposed blade.

## 2.2 GRILLES

A. Adjustable Blade Face Grille:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Price Industries.
  - b. Titus.
2. Material: Steel.
3. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
4. Face Blade Arrangement: Horizontal spaced 3/4 inch apart.
5. Core Construction: Integral.
6. Rear-Blade Arrangement: Vertical spaced 3/4 inch apart.
7. Frame: 1 inch wide.
8. Mounting: Countersunk screw and lay in.

B. Fixed Face Grille:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Price Industries.
  - b. Titus.
2. Material: Steel.
3. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
4. Face Blade Arrangement: Horizontal; spaced 3/4 inch apart.
5. Face Arrangement: Perforated core.
6. Core Construction: Integral.
7. Frame: 1 inch wide.
8. Mounting: Countersunk screw and lay in.

### 2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Verification of Performance: Rate registers and grilles according to ASHRAE 70, "Method of Testing for Rating the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets."

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas where registers and grilles are installed for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of equipment.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install registers and grilles level and plumb.
- B. Outlets and Inlets Locations: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practical. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.
- C. Install registers and grilles with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. After installation, adjust registers and grilles to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

END OF SECTION 233713.23



## SECTION 237223.23 - PACKAGED, OUTDOOR, HEAT WHEEL ENERGY RECOVERY UNITS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Heat wheels in packaged, outdoor, total energy-recovery units.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include packaged, outdoor, heat-wheel, energy-recovery-unit rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For packaged, outdoor, heat-wheel, energy-recovery equipment to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed. Package with protective covering for storage and identify with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Filters: One set of each type of filter specified.
  - 2. Fan Belts: One set of belts for each belt-driven fan in energy-recovery units.
  - 3. Wheel Belts: One set of belts for each heat wheel.

#### 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of building openings and duct connections with actual equipment provided.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of packaged, outdoor, heat-wheel, energy-recovery units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period for Packaged Energy-Recovery Units: One years from date of Substantial Completion.
  - 2. Warranty Period for Energy-Recovery Wheel: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 90A for design, fabrication, and installation of air-handling units and components.
- B. ASHRAE Compliance:
  - 1. Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
  - 2. Capacity ratings for heat-wheel, energy-recovery equipment: Comply with ASHRAE 84.
- C. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1.
- D. UL Compliance:
  - 1. Packaged Heat-Recovery Ventilators: Comply with requirements in UL 1815 or UL 1812.
- E. Comply with ASTM E84 or UL 723.
- F. Seismic Performance: Packaged, outdoor, heat wheel energy-recovery units shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined in accordance with ASCE/SEI 7.

### 2.2 PACKAGED, OUTDOOR, HEAT-WHEEL, ENERGY-RECOVERY UNITS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain packaged, outdoor, heat-wheel, energy-recovery units from single manufacturer.
- B. Surfaces in Contact with Airstream: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
- C. Housing: Manufacturer's standard construction with corrosion-protection coating and exterior finish, hinged access doors with neoprene gaskets for inspection and access to internal parts, minimum 2 inches thick thermal insulation, knockouts for electrical connections, exterior drain connection, and lifting lugs.

D. Heat Wheel:

1. Casing:

- a. Manufacturer's standard construction with standard factory finish.
- b. Slide-in, slide-out cassette style.
- c. Provide unit with integral purge section.
- d. Provide casing seals on periphery of rotor and on duct divider and purge section.
- e. Support vertical rotors on grease-lubricated ball bearings having extended grease fittings with minimum L-50 of 200,000 hours. Support horizontal rotors on tapered roller bearing.

2. Rotor: Aluminum, metallic, or polymer segmented wheel, strengthened with radial spokes impregnated with nonmigrating, water-selective, four-angstrom, molecular-sieve desiccant coating.

3. Drive: Electric motor, with speed changed by variable-frequency motor controller and self-adjusting multilink belt around outside of rotor.

- a. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
- b. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

E. Supply and Exhaust Fans: Centrifugal, forward-curved fan with spring isolators of 1-inch static deflection.

1. Motor and Drive: Direct driven, with speed changed by variable-frequency motor controller.

- a. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
- b. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If size is not indicated, provide motor large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

F. Filters:

1. Description: Cleanable wire mesh at outside air intake and pleated, factory-fabricated, self-supported, disposable air filters with holding frames.
2. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 900.
3. Media: Interlaced glass fibers sprayed with nonflammable adhesive and antimicrobial coating.
4. Filter Media Frame: Beverage board with perforated metal retainer or metal grid on outlet side.

5. Filter-Mounting Frames: Arranged with access doors or panels on one or both sides of unit. Design unit with filters removable from one side or lift out from access plenum.
- G. Wiring: Fabricate units with space within housing for electrical conduits. Wire motors and controls, so only external connections are required during installation.
  1. Outdoor Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 3R enclosure contains relays, starters, and terminal strip.
  2. Include fused disconnect switches.

## 2.3 CONTROLS

- A. Control Panel: Solid-state, programmable, microprocessor-based control unit for wall mounting. Integrate to BACnet, LonWorks, or Modbus, as specified in Division 23 Section "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC".
- B. Starting relay, factory mounted and wired, and manual motor starter for field wiring.
- C. Frost Control: Variable rotor speed.
- D. Carbon Dioxide Sensor: Adjustable control from 600 to 2000 ppm for duct mounting, with digital display and direct digital control (DDC) system interface to energize unit.
- E. Economizer Control, Stop Wheel: Stop wheel rotation or modulate wheel rotation speed when conditions are favorable for economizer operation.
- F. Economizer Control, Airflow Bypass: Heat-wheel airflow bypass. See Division 23 Section "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC" for control sequence.
- G. Enthalpy sensor.
- H. Rotation sensor and alarm.
- I. Dirty filter switch.
- J. Low-Voltage Transformer: Integral transformer to provide control voltage to unit from primary incoming electrical service.
- K. Variable-Speed Control: Factory mounted and wired, with exhaust-air sensor to vary rotor speed and maintain exhaust temperature above freezing.

## 2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended application.

- B. AHRI Compliance: Capacity ratings for air-to-air energy-recovery equipment certified as complying with AHRI 1060 (IP).
- C. Fan Performance Rating: Comply with AMCA 211, and label fans with AMCA-certified rating seal. Factory test fan performance for airflow, pressure, power, air density, rotation speed, and efficiency in accordance with AMCA 210 and ASHRAE 51.
- D. Fan Sound Rating: Comply with AMCA 301 or AHRI 260 (IP).
- E. UL Compliance:
  - 1. Packaged Heat-Recovery Ventilators: Comply with requirements in UL 1812.
  - 2. Electric Coils: Comply with UL 1995.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine casing insulation materials and filter media before packaged, outdoor, heat wheel energy-recovery unit installation. Replace insulation materials and filter media that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold contaminated.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF PACKAGED, OUTDOOR, HEAT-WHEEL, ENERGY-RECOVERY UNITS

- A. Install packaged, outdoor, heat-wheel, energy-recovery units, so supply and exhaust airstreams flow in opposite directions, and rotation is away from exhaust side to purge section to supply side.
  - 1. Install access doors in both supply and exhaust ducts, both upstream and downstream, for access to wheel surfaces, drive motor, and seals.
  - 2. Install removable panels or access doors between supply and exhaust ducts on building side for bypass during startup.
  - 3. Access doors and panels are specified in Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Equipment Mounting:
  - 1. Install roof-mounted packaged, outdoor, heat-wheel, energy-recovery units on manufacturer's-recommended-height equipment roof curbs. Comply with requirements for equipment curbs specified in Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories."
  - 2. Comply with requirements for vibration-isolation devices specified in Division 23 Section "Vibration Controls for HVAC."

- C. Install units with clearances for service and maintenance.
- D. Do not operate equipment fans until temporary or permanent filters are in place. Replace temporary filters used during construction and testing with new, clean filters prior to final inspection.

### 3.3 DUCTWORK CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for ductwork in accordance with Division 23 Section "Metal Ducts."
- B. Connect duct to units with flexible connections. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories."

### 3.4 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Where installing piping adjacent to unit, allow service and maintenance.
- B. Connect piping to units mounted on vibration isolators with flexible connectors.

### 3.5 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, in accordance with NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
- B. Connect wiring in accordance with Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- C. Ground equipment in accordance with Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- D. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
  - 1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
  - 2. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with a black background and engraved white letters at least 1/2 inch high.

### 3.6 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control wiring in accordance with Division 26 Section "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

### 3.7 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Perform startup service.
  - 1. Complete installation and startup checks in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.8 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust moving parts to function smoothly and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Adjust initial temperature and humidity set points.
- C. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.

### 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
  - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. Packaged, outdoor, heat-wheel, energy-recovery equipment will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.10 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain air-to-air energy-recovery units.

END OF SECTION 237223.23

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK



## SECTION 237416.13 - PACKAGED, LARGE-CAPACITY, ROOFTOP AIR-CONDITIONING UNITS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes packaged, large-capacity, rooftop air conditioning units (RTUs) with the following components and accessories:
  - 1. Casings.
  - 2. Fans.
  - 3. Motors.
  - 4. Coils.
  - 5. Refrigerant circuit components.
  - 6. Air filtration.
  - 7. Gas furnaces.
  - 8. Dampers.
  - 9. Electrical power connections.
  - 10. Controls.
  - 11. Accessories
  - 12. Roof curbs.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. DDC: Direct-digital controls.
- B. ECM: Electronically commutated motor.
- C. Outdoor-Air Refrigerant Coil: Refrigerant coil in the outdoor-air stream to reject heat during cooling operations and to absorb heat during heating operations. "Outdoor air" is defined as the air outside the building or taken from outdoors and not previously circulated through the system.
- D. RTU: Rooftop unit. As used in this Section, this abbreviation means packaged, large-capacity, rooftop air-conditioning units. This abbreviation is used regardless of whether the unit is mounted on the roof or on a concrete base on ground.
- E. Supply-Air Fan: The fan providing supply air to conditioned space. "Supply air" is defined as the air entering a space from air-conditioning, heating, or ventilating apparatus.

- F. Supply-Air Refrigerant Coil: Refrigerant coil in the supply-air stream to absorb heat (provide cooling) during cooling operations and to reject heat (provide heating) during heating operations. "Supply air" is defined as the air entering a space from air-conditioning, heating, or ventilating apparatus.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include manufacturer's technical data for each RTU, including rated capacities, dimensions, required clearances, characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For RTUs to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

#### 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Fan Belts: One set for each belt-driven fan.
  - 2. Filters: One set of filters for each unit.

#### 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of RTUs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period for Compressors: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than five years from date of Substantial Completion.
  - 2. Warranty Period for Gas Furnace Heat Exchangers: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than five years from date of Substantial Completion.
  - 3. Warranty Period for Solid-State Ignition Modules: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than three years from date of Substantial Completion.
  - 4. Warranty Period for Control Boards: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than three years from date of Substantial Completion.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. AHRI Compliance:

1. Comply with AHRI 340/360 for testing and rating energy efficiencies for RTUs.
2. Comply with AHRI 270 for testing and rating sound performance for RTUs.
3. Comply with AHRI 1060 for testing and rating performance for air-to-air exchanger.
4. Comply with AHRI 210/240 for testing and rating energy efficiencies for RTUs.

B. AMCA Compliance:

1. Comply with AMCA 11 and bear the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal for air and sound performance according to AMCA 211 and AMCA 311.
2. Damper leakage tested in accordance with AMCA 500-D.
3. Operating Limits: Classify according to AMCA 99.

C. ASHRAE Compliance:

1. Comply with ASHRAE 15 for refrigeration system safety.
2. Comply with ASHRAE 33 for methods of testing cooling and heating coils.
3. Comply with applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."

D. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."

E. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.

F. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 1995.

G. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

## 2.2 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

1. AAON.
2. Carrier Corporation; a unit of United Technologies Corp.
3. Daikin Applied.
4. Trane.
5. YORK; a Johnson Controls company.

## 2.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Seismic Performance: RTUs shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE 7.

1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified".

## 2.4 CASINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements for Casings: Formed and reinforced double-wall insulated panels, fabricated to allow removal for access to internal parts and components, with joints between sections sealed.
- B. Double-Wall Construction: Fill space between walls with 2-inch foam insulation and seal moisture tight for R-7 performance.
- C. Exterior Casing Material: Galvanized steel with factory-painted finish, with pitched roof panels and knockouts with grommet seals for electrical and piping connections and lifting lugs.
  - 1. Corrosion Protection: 500 hours salt spray test in accordance with ASTM B117.
- D. Inner Casing Fabrication Requirements:
  - 1. Inside Casing: G-90-coated galvanized steel, 0.034 inch thick.
- E. Casing Insulation and Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
  - 1. Materials: ASTM C 1071, Type I.
  - 2. Thickness: 1 inch.
  - 3. Liner materials shall have air-stream surface coated with an erosion- and temperature-resistant coating or faced with a plain or coated fibrous mat or fabric.
  - 4. Liner Adhesive: Comply with ASTM C 916, Type I.
- F. Condensate Drain Pans: Fabricated using stainless 0.025 inches thick steel sheet, a minimum of 2 inches deep, and complying with ASHRAE 62.1 for design and construction of drain pans.
  - 1. Double-Wall Construction: Fill space between walls with foam insulation and seal moisture tight.
  - 2. Drain Connections: Threaded nipple.
- G. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

## 2.5 FANS

- A. Supply-Air Fans: Aluminum or painted-steel wheels, and galvanized- or painted-steel fan scrolls.
  - 1. Direct-Driven Supply-Air Fans: Motor shall be resiliently mounted in the fan inlet.
- B. Condenser-Coil Fan: Variable-speed propeller, mounted on shaft of permanently lubricated ECM motors.
- C. Relief-Air Fan: Forward curved, shaft mounted on permanently lubricated motor.

## 2.6 MOTORS

- A. Comply with NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Comply with IEEE 841 for severe-duty motors.
- C. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
- D. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 104 deg F and at altitude of 3300 feet above sea level.
- E. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.
- F. Efficiency: Energy efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.
- G. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements.
- H. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.
- I. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- J. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.
- K. Insulation: Class F.
- L. Code Letter Designation:
  - 1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
  - 2. Motors Smaller than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.
- M. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.
- N. Motors Used with Variable Frequency Controllers:
  - 1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width modulated inverters.
  - 2. Energy- and Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.
  - 3. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
  - 4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.

## 2.7 COILS

### A. Supply-Air Refrigerant Coil:

1. Aluminum-plate fin and seamless internally grooved copper tube in steel casing with equalizing-type vertical distributor.
2. Polymer strip shall prevent all copper coil from contacting steel coil frame or condensate pan.
3. Coil Split: Interlaced.
4. Condensate Drain Pan: Stainless steel formed with pitch and drain connections complying with ASHRAE 62.1.

### B. Outdoor-Air Refrigerant Coil:

1. Aluminum-plate fin and seamless internally grooved copper tube in steel casing with equalizing-type vertical distributor.
2. Polymer strip shall prevent all copper coil from contacting steel coil frame or condensate pan.

### C. Hot-Gas Reheat Refrigerant Coil:

1. Aluminum-plate fin and seamless internally grooved copper tube in steel casing with equalizing-type vertical distributor.
2. Polymer strip shall prevent all copper coil from contacting steel coil frame or condensate pan.
3. Suction-discharge bypass valve.

## 2.8 REFRIGERANT CIRCUIT COMPONENTS

### A. Number of Refrigerant Circuits: Two.

### B. Compressor: Hermetic, variable speed scroll, mounted on vibration isolators; with internal overcurrent and high-temperature protection, internal pressure relief, and crankcase heater.

### C. Refrigeration Specialties:

1. Refrigerant: R-410A.
2. Expansion valve with replaceable thermostatic element.
3. Refrigerant filter/dryer.
4. Manual-reset high-pressure safety switch.
5. Automatic-reset low-pressure safety switch.
6. Minimum off-time relay.
7. Automatic-reset compressor motor thermal overload.
8. Brass service valves installed in compressor suction and liquid lines.
9. Low-ambient kit high-pressure sensor.
10. Hot-gas reheat solenoid valve single stage with a replaceable magnetic coil.
11. Hot-gas bypass solenoid valve with a replaceable magnetic coil.

12. Four-way reversing valve with a replaceable magnetic coil, thermostatic expansion valves with bypass check valves, and a suction line accumulator.

## 2.9 AIR FILTRATION

- A. Minimum arrestance and a minimum efficiency reporting value according to ASHRAE 52.2.
- B. Pleated Panel Filters:
  1. Description: Factory-fabricated, self-supported, extended-surface, pleated, panel-type, disposable air filters with holding frames.
  2. Filter Unit Class: UL 900, Class 1.
  3. Media: Interlaced glass or synthetic fibers coated with nonflammable adhesive.
    - a. Adhesive: As recommended by air-filter manufacturer and with a VOC content of 80 g/L or less.
    - b. Media shall be coated with an antimicrobial agent.
    - c. Separators shall be bonded to the media to maintain pleat configuration.
    - d. Welded-wire grid shall be on downstream side to maintain pleat.
    - e. Media shall be bonded to frame to prevent air bypass.
    - f. Support members on upstream and downstream sides to maintain pleat spacing.

## 2.10 GAS FURNACES

- A. Description: Factory assembled, piped, and wired; complying with ANSI Z21.47/CSA 2.3 and NFPA 54.
  1. CSA Approval: Designed and certified by and bearing label of CSA.
- B. Burners: Stainless steel.
  1. Fuel: Propane gas.
  2. Ignition: Electronically controlled electric spark or hot-surface igniter with flame sensor.
- C. Heat-Exchanger and Drain Pan: Stainless steel.
- D. Venting: Gravity vented.
- E. Power Vent: Integral, motorized centrifugal fan interlocked with gas valve.
- F. Safety Controls:
  1. Gas Control Valve: Two stage.
  2. Gas Train: Single-body, regulated, redundant, 24-V ac gas valve assembly containing pilot solenoid valve, pilot filter, pressure regulator, pilot shutoff, and manual shutoff.

## 2.11 DAMPERS

- A. Outdoor-Air Damper: Linked damper blades, for 0 to 100 percent outdoor air, with damper filter.
- B. Outdoor- and Return-Air Mixing Dampers: Parallel-blade galvanized-steel dampers mechanically fastened to cadmium plated for galvanized-steel operating rod in reinforced cabinet. Connect operating rods with common linkage or gears and interconnect so dampers operate simultaneously.
  - 1. Leakage Rate: As required by ASHRAE/IES 90.1.
  - 2. Damper Motor: Modulating with adjustable minimum position.
  - 3. Relief-Air Damper: Gravity actuated or motorized, as required by ASHRAE/IES 90.1, with bird screen and hood.
- C. Barometric relief dampers.

## 2.12 ELECTRICAL POWER CONNECTIONS

- A. RTU shall have a single connection of power to unit with unit-mounted disconnect switch accessible from outside unit and control-circuit transformer with built-in overcurrent protection.

## 2.13 CONTROLS

- A. Basic Unit Controls:
  - 1. Control-voltage transformer.
  - 2. Wall-mounted thermostat or sensor with the following features:
    - a. Heat-cool-off switch.
    - b. Fan on-auto switch.
    - c. Fan-speed switch.
    - d. Automatic changeover.
    - e. Adjustable deadband.
    - f. Exposed set point.
    - g. Exposed indication.
    - h. Degree F indication.
    - i. Unoccupied-period-override push button.
    - j. Data entry and access port to input temperature set points, occupied and unoccupied periods, and output room temperature, supply-air temperature, operating mode, and status.
- B. DDC Controller:
  - 1. Controller shall have volatile-memory backup.
  - 2. Safety Control Operation:



- a. Smoke Detectors: Stop fan and close outdoor-air damper if smoke is detected. Provide additional contacts for alarm interface to fire alarm control panel.
  - b. Firestats: Stop fan and close outdoor-air damper if air greater than 130 deg F enters unit. Provide additional contacts for alarm interface to fire alarm control panel.
  - c. Fire Alarm Control Panel Interface: Provide control interface to coordinate with operating sequence described in Division 28 Section "Digital, Addressable Fire-Alarm System". Retain first subparagraph below for low-ambient feature.
  - d. Low-Discharge Temperature: Stop fan and close outdoor-air damper if supply air temperature is less than 40 deg F.
  - e. Defrost Control for Condenser Coil: Pressure differential switch to initiate defrost sequence.
3. Scheduled Operation: Occupied and unoccupied periods on seven-day clock with a minimum of two programmable periods per day.
4. Unoccupied Period:
  - a. Heating Setback: 10 deg F.
  - b. Cooling Setback: System off.
  - c. Override Operation: Two hours.
5. Supply Fan Operation:
  - a. Occupied Periods: Run fan continuously.
  - b. Unoccupied Periods: Cycle fan to maintain setback temperature.
6. Refrigerant Circuit Operation:
  - a. Occupied Periods: Cycle or stage compressors and operate hot-gas bypass to match compressor output to cooling load to maintain room temperature and humidity. Cycle condenser fans to maintain maximum hot-gas pressure. Operate low-ambient control kit to maintain minimum hot-gas pressure.
  - b. Unoccupied Periods: Compressors off.
  - c. Switch reversing valve for heating or cooling mode on air-to-air heat pump.
7. Hot-Gas Reheat-Coil Operation:
  - a. Occupied Periods: Humidistat opens hot-gas valve to provide hot-gas reheat, and cycles compressor.
  - b. Unoccupied Periods: Reheat not required.
8. Gas Furnace Operation:
  - a. Occupied Periods: Stage burner to maintain room temperature.
  - b. Unoccupied Periods: Cycle burner to maintain setback temperature.
9. Economizer Outdoor-Air Damper Operation:

- a. Morning warm up cycles.
  - b. Occupied Periods: Open to scheduled percent fixed minimum intake, and maximum 100 percent of the fan capacity. Controller shall permit air-side economizer operation when outdoor air is less than 60 deg F. Use outdoor-air enthalpy to adjust mixing dampers. Start relief-air fan with end switch on outdoor-air damper. During economizer cycle operation, lock out cooling.
  - c. Unoccupied Periods: Close outdoor-air damper and open return-air damper.
- 10. Carbon Dioxide Sensor Operation:
  - a. Occupied Periods: Reset minimum outdoor-air ratio down to minimum 5 percent to maintain maximum 1000-ppm concentration.
  - b. Unoccupied Periods: Close outdoor-air damper and open return-air damper.
- 11. Terminal-Unit Relays:
  - a. Provide heating- and cooling-mode changeover relays compatible with terminal control system required in Division 23 Section "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC."

C. Interface Requirements for HVAC Instrumentation and Control System:

- 1. Interface relay for scheduled operation.
- 2. Interface relay to provide indication of fault at the central workstation and diagnostic code storage.
- 3. Provide BACnet compatible interface for central HVAC control workstation for the following:
  - a. Adjusting set points.
  - b. Monitoring supply fan start, stop, and operation.
  - c. Inquiring data to include outdoor-air damper position, supply- and room-air temperature and humidity.
  - d. Monitoring occupied and unoccupied operations.
  - e. Monitoring constant and variable motor loads.
  - f. Monitoring variable-frequency drive operation.
  - g. Monitoring cooling load.
  - h. Monitoring economizer cycles.
  - i. Monitoring air-distribution static pressure and ventilation air volume.

## 2.14 ACCESSORIES

- A. Duplex, 115-V, ground-fault-interrupter outlet with 15-A overcurrent protection. Include transformer if required. Outlet shall be energized even if the unit main disconnect is open.
- B. Filter differential pressure switch with sensor tubing on either side of filter. Set for final filter pressure loss.

- C. Factory- or field-installed demand-controlled ventilation.
- D. Safeties:
  - 1. Smoke detector.
  - 2. Condensate overflow switch.
  - 3. Phase-loss protection.
  - 4. High and low pressure control.
  - 5. Gas furnace airflow-proving switch.
- E. Outdoor air intake weather hood.
- F. Service Lights and Switch: Factory installed in fan and coil sections with weatherproof cover. Factory wire lights to a single-point field connection.

## 2.15 ROOF CURBS

- A. Materials: Galvanized steel with corrosion-protection coating, watertight gaskets, and factory-installed wood nailer; complying with NRCA standards.
  - 1. Curb Insulation and Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
    - a. Materials: ASTM C 1071, Type I or II.
    - b. Thickness: 2 inches.
  - 2. Application: Factory applied with adhesive and mechanical fasteners to the internal surface of curb.
    - a. Liner Adhesive: Comply with ASTM C 916, Type I.
    - b. Mechanical Fasteners: Galvanized steel, suitable for adhesive attachment, mechanical attachment, or welding attachment to duct without damaging liner when applied as recommended by manufacturer and without causing leakage in cabinet.
    - c. Liner materials applied in this location shall have air-stream surface coated with a temperature-resistant coating or faced with a plain or coated fibrous mat or fabric depending on service air velocity.
- B. Curb Dimensions: Height of 14 inches.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of RTUs.

- B. Examine roughing-in for RTUs to verify actual locations of piping and duct connections before equipment installation.
- C. Examine roofs for suitable conditions where RTUs will be installed.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Roof Curb: Install on roof structure or concrete base, level and secure, according to AHRI Guideline B. Install RTUs on curbs and coordinate roof penetrations and flashing with roof construction specified in Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories." Secure RTUs to upper curb rail, and secure curb base to roof framing or concrete base with anchor bolts.
- B. Unit Support: Install unit level on structural curbs. Coordinate wall penetrations and flashing with wall construction. Secure RTUs to structural support with anchor bolts.

### 3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Install condensate drain, minimum connection size, with trap and indirect connection to nearest roof drain or area drain.
- B. Install piping adjacent to RTUs to allow service and maintenance.
  - 1. Gas Piping: Comply with applicable requirements in Division 23 Section "Facility Liquefied-Petroleum Gas Piping." Connect gas piping to burner, full size of gas train inlet, and connect with union and shutoff valve with sufficient clearance for burner removal and service.
- C. Duct installation requirements are specified in other HVAC Sections. Drawings indicate the general arrangement of ducts. The following are specific connection requirements:
  - 1. Install ducts to termination at top of roof curb.
  - 2. Remove roof decking only as required for passage of ducts. Do not cut out decking under entire roof curb.
  - 3. Connect supply ducts to RTUs with flexible duct connectors specified in Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories."
  - 4. Install return-air duct continuously through roof structure.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. After installing RTUs and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units for compliance with requirements.
  2. Inspect for and remove shipping bolts, blocks, and tie-down straps.
  3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
  4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. RTU will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Perform startup service.
- B. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Inspect for visible damage to unit casing.
  2. Inspect for visible damage to furnace combustion chamber.
  3. Inspect for visible damage to compressor, coils, and fans.
  4. Inspect internal insulation.
  5. Verify that labels are clearly visible.
  6. Verify that clearances have been provided for servicing.
  7. Verify that controls are connected and operable.
  8. Verify that filters are installed.
  9. Clean condenser coil and inspect for construction debris.
  10. Clean furnace flue and inspect for construction debris.
  11. Connect and purge gas line.
  12. Remove packing from vibration isolators.
  13. Inspect operation of barometric relief dampers.
  14. Verify lubrication on fan and motor bearings.
  15. Inspect fan-wheel rotation for movement in correct direction without vibration and binding.
  16. Adjust fan belts to proper alignment and tension.
  17. Start unit according to manufacturer's written instructions.
    - a. Start refrigeration system.
    - b. Do not operate below recommended low-ambient temperature.
    - c. Complete startup sheets and attach copy with Contractor's startup report.
  18. Inspect and record performance of interlocks and protective devices; verify sequences.
  19. Operate unit for an initial period as recommended or required by manufacturer.
  20. Perform the following operations for both minimum and maximum firing. Adjust burner for peak efficiency.
    - a. Measure gas pressure on manifold.

- b. Inspect operation of power vents.
  - c. Measure combustion-air temperature at inlet to combustion chamber.
  - d. Measure flue-gas temperature at furnace discharge.
  - e. Perform flue-gas analysis. Measure and record flue-gas carbon dioxide and oxygen concentration.
  - f. Measure supply-air temperature and volume when burner is at maximum firing rate and when burner is off. Calculate useful heat to supply air.
21. Calibrate thermostats.
22. Adjust and inspect high-temperature limits.
23. Inspect outdoor-air dampers for proper stroke and interlock with return-air dampers.
24. Start refrigeration system and measure and record the following when ambient is a minimum of 15 deg F above return-air temperature:
- a. Coil leaving-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.
  - b. Coil entering-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.
  - c. Outdoor-air, dry-bulb temperature.
  - d. Outdoor-air-coil, discharge-air, dry-bulb temperature.
25. Inspect controls for correct sequencing of heating, mixing dampers, refrigeration, and normal and emergency shutdown.
26. Measure and record the following minimum and maximum airflows. Plot fan volumes on fan curve.
- a. Supply-air volume.
  - b. Return-air volume.
  - c. Relief-air volume.
  - d. Outdoor-air intake volume.
27. Simulate maximum cooling demand and inspect the following:
- a. Compressor refrigerant suction and hot-gas pressures.
  - b. Short circuiting of air through condenser coil or from condenser fans to outdoor-air intake.
28. Verify operation of remote panel including pilot-light operation and failure modes. Inspect the following:
- a. High-temperature limit on gas-fired heat exchanger.
  - b. Low-temperature safety operation.
  - c. Filter high-pressure differential alarm.
  - d. Economizer to minimum outdoor-air changeover.
  - e. Relief-air fan operation.
  - f. Smoke and firestat alarms.
29. After startup and performance testing and prior to Substantial Completion, replace existing filters with new filters.

### 3.6 CLEANING AND ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.
- B. After completing system installation and testing, adjusting, and balancing RTU and air-distribution systems, clean filter housings and install new filters.

### 3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain RTUs.

END OF SECTION 237416.13

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK



## SECTION 238129 – VARIABLE-REFRIGERANT-FLOW HVAC SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes complete VRF HVAC system(s) including, but not limited to, delegated design and the following components to make a complete operating system(s) according to requirements indicated:
  - 1. Indoor, recessed, ceiling-mounted units.
  - 2. Outdoor, air-source heat recovery units.
  - 3. Heat recovery control units.
  - 4. System controls.
  - 5. System refrigerant and oil.
  - 6. System condensate drain piping.
  - 7. System refrigerant piping.
  - 8. System control cable and raceways.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Heat Recovery System Operation: System capable of operation with simultaneous heating and cooling zones that transfer heat between zones.
- B. HRCU: Heat Recovery Control Unit. HRCUs are used in heat recovery VRF HVAC systems to manage and control refrigerant between indoor units to provide simultaneous heating and cooling zones. "Heat Recovery Control Unit" is the term used by ASHRAE for what different manufacturers term as branch circuit controller, branch selector box, changeover box, flow selector unit, mode change unit, and other such terms.
- C. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling power-limited circuits.
- D. Plenum: A space forming part of the air distribution system to which one or more air ducts are connected. An air duct is a passageway, other than a plenum, for transporting air to or from heating, ventilating, or air-conditioning equipment.
- E. Three-Pipe System Design: One high pressure refrigerant vapor line, one low pressure refrigerant vapor line, and one refrigerant liquid line connect a single outdoor unit or multiple

manifold outdoor units in a single system to associated system HRCUs. One liquid line and refrigerant vapor line connect HRCUs to associated indoor units.

- F. Two-Pipe System Design: One refrigerant vapor line and one refrigerant liquid line connect a single outdoor unit or multiple manifold outdoor units in a single system to associated system HRCUs. One refrigerant liquid line and refrigerant vapor line connect HRCUs to associated indoor units. HRCUs used in two pipe systems act as an intermediate heat exchanger and include diverting valves and gas/liquid separators to move high and low pressure refrigerant between indoor units.
- G. VRF: Variable refrigerant flow.

#### 1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for indoor and outdoor units and for HRCUs.
  - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
  - 3. Include operating performance at design conditions and at extreme maximum and minimum outdoor ambient conditions.
  - 4. Include description of system controllers, dimensions, features, control interfaces and connections, power requirements, and connections.
  - 5. Include system operating sequence of operation in narrative form for each unique indoor- and outdoor-unit and HRCU control.
  - 6. Include description of control software features.
  - 7. Include total refrigerant required and a comprehensive breakdown of refrigerant required by each system installed.
  - 8. Include refrigerant type and data sheets showing compliance with requirements indicated.
  - 9. For system design software.
  - 10. Indicate location and type of service access.
- B. Shop Drawings: For VRF HVAC systems.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
  - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.

3. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.
4. Include diagrams and details of refrigerant piping and tubing showing installation requirements for manufacturer-furnished divided flow fittings.
5. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Delegated-Design Submittals:

1. Include design calculations with corresponding diagram of refrigerant piping and tubing sizing for each system installed.
2. Include design calculations with corresponding floor plans indicating that refrigerant concentration limits are within allowable limits of ASHRAE 15 and governing codes.
3. Include calculations showing that system travel distance for refrigerant piping and controls cabling are within horizontal and vertical travel distances set by manufacturer. Provide a comparison table for each system installed.

## 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data:

1. For Installer: Certificate from VRF HVAC system manufacturer certifying that Installer has successfully completed prerequisite training administered by manufacturer for proper installation of systems, including but not limited to, equipment, piping, controls, and accessories indicated and furnished for installation.
  - a. Retain copies of Installer certificates on-site and make available on request.
2. For VRF HVAC system manufacturer.
3. For VRF HVAC system provider.

B. Field quality-control reports.

C. Sample Warranties: For manufacturer's warranties.

## 1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For VRF HVAC systems to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

B. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:

1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
2. Program Software Backup: On CD or DVD, USB media, or approved cloud storage platform, complete with data files.
3. Device address list.
4. Printout of software application and graphic screens.

## 1.8 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Filters:
    - a. One set for each unit with replaceable filters.
    - b. One set for each unit type and unique size of washable filters.

## 1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications:
  - 1. Nationally recognized manufacturer of VRF HVAC systems and products.
  - 2. Shipped VRF HVAC systems with similar requirements to those indicated for a continuous period of five years within time of bid.
  - 3. VRF HVAC systems and products that have been successfully tested and in use on at least three completed projects.
  - 4. Having complete published catalog literature, installation, and operation and maintenance manuals for all products intended for use.
  - 5. Having full-time in-house employees for the following:
    - a. Product research and development.
    - b. Product and application engineering.
    - c. Product manufacturing, testing, and quality control.
    - d. Technical support for system installation training, startup, commissioning, and troubleshooting of installations.
    - e. Owner training.
- B. Factory-Authorized Service Representative Qualifications:
  - 1. Authorized representative of, and trained by, VRF HVAC system manufacturer.
  - 2. In-place facility located within 50 miles of Project.
  - 3. Demonstrated past experience with products being installed for period within three consecutive years before time of bid.
  - 4. Demonstrated past experience on five projects of similar complexity, scope, and value.
    - a. Each person assigned to Project shall have demonstrated past experience.
  - 5. Staffing resources of competent and experienced full-time employees that are assigned to execute work according to schedule.
  - 6. Service and maintenance staff assigned to support Project during warranty period.
  - 7. Product parts inventory to support ongoing system operation for a period of not less than five years after Substantial Completion.

8. VRF HVAC system manufacturer's backing to take over execution of Work if necessary to comply with requirements indicated. Include Project-specific written letter, signed by manufacturer's corporate officer, if requested.
- C. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by VRF HVAC system manufacturer.
1. Each employee shall be certified by manufacturer for proper installation of systems, including, but not limited to, equipment, piping, controls, and accessories indicated and furnished for installation.
  2. Installer certification shall be valid and current for duration of Project.
  3. Retain copies of Installer certificates on-site and make available on request.
  4. Each person assigned to Project shall have demonstrated past experience.
    - a. Demonstrated past experience with products being installed for period within three consecutive years before time of bid.
    - b. Demonstrated past experience on five projects of similar complexity, scope, and value.
  5. Installers shall have staffing resources of competent, trained, and experienced full-time employees that are assigned to execute work according to schedule.

#### 1.10 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver and store products in a clean and dry place.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written rigging and installation instructions for unloading and moving to final installed location.
- C. Handle products carefully to prevent damage, breaking, denting, and scoring. Do not install damaged products.
- D. Protect products from weather, dirt, dust, water, construction debris, and physical damage.
  1. Retain factory-applied coverings on equipment to protect finishes during construction and remove just prior to operating unit.
  2. Cover unit openings before installation to prevent dirt and dust from entering inside of units. If required to remove coverings during unit installation, reapply coverings over openings after unit installation and remove just prior to operating unit.
- E. Replace installed products damaged during construction.

#### 1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace equipment and components that fail(s) in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period:
  - a. For Compressor: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
  - b. For Parts, Including Controls: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
  - c. For Labor: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  1. Daikin AC (Americas), Inc.
  2. LG Electronics.
  3. Mitsubishi Electric & Electronics USA, Inc.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain products from single source from single manufacturer including, but not limited to, the following:
  1. Indoor and outdoor units, including accessories.
  2. Controls and software.
  3. HRCUs.
  4. Refrigerant isolation valves.
  5. Specialty refrigerant pipe fittings.

### 2.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Direct-expansion (DX) VRF HVAC system(s) with variable capacity in response to varying cooling and heating loads. System shall consist of multiple indoor units, HRCUs, outdoor unit(s), piping, controls, and electrical power to make complete operating system(s) complying with requirements indicated.
  1. Two-pipe or three-pipe system design.
  2. System(s) operation, heat recovery as indicated on Drawings.
  3. Each system with one refrigerant circuit shared by all indoor units connected to system.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. AHRI Compliance: System and equipment performance certified according to AHRI 1230 and products listed in AHRI directory.
- D. ASHRAE Compliance:
  1. ASHRAE 15: For safety code for mechanical refrigeration.

2. ASHRAE 62.1: For indoor air quality.
  3. ASHRAE 135: For control network protocol with remote communication.
  4. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: For system and component energy efficiency.
- E. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 1995.

## 2.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional specialist, as defined in Division 01 Section "Quality Requirements," to design complete and operational VRF HVAC system(s) complying with requirements indicated.
1. Provide system refrigerant calculations.
    - a. Refrigerant concentration limits shall be within allowable limits of ASHRAE 15 and governing codes.
    - b. Indicate compliance with manufacturer's maximum vertical and horizontal travel distances. Prepare a comparison table for each system showing calculated distances compared to manufacturer's maximum allowed distances.
  2. Include a mechanical ventilation system and gas detection system as required to comply with ASHRAE 15 and governing codes.
  3. System Refrigerant Piping and Tubing:
    - a. Arrangement: Arrange piping to interconnect indoor units, HRCUs, and outdoor unit(s) in compliance with manufacturer requirements and requirements indicated.
    - b. Routing: Conceal piping above ceilings and behind walls to maximum extent possible.
    - c. Sizing: Size piping system, using a software program acceptable to manufacturer, to provide performance requirements indicated. Consider requirements to accommodate future change requirements.
  4. System Controls:
    - a. Network arrangement.
    - b. Network interface with other building systems.
    - c. Product selection.
    - d. Sizing.
- B. Service Access:
1. Provide and document service access requirements.
  2. Locate equipment, system isolation valves, and other system components that require service and inspection in easily accessible locations. Avoid locations that are difficult to access if possible.

3. Where serviceable components are installed behind walls and above inaccessible ceilings, provide finished assembly with access doors or panels to gain access. Properly size the openings to allow for service, removal, and replacement.
  4. If less than full and unrestricted access is provided, locate components within an 18-inch reach of the finished assembly.
  5. Where ladder access is required to service elevated components, provide an installation that provides for sufficient access within ladder manufacturer's written instructions for use.
  6. Comply with OSHA regulations.
- C. System Design and Installation Requirements:
1. Design and install systems indicated according to manufacturer's recommendations and written instructions.
  2. Where manufacturer's requirements differ from requirements indicated, contact Architect for direction. The most stringent requirements should apply unless otherwise directed in writing by Architect.
- D. System Adaptability to Future Changes: Arrange and size system refrigerant piping to accommodate future changes to system without having to resize and replace existing refrigerant piping.
1. Future changes to system(s) indicated on Drawings.
  2. Each branch circuit shall accommodate addition of one indoor unit(s) with unit capacity equal to largest indoor unit connected to the branch circuit.
  3. Each branch circuit shall accommodate deletion of one indoor unit(s) with unit capacity equal to largest indoor unit connected to the branch circuit.
- E. Isolation of Equipment: Provide isolation valves to isolate each HRCU, indoor unit and outdoor unit for service, removal, and replacement without interrupting system operation.
- F. System Capacity Ratio: The sum of connected capacity of all indoor units shall be within the following range of outdoor-unit rated capacity:
1. Not less than 50 percent.
  2. Not more than 130 percent.
- G. System Turndown: Stable operation down to 20 percent of outdoor-unit capacity.
- H. System Auto Refrigerant Charge: Each system shall have an automatic refrigerant charge function to ensure the proper amount of refrigerant is installed in system.
- I. Seismic Performance: VRF HVAC system(s) shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
- J. Thermal Movements: Allow for controlled thermal movements from ambient, surface, and system temperature changes.



- K. Capacities and Characteristics: As indicated on Drawings.

## 2.4 INDOOR, RECESSED, CEILING-MOUNTED UNITS

- A. Description: Factory-assembled complete unit with components, piping, wiring, and controls required for mating to ductwork, piping, power, and controls field connections.
- B. Cabinet:
  - 1. Material: Painted steel, or coated steel frame covered by a plastic cabinet, with an architectural acceptable finish suitable for tenant occupancy on exposed surfaces.
  - 2. Insulation: Manufacturer's standard internal insulation, complying with ASHRAE 62.1, to provide thermal resistance and prevent condensation.
  - 3. Mounting: Manufacturer-designed provisions for field installation.
  - 4. Internal Access: Removable panels of adequate size for field access to internal components for inspection, cleaning, service, and replacement.
- C. DX Coil Assembly:
  - 1. Coil Casing: Aluminum, galvanized, or stainless steel.
  - 2. Coil Fins: Aluminum, mechanically bonded to tubes, with arrangement required by performance.
  - 3. Coil Tubes: Copper, of diameter and thickness required by performance.
  - 4. Expansion Valve: Electronic modulating type with linear or proportional characteristics.
  - 5. Internal Tubing: Copper tubing with brazed joints.
  - 6. Internal Tubing Insulation: Manufacturer's standard insulation, of thickness to prevent condensation.
  - 7. Field Piping Connections: Manufacturer's standard.
  - 8. Factory Charge: Dehydrated air or nitrogen.
  - 9. Testing: Factory pressure tested and verified to be without leaks.
- D. Drain Assembly:
  - 1. Pan: Non-ferrous material, with bottom sloped to low point drain connection.
  - 2. Condensate Removal: Unit-mounted pump or other integral lifting mechanism, capable of lifting drain water to an elevation above top of cabinet.
  - 3. Field Piping Connection: Non-ferrous material.
- E. Fan and Motor Assembly:
  - 1. Fan(s):
    - a. Direct-drive arrangement.
    - b. Single or multiple fans connected to a common motor shaft and driven by a single motor.
    - c. Fabricated from non-ferrous components or ferrous components with corrosion protection finish.

- d. Wheels statically and dynamically balanced.
  - 2. Motor: Brushless dc or electronically commutated with permanently lubricated bearings.
  - 3. Motor Protection: Integral protection against thermal, overload, and voltage fluctuations.
  - 4. Speed Settings and Control: Two (low, high), three (low, medium, high), or more than three speed settings or variable speed with a speed range of least 50 percent.
  - 5. Vibration Control: Integral isolation to dampen vibration transmission.
- F. Filter Assembly:
- 1. Access: Bottom, to accommodate filter replacement without the need for tools.
  - 2. Efficiency: ASHRAE 52.2, MERV 7.
  - 3. Media:
    - a. Replaceable: Extended surface, panel, or cartridge with antimicrobial treatment fiber media.
- G. Discharge-Air Grille Assembly: Mounted in bottom of unit cabinet.
- 1. Discharge Pattern: One-, two-, three-, or four-way throw as indicated on Drawings.
    - a. Discharge Pattern Adjustment: Field-adjustable limits for up and down range of motion.
    - b. Discharge Pattern Closure: Ability to close individual discharges of units with multiple patterns.
  - 2. Motorized Vanes: Modulating up and down flow pattern for uniform room air distribution.
  - 3. Additional Branch Supply Duct Connection: Sheet metal knockout for optional connection to one additional supply branch duct.
- H. Return-Air Grille Assembly: Manufacturer's standard grille mounted in bottom of unit cabinet.
- I. Unit Controls:
- 1. Enclosure: Manufacturer's standard, and suitable for indoor locations.
  - 2. Factory-Installed Controller: Configurable digital control.
  - 3. Factory-Installed Sensors: Unit inlet air temperature.
  - 4. Field-Customizable I/O Capability:
    - a. Analog Inputs: Two for use in customizable control strategies.
    - b. Digital Inputs: Two for use in customizable control strategies.
    - c. Digital Outputs: Two for use in customizable control strategies.
  - 5. Features and Functions: Self-diagnostics, time delay, auto-restart, auto operation mode, manual operation mode, filter service notification, drain assembly high water level safety shutdown and notification.

6. Communication: Network communication with other indoor units and outdoor unit(s).
7. Cable and Wiring: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.
8. Field Connection: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.

J. Unit Electrical:

1. Enclosure: Manufacturer's standard, and suitable for indoor locations.
2. Field Connection: Single point connection to power entire unit and integral controls.
3. Disconnecting Means: Factory-mounted circuit breaker or switch, complying with NFPA 70.
4. Control Transformer: Manufacturer's standard. Coordinate requirements with field power supply.
5. Wiring: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.
6. Raceways: Enclose line voltage wiring in raceways to comply with NFPA 70.

## 2.5 OUTDOOR, AIR-SOURCE HEAT RECOVERY UNITS

A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested complete unit with components, piping, wiring, and controls required for mating to piping, power, and controls field connections.

1. Specially designed for use in systems with simultaneous heating and cooling.
2. Systems shall consist of one unit, or multiple unit modules that are designed by variable refrigerant system manufacturer for field interconnection to make a single refrigeration circuit that connects multiple indoor units.
3. All units installed shall be from the same product development generation.

B. Cabinet:

1. Galvanized steel and coated with a corrosion-resistant finish.
  - a. Coating with documented salt spray test performance of 1000 hours according ASTM B117 surface scratch test (SST) procedure.
2. Mounting: Manufacturer-designed provisions for field installation.
3. Internal Access: Removable panels or hinged doors of adequate size for field access to internal components for inspection, cleaning, service, and replacement.

C. Compressor and Motor Assembly:

1. One or more positive-displacement, direct-drive and hermetically sealed scroll compressor(s) with inverter drive and turndown to 15 percent of rated capacity.
2. Protection: Integral protection against the following:
  - a. High refrigerant pressure.
  - b. Low oil level.

- c. High oil temperature.
    - d. Thermal and overload.
    - e. Voltage fluctuations.
    - f. Phase failure and phase reversal.
    - g. Short cycling.
  - 3. Speed Control: Variable to automatically maintain refrigerant suction and condensing pressures while varying refrigerant flow to satisfy system cooling and heating loads.
  - 4. Vibration Control: Integral isolation to dampen vibration transmission.
  - 5. Oil management system to ensure safe and proper lubrication over entire operating range.
  - 6. Crankcase heaters with integral control to maintain safe operating temperature.
  - 7. Fusible plug.
- D. Condenser Coil Assembly:
- 1. Plate Fin Coils:
    - a. Casing: Aluminum, galvanized, or stainless steel.
    - b. Fins: Aluminum or copper, mechanically bonded to tubes, with arrangement required by performance.
    - c. Tubes: Copper, of diameter and thickness required by performance.
  - 2. Aluminum Microchannel Coils:
    - a. Series of flat tubes containing a series of multiple, parallel-flow microchannels layered between refrigerant header manifolds.
    - b. Single- or multiple-pass arrangement.
    - c. Construct fins, tubes, and header manifolds of aluminum alloy.
  - 3. Corrosion Protection: Coating with documented salt spray test performance of 1000 hours according ASTM B117 surface scratch test (SST) procedure.
  - 4. Hail Protection: Provide condenser coils with louvers, baffles, or hoods to protect against hail damage.
- E. Condenser Fan and Motor Assembly:
- 1. Fan(s): Propeller type.
    - a. Direct-drive arrangement.
    - b. Fabricated from non-ferrous components or ferrous components with corrosion protection finish to match performance indicated for condenser coil.
    - c. Statically and dynamically balanced.
  - 2. Fan Guards: Removable safety guards complying with OSHA regulations. If using metal materials, coat with corrosion-resistant coating to match performance indicated for condenser coil.

3. Motor(s): Brushless dc or electronically commutated with permanently lubricated bearings and rated for outdoor duty.
  4. Motor Protection: Integral protection against thermal, overload, and voltage fluctuations.
  5. Speed Settings and Control: Variable speed with a speed range of least 75 percent.
  6. Vibration Control: Integral isolation to dampen vibration transmission.
- F. Drain Pan: If required by manufacturer's design, provide unit with non-ferrous drain pan with bottom sloped to a low point drain connection.
- G. Unit Controls:
1. Enclosure: Manufacturer's standard, and suitable for unprotected outdoor locations.
  2. Factory-Installed Controller: Configurable digital control.
  3. Factory-Installed Sensors:
    - a. Refrigerant suction temperature.
    - b. Refrigerant discharge temperature.
    - c. Outdoor air temperature.
    - d. Refrigerant high pressure.
    - e. Refrigerant low pressure.
    - f. Oil level.
  4. Features and Functions: Self-diagnostics, time delay, auto-restart, fuse protection, auto operation mode, manual operation mode, night setback control, power consumption display, run test switch equalize run time between multiple same components.
  5. Communication: Network communication with indoor units and other outdoor unit(s).
  6. Cable and Wiring: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.
  7. Field Connection: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.
- H. Unit Electrical:
1. Enclosure: Metal, similar to enclosure, and suitable for unprotected outdoor locations.
  2. Field Connection: Single point connection to power entire unit and integral controls.
  3. Disconnecting Means: Factory-mounted circuit breaker or switch, complying with NFPA 70.
  4. Control Transformer: Manufacturer's standard. Coordinate requirements with field power supply.
  5. Wiring: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.
  6. Raceways: Enclose line voltage wiring in raceways to comply with NFPA 70.
- I. Unit Hardware: Zinc-plated steel, or stainless steel. Coat exposed surfaces with additional corrosion-resistant coating if required to prevent corrosion when exposed to salt spray test for 1000 hours according to ASTM B117.

J. Unit Piping:

1. Unit Tubing: Copper tubing with brazed joints.
2. Unit Tubing Insulation: Manufacturer's standard insulation, of thickness to prevent condensation.
3. Field Piping Connections: Manufacturer's standard.
4. Factory Charge: Dehydrated air or nitrogen.
5. Testing: Factory pressure tested and verified to be without leaks.

2.6 HEAT RECOVERY CONTROL UNITS (HRCUs)

A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested complete unit with components, piping, wiring, and controls required for mating to piping, power, and controls field connections.

1. Specially designed for use in systems with simultaneous heating and cooling.
2. Systems shall consist of one unit, or multiple unit that are designed by variable refrigerant system manufacturer for field interconnection to make a single refrigeration circuit that connects multiple indoor units.

B. Cabinet:

1. Galvanized-steel construction.
2. Insulation: Manufacturer's standard internal insulation to provide thermal resistance and prevent condensation.
3. Mounting: Manufacturer-designed provisions for field installation.
4. Internal Access: Removable panels or hinged doors of adequate size for field access to internal components for inspection, cleaning, service, and replacement.

C. Drain Pan: If required by manufacturer's design, provide unit with non-ferrous drain pan with bottom sloped to a low point drain connection.

D. Refrigeration Assemblies and Specialties:

1. Specially designed by manufacturer for type of VRF HVAC system being installed, either two or three pipe.
2. Each refrigerant branch circuit shall have refrigerant control valve(s) to control refrigerant flow.
3. Spares: Each heat recovery control unit shall include at least one branch circuit port for future use.
4. Each system piping connection upstream of heat recovery unit shall be fitted with an isolation valve to allow for service to any heat recovery control unit in the system without interrupting operation of the system.
5. Each branch circuit connection shall be fitted with an isolation valve and capped service port to allow for service to any individual branch circuit without interrupting operation of the system.

- a. If not available as an integral part of the heat recovery control unit, isolation valves shall be field installed adjacent to the unit pipe connection.

E. Unit Controls:

1. Enclosure: Manufacturer's standard, and suitable for indoor locations.
2. Factory-Installed Controller: Configurable digital control.
3. Features and Functions: Self-diagnostics, fuse protection.
4. Communication: Network communication with indoor units and outdoor unit(s).
5. Cable and Wiring: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.
6. Field Connection: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.

F. Unit Electrical:

1. Enclosure: Metal, similar to enclosure, and suitable for indoor locations.
2. Field Connection: Single point connection to power entire unit and integral controls.
3. Disconnecting Means: Factory-mounted circuit breaker or switch, complying with NFPA 70.
4. Control Transformer: Manufacturer's standard. Coordinate requirements with field power supply.
5. Wiring: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.
6. Raceways: Enclose line voltage wiring in raceways to comply with NFPA 70.

G. Unit Piping:

1. Unit Tubing: Copper tubing with brazed joints.
2. Unit Tubing Insulation: Manufacturer's standard insulation, of thickness to prevent condensation.
3. Field Piping Connections: Manufacturer's standard.
4. Factory Charge: Dehydrated air or nitrogen.
5. Testing: Factory pressure tested and verified to be without leaks.

## 2.7 SYSTEM CONTROLS

A. General Requirements:

1. Network: Indoor units, HRCUs, and outdoor units shall include integral controls and connect through a TIA-485A or manufacturer-selected control network.
2. Network Communication Protocol: Manufacturer proprietary or open control communication between interconnected units.
3. Integration with Building Automation System: ASHRAE 135, BACnet IP and certified by BACnet Testing Lab (BTL), including the following:

- a. Ethernet connection via RJ-45 connectors and port with transmission at 100 Mbps or higher.
  - b. Integration devices shall be connected to local uninterruptible power supply unit(s) to provide at least 5 minutes of battery backup operation after a power loss.
  - c. Integration shall include control, monitoring, scheduling, change of value notifications.
4. Operator Interface:
- a. Operators shall interface with system and unit controls through the following:
    - 1) Operator interfaces integral to controllers.
    - 2) Owner-furnished PC connected to central controller(s).
    - 3) Web interface through web browser software.
    - 4) Integration with Building Automation System.
  - b. Users shall be capable of interface with controllers for indoor units control to extent privileges are enabled. Control features available to users shall include the following:
    - 1) On/off control.
    - 2) Temperature set-point adjustment.

B. VRF HVAC System Operator Software for PC:

- 1. Software offered by VRF HVAC system manufacturer shall provide system operators with ability to monitor and control VRF HVAC system(s) from a single dedicated Owner-furnished PC.
- 2. Software shall provide operator with a graphic user interface to allow monitoring and control of multiple central controllers from a single device location through point-and-click mouse exchange.
- 3. Plan views shall show building plans with location of indoor units and identification superimposed on plans.
- 4. Controls operation mode of indoor units as individual units, by selected groups of indoor units, or as collection of all indoor units. Operation modes available through central controller shall match those operation modes of controllers for indoor units.
- 5. Schedules operation of indoor units as individual units, by selected groups of indoor units, or as collection of all indoor units. Schedules daily, weekly, and annual events.
- 6. Changes operating set points of indoor units as individual units, by selected groups of indoor units, or as collection of all indoor units.
- 7. Optimized start feature to start indoor units before scheduled time to reach temperature set-point at scheduled time based on operating history.
- 8. Night setback feature to operate indoor units at energy-conserving heating and cooling temperature set-points during unoccupied periods.
- 9. Displays service notifications and error codes.
- 10. Monitors and displays up to 3000 item error history and 10000 item operation history for regular reporting and further archiving.



11. Monitors and displays cumulative operating time of indoor units.
12. Able to disable and enable operation of individual controllers for indoor units.
13. Information displayed on individual controllers shall also be available for display.
14. Information displayed for outdoor units, including refrigerant high and low pressures.

C. Central Controllers:

1. Centralized control for all indoor and outdoor units from a single central controller location.
  - a. Include multiple interconnected controllers as required.
2. Controls operation mode of indoor units as individual units, by selected groups of indoor units, or as collection of all indoor units. Operation modes available through central controller shall match those operation modes of controllers for indoor units.
3. Schedule operation of indoor units as individual units, by selected groups of indoor units, or as collection of all indoor units.
  - a. Sets schedule for daily, weekly, and annual events.
  - b. Schedule options available through central controller shall at least include the schedule options of controllers for indoor units.
4. Changes operating set points of indoor units as individual units, by selected groups of indoor units, or as collection of all indoor units.
5. Optimized start feature to start indoor units before scheduled time to reach temperature set-point at scheduled time based on operating history.
6. Night setback feature to operate indoor units at energy-conserving heating and cooling temperature set-points during unoccupied periods.
7. Service diagnostics tool.
8. Able to disable and enable operation of individual controllers for indoor units.
9. Information displayed on individual controllers shall also be available for display through central controller.
10. Information displayed for outdoor units, including refrigerant high and low pressures.
11. Multiple RJ-45 ports for direct connection to a local PC and an Ethernet network switch.
12. Operator interface through a backlit, high-resolution color display touch panel and web accessible through standard web browser software.

D. Wired Controllers for Indoor Units:

1. Single controller capable of controlling multiple indoor units as group.
2. Auto Timeout Touch Screen LCD: Timeout duration shall be adjustable.
3. On/Off: Turns indoor unit on or off.
4. Hold: Hold operation settings until hold is released.
5. Operation Mode: Cool, Heat, Auto, Dehumidification, Fan Only, and Setback.
6. Temperature Display: 1-degree increments.
7. Temperature Set-Point: Separate set points for Cooling, Heating, and Setback. Adjustable in 1-degree increments.
8. Relative Humidity Display: 1 percent increments.

9. Relative Humidity Set-Point: Adjustable in 1 percent increments.
10. Fan Speed Setting: Select between available options furnished with the unit.
11. Airflow Direction Setting: If applicable to unit, select between available options furnished with the unit.
12. Seven-day programmable operating schedule with up to five events per day. Operations shall include On/Off, Operation Mode, and Temperature Set-Point.
13. Auto Off Timer: Operates unit for an adjustable time duration and then turns unit off.
14. Occupancy detection.
15. Service Notification Display: "Filter".
16. Service Run Tests: Limit use by service personnel to troubleshoot operation.
17. Error Code Notification Display: Used by service personnel to troubleshoot abnormal operation and equipment failure.
18. User and Service Passwords: Capable of preventing adjustments by unauthorized users.
19. Setting stored in nonvolatile memory to ensure that settings are not lost if power is lost. Battery backup for date and time only.
20. Low-voltage power required for controller shall be powered through non-polar connections to indoor unit.

E. Wireless Controllers for Indoor Units:

1. Wireless Communication:
  - a. Controller communicates to remote-mounted receiver that is wired to indoor unit(s).
    - 1) Include receivers with wireless controllers as required to complete installation.
    - 2) Low-voltage power required for receivers shall be powered through non-polar connections to indoor unit.
  - b. One wireless controller shall be capable of communicating with one or multiple receivers to control one or multiple indoor units as a group.
2. Controller Battery Life: Three years.
3. Auto Timeout Touch Screen LCD: Timeout duration shall be adjustable.
4. On/Off: Turns indoor unit on or off.
5. Hold: Hold operation settings until hold is released.
6. Operation Mode: Cool, Heat, Auto, Dehumidification, Fan Only, and Setback.
7. Temperature Display: 1-degree increments.
8. Temperature Set-Point: Separate set points for Cooling, Heating, and Setback. Adjustable in 1-degree increments.
9. Relative Humidity Display: 1 percent increments.
10. Relative Humidity Set-Point: Adjustable in 1 percent increments.
11. Fan Speed Setting: Select between available options furnished with the unit.
12. Airflow Direction Setting: If applicable to unit, select between available options furnished with the unit.
13. Seven-day programmable operating schedule with up to five events per day. Operations shall include On/Off, Operation Mode, and Temperature Set-Point.

14. Auto Off Timer: Operates unit for an adjustable time duration and then turns unit off.
15. Occupancy detection.
16. Service Notification Display: "Filter".
17. Service Run Tests: Limit use by service personnel to troubleshoot operation.
18. Error Code Notification Display: Used by service personnel to troubleshoot abnormal operation and equipment failure.
19. User and Service Passwords: Capable of preventing adjustments by unauthorized users.
20. Setting stored in non-volatile memory to ensure that settings are not lost if power is lost. Battery for date and time only.

## 2.8 SYSTEM REFRIGERANT AND OIL

### A. Refrigerant:

1. As required by VRF HVAC system manufacturer for system to comply with performance requirements indicated.
2. ASHRAE 34, Class A1 refrigerant classification.
3. R-410a.

### B. Oil:

1. As required by VRF HVAC system manufacturer and to comply with performance requirements indicated.

## 2.9 SYSTEM CONDENSATE DRAIN PIPING

### A. If more than one material is listed, material selection is Contractor's option.

### B. Copper Tubing:

1. Drawn-Temper Tubing: According to ASTM B88, Type L or Type DWV according to ASTM B306.
2. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.
3. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.
4. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B32, lead-free alloys, and water-flushable flux according to ASTM B813.

### C. CPVC plastic pipe according to ASTM F441/F441M, Schedule 40, with socket-type pipe fittings according to ASTM F438 and solvent cement according to ASTM F493.

### D. PVC plastic pipe according to ASTM D1785, Schedule 40, with socket-type pipe fittings according to ASTM D2466 and solvent cement according to ASTM D2564, primer according to ASTM F656.

## 2.10 SYSTEM REFRIGERANT PIPING

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Refrigerant Piping" for system piping requirements.
- B. Refrigerant Piping:
  - 1. Copper Tube: ASTM B280, Type ACR.
  - 2. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.
  - 3. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M.
- C. Refrigerant Tubing Kits:
  - 1. Furnished by VRF HVAC system manufacturer.
  - 2. Factory-rolled and -bundled, soft-copper tubing with tubing termination fittings at each end.
  - 3. Standard one-piece length for connecting to indoor units.
  - 4. Pre-insulated with flexible elastomeric insulation of thickness to comply with governing energy code and sufficient to eliminate condensation.
  - 5. Factory Charge: Dehydrated air or nitrogen.
- D. Divided-Flow Specialty Fittings: Where required by VRF HVAC system manufacturer for proper system operation, VRF HVAC system manufacturer shall furnish specialty fittings with identification and instructions for proper installation by Installer.
- E. Refrigerant Isolation Ball Valves:
  - 1. Description: Uni-body full port design, rated for maximum system temperature and pressure, and factory tested under pressure to ensure tight shutoff. Designed for valve operation without removing seal cap.
  - 2. Seals: Compatible with system refrigerant and oil. Seal service life of at least 20 years.
  - 3. Valve Connections: Flare or sweat depending on size.

## 2.11 SYSTEM CONTROL CABLE

- A. Cable Rating: Listed and labeled for application according to NFPA 70.
  - 1. Flame Travel and Smoke Density in Plenums: As determined by testing identical products according to NFPA 262, by a qualified testing agency. Identify products for installation in plenums with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
    - a. Flame Travel Distance: 60 inches or less.
    - b. Peak Optical Smoke Density: 0.5 or less.
    - c. Average Optical Smoke Density: 0.15 or less.
  - 2. Flame Travel and Smoke Density for Riser Cables in Non-Plenum Building Spaces: As determined by testing identical products according to UL 1666.

3. Flame Travel and Smoke Density for Cables in Non-Riser Applications and Non-Plenum Building Spaces: As determined by testing identical products according to UL 1685.
- B. Low-Voltage Control Cabling:
1. Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMG.
    - a. One pair, twisted, No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29) or No. 18 AWG, stranded (19x30) tinned-copper conductors as required by VRF HVAC system manufacturer.
    - b. PVC insulation.
    - c. Braided or foil shielded.
    - d. PVC jacket.
    - e. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1685.
  2. Plenum-Rated, Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.
    - a. One pair, twisted, No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29) or No. 18 AWG, stranded (19x30) tinned-copper conductors as required by VRF HVAC system manufacturer.
    - b. PVC insulation.
    - c. Braided or foil shielded.
    - d. PVC jacket.
    - e. NFPA 262 includes the standard flame-resistance test criteria in common use for cables and conductors.
    - f. Flame Resistance: Comply with NFPA 262.
- C. TIA-485A Network Cabling:
1. Standard Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMG.
    - a. Paired, one pair, twisted, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned-copper conductors.
    - b. PVC insulation.
    - c. Unshielded.
    - d. PVC jacket.
    - e. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1685.
  2. Plenum-Rated Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.
    - a. Paired, one pair, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned-copper conductors.
    - b. Fluorinated ethylene propylene insulation.
    - c. Unshielded.
    - d. Fluorinated ethylene propylene jacket.
    - e. NFPA 262 includes the standard flame-resistance test criteria in common use for cables and conductors.
    - f. Flame Resistance: NFPA 262.
- D. Ethernet Network Cabling: TIA-568-C.2 Category 6 cable with RJ-45 connectors.

1. Description: Four-pair, balanced-twisted pair cable, certified to meet transmission characteristics of category cable indicated.
  2. Conductors: 100-ohm, 23 AWG solid copper.
  3. Shielding: Unshielded twisted pairs (UTP).
  4. Cable Rating: By application.
  5. Jacket: White thermoplastic.
- E. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for control wiring and cable raceways.

## 2.12 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Factory Tests: Test and inspect factory-assembled equipment.
- B. Equipment will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports for historical record. Submit reports only if requested.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine products before installation. Reject products that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- C. Examine roughing-in for piping and tubing to verify actual locations of connections before equipment installation.
- D. Examine roughing-in for ductwork to verify actual locations of connections before equipment installation.
- E. Examine roughing-in for wiring and conduit to verify actual locations of connections before equipment installation.
- F. Examine walls, floors, roofs, and outdoor pads for suitable conditions where equipment will be installed.
- G. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- H. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Clearance:
  - 1. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances for service and maintenance.
  - 2. Maintain clearances required by governing code.
- B. Loose Components: Install components, devices, and accessories furnished by manufacturer, with equipment, that are not factory mounted.
  - 1. Loose components shall be installed by system Installer under supervision of manufacturer's service representative.
- C. Equipment Restraint Installation: Install equipment with seismic-restraint device. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Division 23 Section "Vibration Controls for HVAC."

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF INDOOR UNITS

- A. Install units to be level and plumb while providing a neat and finished appearance.
- B. Unless otherwise required by VRF HVAC system manufacturer, support ceiling-mounted units from structure above using threaded rods; minimum rod size of 3/8 inch.
- C. Adjust supports of exposed and recessed units to draw units tight to adjoining surfaces.
- D. Protect finished surfaces of ceilings, floors, and walls that come in direct contact with units. Refinish or replaced damaged areas after units are installed.
- E. In rooms with ceilings, conceal piping and tubing, controls, and electrical power serving units above ceilings.
- F. In rooms without ceiling, arrange piping and tubing, controls, and electrical power serving units to provide a neat and finished appearance.
- G. Provide lateral bracing if needed to limit movement of suspended units to not more than 0.25 inch.
- H. Attachment: Install hardware for proper attachment to supported equipment.
- I. Grouting: Place grout under equipment supports and make bearing surface smooth.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF OUTDOOR UNITS

- A. Install units to be level and plumb while providing a neat and finished appearance.
- B. Install outdoor units on support structures indicated on Drawings.

- C. Pad-Mounted Installations: Install outdoor units on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
  - 1. Attachment: Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
  - 2. Grouting: Place grout under equipment supports and make bearing surface smooth.

### 3.5 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping and tubing systems. Install piping and tubing as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install piping and tubing in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping and tubing at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping and tubing above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping and tubing to permit valve servicing.
- F. Install piping and tubing at indicated slopes.
- G. Install piping and tubing free of sags.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Install piping and tubing to allow application of insulation.
- J. Install groups of pipes and tubing parallel to each other, spaced to permit applying insulation with service access between insulated piping and tubing.
- K. Install sleeves for piping and tubing penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Division 23 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- L. Install escutcheons for piping and tubing penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Division 23 Section "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."

### 3.6 INSTALLATION OF SYSTEM CONDENSATE DRAIN PIPING

- A. General Requirements for Drain Piping and Tubing:



1. Install a union in piping at each threaded unit connection.
2. Install an adjustable stainless-steel hose clamp with adjustable gear operator on unit hose connections. Tighten clamp to provide a leak-free installation.
3. If required for unit installation, provide a trap assembly in drain piping to prevent air circulated through unit from passing through drain piping. Comply with more stringent of the following:
  - a. Details indicated on Drawings.
  - b. Manufacturer's requirements.
  - c. Governing codes.
  - d. In the absence of requirements, comply with requirements of ASHRAE handbooks.
4. Extend drain piping from units with drain connections to drain receptors as indicated on Drawings. If not indicated on Drawings, terminate drain connection at nearest accessible location that is not exposed to view by occupants.
5. Provide each 90-degree change in direction with a Y- or T-fitting. Install a threaded plug connection in the dormant side of fitting or future use as a service cleanout.

B. Gravity Drains:

1. Slope piping from unit connection toward drain termination at a constant slope of not less than one percent.

C. Pumped Drains:

1. If unit condensate pump or lift mechanism is not included with an integral check valve, install a full-size check valve in each branch pipe near unit connection to prevent backflow into unit.

### 3.7 INSTALLATION OF REFRIGERANT PIPING

A. Refrigerant Tubing Kits:

1. Unroll and straighten tubing to suit installation. Deviations in straightness of exposed tubing shall be unnoticeable to observer.
2. Support tubing using hangers and supports indicated at intervals not to exceed 5 feet. Minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
3. Prepare tubing ends and make mating connections to provide a pressure tight and leak-free installation.

B. Install refrigerant piping according to ASHRAE 15 and governing codes.

C. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.

D. Install piping as short and direct as possible, with a minimum number of joints and fittings.

- E. Arrange piping to allow inspection and service of equipment. Install valves and specialties in accessible locations to allow for service and inspection. Install access doors or panels as specified in Division 08 Section "Access Doors and Frames" if valves or equipment requiring maintenance is concealed behind finished surfaces.
- F. Install refrigerant piping and tubing in protective conduit where installed belowground.
- G. Install refrigerant piping and tubing in rigid or flexible conduit in locations where exposed to mechanical damage.
- H. Unless otherwise required by VRF HVAC system manufacturer, slope refrigerant piping and tubing as follows:
  - 1. Install horizontal hot-gas discharge piping and tubing with a uniform slope downward away from compressor.
  - 2. Install horizontal suction lines with a uniform slope downward to compressor.
  - 3. Install traps to entrain oil in vertical runs.
  - 4. Liquid lines may be installed level.
- I. When brazing, remove or protect components that could be damaged by heat.
- J. Before installation, clean piping, tubing, and fittings to cleanliness level required by VRF HVAC system manufacturer.
- K. Joint Construction:
  - 1. Ream ends of tubes and remove burrs.
  - 2. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of tube and fittings before assembly.
  - 3. Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter.
    - a. Use Type BCuP (copper-phosphorus) alloy for joining copper fittings with copper tubing.
    - b. Use Type BAg (cadmium-free silver) alloy for joining copper with bronze.

### 3.8 ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements indicated on Drawings and in applicable Division 26 Sections.
- B. To extent electrical power is required for system equipment, components, and controls, and is not indicated on Drawings and addressed in the Specifications, the design for such electrical power shall be delegated to VRF HVAC system provider.
  - 1. Delegated design of electrical power to equipment, components and controls, and associated installation shall be included at no additional cost to Owner.
- C. Connect field electrical power source to each separate electrical device requiring field electrical power. Coordinate termination point and connection type with Installer.

- D. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for wiring connections.
- E. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems" for grounding connections.
- F. Install nameplate or acrylic label with self-adhesive back for each electrical connection indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
  - 1. Nameplate shall be laminated phenolic layers of black with engraved white letters. Letters at least 1/2 inch high.
  - 2. Locate nameplate or label where easily visible.
- G. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for raceway selection and installation requirements for boxes, conduits, and wireways as supplemented or revised in this Section.
  - 1. Outlet boxes shall be no smaller than 2 inches wide, 3 inches high, and 2-1/2 inches deep.
  - 2. Outlet boxes for cables shall be no smaller than 4 inches square by 1-1/2 inches deep with extension ring sized to bring edge of ring to within 1/8 inch of the finished wall surface.
  - 3. Flexible metal conduit shall not be used.
- H. Comply with TIA-569-D for pull-box sizing and length of conduit and number of bends between pull points.
- I. Install manufactured conduit sweeps and long-radius elbows if possible.
- J. Install metal conduits with grounding bushings and connect with grounding conductor to grounding system.

### 3.9 SOFTWARE

- A. Cybersecurity:
  - 1. Software:
    - a. Coordinate security requirements with IT department.
    - b. Ensure that latest stable software release is installed and properly operating.
    - c. Disable or change default passwords to password using a combination of uppercase and lower letters, numbers, and symbols at least eight characters in length. Record passwords and turn over to party responsible for system operation and administration.
  - 2. Hardware:
    - a. Coordinate location and access requirements with IT department.

- b. Enable highest level of wireless encryption that is compatible with Owner's ICT network.
- c. Disable dual network connections.

### 3.10 INSTALLATION OF SYSTEM CONTROL CABLE

#### A. Comply with NECA 1.

#### B. Installation Method:

1. Install cables in raceways except as follows:
  - a. Within equipment and associated control enclosures.
  - b. In accessible ceiling spaces where open cable installation method may be used.
  - c. In gypsum board partitions where cable may be enclosed within wall cavity.
2. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.

#### C. General Requirements for Cabling:

1. Comply with TIA-568-C Series of standards.
2. Comply with BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems."
3. Terminate all conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, and cross-connect and patch panels.
4. Cables may not be spliced and shall be continuous from terminal to terminal. Do not splice cable.
5. Cables serving a common system may be grouped in a common raceway. Install control cable in separate raceway from power wiring. Do not group conductors from different systems or different voltages.
6. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches and not more than 6 inches from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
7. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems." Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
8. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
9. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Do not use heat lamps for heating.
10. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems." Monitor cable pull tensions.
11. Support: Do not allow cables to lie on removable ceiling tiles or access panels.
12. Secure: Fasten securely in place with hardware specifically designed and installed so as to not damage cables.
13. Provide strain relief.
14. Keep runs short. Allow extra length for connecting to terminals.
15. Do not bend cables in a radius less than 10 times the cable OD.

16. Use sleeves or grommets to protect cables from vibration at points where they pass around sharp corners and through penetrations.
17. Ground wire shall be copper, and grounding methods shall comply with IEEE C2. Demonstrate ground resistance.

D. Balanced Twisted-Pair Cable Installation:

1. Comply with TIA-568-C.2.
2. Do not untwist balanced twisted-pair cables more than 1/2 inch at the point of termination to maintain cable geometry.

E. Open-Cable Installation:

1. Suspend copper cable not in a wireway or pathway a minimum of 8 inches above ceilings by cable supports not more than 30 inches apart.
2. Cable shall not be run through or on structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items. Do not run cables between structural members and corrugated panels.

F. Separation from EMI Sources: Comply with BICSI TDMM and TIA-569-D recommendations for separating unshielded cable from potential EMI sources including electrical power wiring and equipment.

### 3.11 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."
- B. Comply with TIA-569-D, Annex A, "Firestopping."
- C. Comply with BICSI TDMM, "Firestopping" Chapter.

### 3.12 GROUNDING INSTALLATION

- A. For data communication wiring, comply with TIA-607-B and with BICSI TDMM, "Bonding and Grounding (Earthing)" Chapter.
- B. For low-voltage control cabling, comply with requirements in Division 06 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

### 3.13 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system equipment, piping, tubing, and valves. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

- B. Identify system electrical and controls components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

- 1. Identify each control cable on each end and at each terminal with a number-coded identification tag. Each cable shall have a unique tag.

### 3.14 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage VRF HVAC system manufacturer's service representative to advise and assist installers; witness testing; and observe and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including controls and connections.

- 1. Field service shall be performed by an employee or a factory-trained and -authorized service representative of VRF HVAC system manufacturer whose primary job responsibilities are to provide direct technical support of its products.

- a. Additional factory-authorized representatives may assist with completion of certain activities only if supervised by manufacturer's employee. A factory-authorized representative shall not provide assistance without manufacturer's employee supervision.

- 2. Manufacturer shall provide on-site visits during the course of construction at installation milestones indicated. System Installer shall coordinate each visit in advance to give manufacturer sufficient notice to plan the visit.

- a. First Visit: Kick-off meeting.
    - b. Second Visit: At approximately 25 percent completion of system(s).
    - c. Third Visit: At approximately 50 percent completion of system(s).
    - d. Fourth Visit: At approximately 75 percent completion of system(s).
    - e. Fifth Visit: Final inspection before system startup.

- 3. Kick-off Meeting:

- a. Meeting shall include system Installer and other related trades with sole purpose of reviewing VRF HVAC system installation requirements and close coordination required to make a successful installation.
    - b. Meeting shall be held at Project site and scheduled at a mutually agreed to time that occurs before the start of any part of system installation.
    - c. Meeting shall cover the following as a minimum requirement:
      - 1) Review of latest issue of Contract Documents, Drawings, and Specifications, relevant to VRF HVAC systems.
      - 2) Manufacturer's installation requirements specific to systems being installed.
      - 3) Review of all relevant VRF HVAC system submittals, including delegated-design submittals.

- 4) Required field activities related installation of VRF HVAC system.
  - 5) Project team communication protocol, contact information, and exchange of responsibilities for each party involved, including manufacturer, supplier, system Installer, and other related trades.
4. Site Visits: Activities for each site visit shall include the following:
- a. Meet with VRF HVAC system Installer to discuss field activities, issues, and suggested methods to result in a successful installation.
  - b. Offer technical support to Installer and related trades as related to VRF system(s) being installed.
  - c. Review progress of VRF HVAC system(s) installation for strict compliance with manufacturer's requirements.
  - d. Advise and if necessary assist Installer with updating related refrigerant calculations and system documentation.
  - e. Issue a report for each visit, documenting the visit.
    - 1) Report to include name and contact information of individual making the visit.
    - 2) Date(s) and time frames while on-site.
    - 3) Names and contact information of people meeting with while on-site.
    - 4) Clearly identify and list each separate issue that requires resolution. For each issue, provide a unique identification number, relevant importance, specific location or equipment identification, description of issue, recommended corrective action, and follow-up requirements needed. Include a digital photo for clarification if deemed to be beneficial.
5. Final Inspection before Startup:
- a. Before inspection, Installer to provide written request to manufacturer stating the system is fully installed according manufacturer's requirements and ready for final inspection.
  - b. All system equipment and operating components shall be inspected. If components are inaccessible for inspection, they shall be made accessible before the final inspection can be completed.
  - c. Manufacturer shall provide a comprehensive inspection of all equipment and each operating component that comprise the complete system(s). Inspection shall follow a detailed checklist specific to each equipment and operating component.
  - d. Inspection reports for indoor units shall include, but not be limited to, the following:
    - 1) Unit designation on Drawings.
    - 2) Manufacturer model number.
    - 3) Serial number.
    - 4) Network address, if applicable.
    - 5) Each equipment setting.
    - 6) Mounting, supports, and restraints properly installed.

- 7) Proper service clearance provided.
- 8) Wiring and power connections correct.
- 9) Line-voltage reading(s) within acceptable range.
- 10) Wiring and controls connections correct.
- 11) Low-voltage reading(s) within an acceptable range.
- 12) Controller type and model controlling unit.
- 13) Controller location.
- 14) Temperature settings and readings within an acceptable range.
- 15) Humidity settings and readings within an acceptable range.
- 16) Condensate removal acceptable.
- 17) Fan settings and readings within an acceptable range.
- 18) Unit airflow direction within an acceptable range.
- 19) If applicable, fan external static pressure setting.
- 20) Filter type and condition acceptable.
- 21) Noise level within an acceptable range.
- 22) Refrigerant piping properly connected and insulated.
- 23) Condensate drain piping properly connected and insulated.
- 24) If applicable, ductwork properly connected.
- 25) If applicable, external interlocks properly connected.
- 26) Remarks.

e. Inspection reports for outdoor units shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

- 1) Unit designation on Drawings.
- 2) Manufacturer model number.
- 3) Serial number.
- 4) Network address, if applicable.
- 5) Each equipment setting.
- 6) Mounting, supports, and restraints properly installed.
- 7) Proper service clearance provided.
- 8) Wiring and power connections correct.
- 9) Line-voltage reading(s) within acceptable range.
- 10) Wiring and controls connections correct.
- 11) Low-voltage reading(s) within an acceptable range.
- 12) Condensate removal acceptable.
- 13) Noise level within an acceptable range.
- 14) Refrigerant piping properly connected and insulated.
- 15) Condensate drain piping properly connected and insulated.
- 16) Remarks.

f. Installer shall provide manufacturer with the requested documentation and technical support during inspection.

g. Installer shall correct observed deficiencies found by the inspection.

h. Upon completing the on-site inspection, manufacturer shall provide a written report with complete documentation describing each inspection step, the result, and any corrective action required.



- i. If corrective action is required by Installer that cannot be completed during the same visit, provide additional visits, as required, until deficiencies are resolved and systems are deemed ready for startup.
  - j. Final report shall indicate the system(s) inspected are installed according to manufacturer's requirements and are ready for startup.
- B. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of manufacturer's service representative:
  - 1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
  - 2. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  - 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
  - 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. Refrigerant Tubing Positive Pressure Testing:
  - 1. Comply with more stringent of VRF HVAC system manufacturer's requirements and requirements indicated.
  - 2. After completion of tubing installation, pressurize tubing systems to a test pressure of not less than 1.2 times VRF HVAC system operating pressure, but not less than 600 psig, using dry nitrogen.
  - 3. Successful testing shall maintain a test pressure for a continuous and uninterrupted period of 24 hours. Allowance for pressure changes attributed to changes in ambient temperature are acceptable.
  - 4. Prepare test report to record the following information for each test:
    - a. Name of person starting test, company name, phone number, and e-mail address.
    - b. Name of manufacturer's service representative witnessing test, company name, phone number, and e-mail address.
    - c. Detailed description of extent of tubing tested.
    - d. Date and time at start of test.
    - e. Test pressure at start of test.
    - f. Outdoor temperature at start of test.
    - g. Name of person ending test, company name, phone number, and e-mail address.
    - h. Date and time at end of test.
    - i. Test pressure at end of test.
    - j. Outdoor temperature at end of test.
    - k. Remarks:
  - 5. Submit test reports for Project record.
- D. Refrigerant Tubing Evacuation Testing:

1. Comply with more stringent of VRF HVAC system manufacturer's requirements and requirements indicated.
2. After completion of tubing positive-pressure testing, evacuate tubing systems to a pressure of 500 microns.
3. Successful testing shall maintain a test pressure for a continuous and uninterrupted period of one hour(s) with no change.
4. Prepare test report to record the following information for each test:
  - a. Name of person starting test, company name, phone number, and e-mail address.
  - b. Name of manufacturer's service representative witnessing test, company name, phone number, and e-mail address.
  - c. Detailed description of extent of tubing tested.
  - d. Date and time at start of test.
  - e. Test pressure at start of test.
  - f. Outdoor temperature at start of test.
  - g. Name of person ending test, company name, phone number, and e-mail address.
  - h. Date and time at end of test.
  - i. Test pressure at end of test.
  - j. Outdoor temperature at end of test.
  - k. Remarks:
5. Submit test reports for Project record.
6. Upon successful completion of evacuation testing, system shall be charged with refrigerant.

E. System Refrigerant Charge:

1. Using information collected from the refrigerant tubing evacuation testing, system Installer shall consult variable refrigerant system manufacturer to determine the correct system refrigerant charge.
2. Installer shall charge system following VRF HVAC system manufacturer's written instructions.
3. System refrigerant charging shall be witnessed by system manufacturer's representative.
4. Total refrigerant charge shall be recorded and permanently displayed at the system's outdoor unit.

F. Products will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

G. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.15 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a VRF HVAC system manufacturer's service representative to perform system(s) startup service.

1. Service representative shall be an employee or a factory-trained and -authorized service representative of VRF HVAC system manufacturer.
  2. Complete startup service of each separate system.
  3. Complete system startup service according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Startup checks shall include, but not be limited to, the following:
1. Check control communications of equipment and each operating component in system(s).
  2. Check each indoor unit's response to demand for cooling and heating.
  3. Check each indoor unit's response to changes in airflow settings.
  4. Check each indoor unit, HRCU, and outdoor unit for proper condensate removal.
  5. Check sound levels of each indoor and outdoor unit.
- C. Installer shall accompany manufacturer's service representative during startup service and provide manufacturer's service representative with requested documentation and technical support during startup service.
1. Installer shall correct deficiencies found during startup service for reverification.
- D. System Operation Report:
1. After completion of startup service, manufacturer shall issue a report for each separate system.
  2. Report shall include complete documentation describing each startup check, the result, and any corrective action required.
  3. Manufacturer shall electronically record not less than two hours of continuous operation of each system and submit with report for historical reference.
    - a. All available system operating parameters shall be included in the information submitted.

### 3.16 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust equipment and components to function smoothly and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Adjust initial temperature and humidity set points. Adjust initial airflow settings and discharge airflow patterns.
- C. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges according to VRF HVAC system manufacturer's written instructions, and as indicated.
- D. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

### 3.17 PROTECTION

- A. Protect products from moisture and water damage. Remove and replace products that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- B. Protect equipment from physical damage. Replace equipment with physical damage that cannot be repaired to new condition. Observable surface imperfections shall be grounds for removal and replacement.
- C. Protect equipment from electrical damage. Replace equipment suffering electrical damage.
- D. Cover and seal openings of equipment to keep inside of equipment clean. Do not remove covers until finish work is complete.

### 3.18 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Initial Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service shall include 12 months' full maintenance by skilled employees of system Installer who are manufacturer's authorized service representative. Include two service visits for preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper equipment and system operation. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.

### 3.19 SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT

- A. Technical Support: Beginning at Substantial Completion, service agreement shall include software support for two years.
- B. Upgrade Service: At Substantial Completion, update software to latest version. Install and program software upgrades that become available within two years from date of Substantial Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system and new or revised licenses for using software.
  - 1. Upgrade Notice: At least 30 days to allow Owner to schedule and access the system and to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

### 3.20 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a VRF HVAC system manufacturer's employed training instructor or factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain entire system.
- B. Instructor:
  - 1. Instructor shall be factory trained and certified by VRF HVAC system manufacturer with current training on the system(s), equipment, and controls that are installed.

2. Instructor(s) shall have not less than three years of training experience with VRF HVAC system manufacturer and past training experience on at least three projects of comparable size and complexity.
- C. Schedule and Duration:
1. Schedule training with Owner at least 20 business days before first training session.
  2. Training shall occur before Owner occupancy.
  3. Training shall be held at mutually agreed date and time during normal business hours.
  4. Perform not less than eight total hours of training.
- D. Location: Owner shall provide a suitable on-site location to host classroom training.
- E. Training Attendance: For record purposes, document training attendees at the start of each new training session. Record attendee's name, signature, phone number, and e-mail address.
- F. Training Format: Individual training modules shall include classroom training followed by hands-on field demonstration and training.
- G. Training Materials: Provide training materials in electronic format to each attendee.
1. Include instructional videos showing general operation and maintenance that are coordinated with operation and maintenance manuals.
  2. Video record each classroom training session and submit an electronic copy to Owner before requesting Owner acceptance of training.

END OF SECTION 238129

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 238239.13 - CABINET UNIT HEATERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes cabinet unit heaters with centrifugal fans and electric-resistance heating coils.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. DDC: Direct digital control.
- B. PTFE: Polytetrafluoroethylene plastic.
- C. TFE: Tetrafluoroethylene plastic.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For cabinet unit heaters to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Berko; Marley Engineered Products.

2. Chromalox, Inc.
3. QMark; Marley Engineered Products.

## 2.2 DESCRIPTION

- A. Factory-assembled and -tested unit complying with AHRI 440.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Comply with UL 2021.

## 2.3 CABINETS

- A. Material: Steel with baked-enamel finish with manufacturer's standard paint, in color selected by Architect.
  1. Vertical Unit, Exposed Front Panels: Minimum 0.0528-inch- thick galvanized sheet steel, removable panels with channel-formed edges secured with tamperproof cam fasteners.
  2. Recessed Flanges: Steel, finished to match cabinet.
  3. Control Access Door: Key operated.

## 2.4 COILS

- A. Electric-Resistance Heating Coil: Nickel-chromium heating wire, free from expansion noise and hum, mounted in ceramic inserts in galvanized-steel housing; with fuses in terminal box for overcurrent protection and limit controls for high-temperature protection. Terminate elements in stainless-steel machine-staked terminals secured with stainless-steel hardware.

## 2.5 CONTROLS

- A. Fan and Motor Board: Removable.
  1. Fan: Forward curved, double width, centrifugal, directly connected to motor; thermoplastic or painted-steel wheels and aluminum, painted-steel, or galvanized-steel fan scrolls.
  2. Motor: Permanently lubricated, multispeed; resiliently mounted on motor board. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
  3. Wiring Terminations: Connect motor to chassis wiring with plug connection.
- B. Control devices and operational sequences are specified in Division 23 Section "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC" and Division 23 Section "Sequence of Operations for HVAC DDC."
- C. Basic Unit Controls:



1. Control voltage transformer.
  2. Unit-mounted thermostat with the following features:
    - a. Heat-off switch.
    - b. Fan on-auto switch.
    - c. Manual fan-speed switch.
    - d. Adjustable deadband.
    - e. Concealed set point.
  3. Unit-mounted temperature sensor.
- D. Electrical Connection: Factory-wired motors and controls for a single field connection.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas to receive cabinet unit heaters for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for electrical connections to verify actual locations before unit-heater installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install wall boxes in finished wall assembly; seal and weatherproof. Joint-sealant materials and applications are specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
- B. Install cabinet unit heaters to comply with NFPA 90A.
- C. Install wall-mounted thermostats and switch controls in electrical outlet boxes at heights to match lighting controls. Verify location of thermostats and other exposed control sensors with Drawings and room details before installation.
- D. Install new filters in each fan-coil unit within two weeks of Substantial Completion.

### 3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with safety requirements in UL 1995.
- B. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

- C. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

END OF SECTION 238239.13